$5
1915

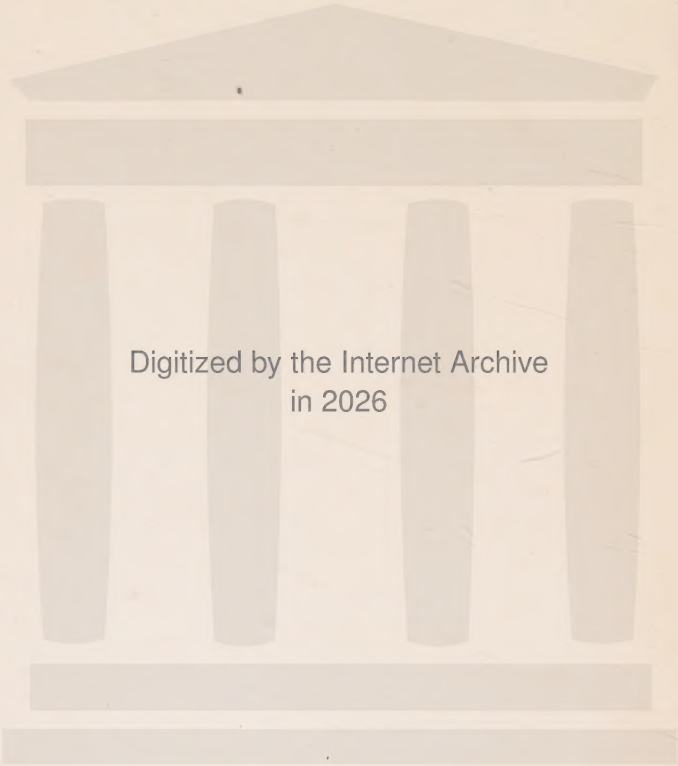
LESSONS IN ENGLISH

BOOK TWO

SCOTT - SOUTHWORTH

BENJ. H. SANBORN & CO.

Josephine Lamb
1201 N 20th.
Terre Haute
Ind.


Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2026

https://archive.org/details/lessonsinenglish0000unse_y2x2

LESSONS IN ENGLISH

BOOK TWO

BY

FRED NEWTON SCOTT

PROFESSOR OF RHETORIC IN THE UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN

AND

GORDON A. SOUTHWORTH

LATE SUPERINTENDENT OF SCHOOLS, SOMERVILLE, MASS.

οὐ πόλλ' ἀλλὰ πολύ

BENJ. H. SANBORN & CO.

BOSTON NEW YORK CHICAGO

1915

COPYRIGHT, 1906, 1912, BY
FRED N. SCOTT
AND
GORDON A. SOUTHWORTH

PREFACE

THIS series of "Lessons in English" comprises two books. BOOK I, intended to be used within the third, fourth, fifth, and sixth grades, covers either two or three years, according to the amount of time allowed for language work, the age of the pupils, and their previous training.

BOOK II contains a systematic course in grammar and a series of lessons in composition. It amply provides for the English work of the three higher grammar grades.

In the preparation of BOOK I the design has been —

(1) To create a liking for good literature by presenting worthy selections to be read, studied, copied, and learned.

(2) To help children to talk and write more freely about the many things that they see or know. Suggestive questions have been asked, in order to stimulate thought, to develop clear ideas, and to enable the learner to report more readily, both orally and in writing, what he has discovered. Provision has been made for a great amount of practice in talking and writing. Pains have been taken also to give life, point, and interest to the exercises in composition by varying the method of presentation, and particularly by providing a definite reader or hearer to whom the pupil may address himself.

(3) To make children more and more observing — especially in the field of natural science — adding to their knowledge, and leading them to find out for themselves. Many illustrations are set before the children for descriptive and imaginative writing, and help is given in the form of leading questions.

(4) To make correct expression habitual, by calling for frequent repetition of the right forms, and by constantly suppressing the wrong.

(5) To secure the use of correct written forms by giving models for imitation, and by leading up to simple rules for the use of capitals, punctuation-marks, and word-forms, with examples and much work for practice.

(6) To give some acquaintance with the elementary principles of grammar.

In Book II the aim has been —

(1) To place before the student an orderly and intelligible statement of the principles that determine the structure of words and sentences, and at the same time to furnish exercises for practice in the application of those principles.

(2) To continue upon a higher plane the work in composition pursued in the lower grades.

Part I deals somewhat at length with the sentence as the structural unit in the use of language, because a knowledge of its elements and their relation one to another must logically precede any detailed study of words and their forms. The parts of speech are briefly treated in this connection to give an intelligent idea of the composition and character of the elements of sentences, as well as to show that classification and inflection depend upon use.

Part II presents the parts of speech with considerable fullness of detail in their classes, inflection, and syntax. Teachers will, of course, discriminate between what is to be learned and what is given only for reference. Attention is called to the treatment of case; to the unusually full presentation of infinitives and participles; to the tabulated summaries at the close of chapters for purposes of review; and to standard literary selections for study.

Throughout the grammar, sentences for illustration and study are given in abundance. That the student may learn that the rules that govern form, structure, and good usage are general in their application, they have been intentionally drawn both from literature and from the language of ordinary intercourse.

Part III is a systematic course in composition. It is not intended to be merely an addendum to the grammar, nor a series of talks about rhetoric. It provides for continuous and progressive practice in those kinds of writing and speaking which are most suitable for children at this stage of their school life.

Though both composition and grammar contribute in greater or less degree to the same end — the ability to use language intelligently and efficiently — yet they differ essentially in their character and method of treatment. For this reason, in the arrangement of the book no attempt has been made to intermingle exercises in composition with work in grammar. The lessons have been so framed, however, that they may either be assigned in connection with Parts I and II or may be used as an independent course.

In both composition and grammar special emphasis has been laid on the choice of the proper word. The tendency towards freedom, if not looseness, in the use of forms, and the disposition to ignore certain well-established rules on the part of latter-day writers and speakers, have been discouraged by pretty close adherence to the usage of those who are striving to maintain the highest standards.

Although these books contain much that is new and unhackneyed, they are not untried. The material which they contain has been tested in many schools under widely different conditions, and has been found workable. These "Lessons in English" do not come before the school public, therefore, as

strangers knocking at the door and waiting to be introduced; they appear rather as familiar friends renewing old acquaintance and seeking a wider recognition in a circle where they have already made their standing good.

The authors are indebted to the following publishers and authors for permission to use copyrighted material: To Miss Margaret Lee Ashley, and Harper and Brothers for the poem "The Wind," which originally appeared in Harper's Magazine; to Harper and Brothers for the illustration *Weapons and Utensils of the Cliff Men;* to Charles Scribner's Sons for the excerpt from J. G. Holland's "Babyhood"; to the Cyrus T. Clark Co., Decorators, for the illustration *An Interesting Subject;* to Houghton, Mifflin & Co. for selections from J. T. Trowbridge's "Midsummer" and "Midwinter"; to the Whitaker & Ray Company for Joaquin Miller's "Columbus"; to Mr. James Whitcomb Riley and the Bobbs-Merrill Company for "The Prayer Perfect"; to the Lothrop, Lee & Shepard Co. and William H. Hayne for a selection from Paul Hamilton Hayne's "Will and I"; to Mr. A. W. Mumford for permission to reproduce the picture of the Baltimore Oriole's Nest; to the Youth's Companion for the illustration *The Pony.* The authors are also under obligation to many teachers and school officials who have kindly read the proofs and made valuable suggestions.

F. N. S.
G. A. S.

January, 1906.

TO TEACHERS

These books presuppose a wise and capable teacher who will use them with the attainments and needs of her pupils in mind, omitting here and supplementing there according to varying conditions.

Too many teachers think of a text-book as a kind of machine-gun, built to fire with deadly precision so many loads a minute. This is a vicious error. A text-book should be the teacher's friend, guide, and helper. It may be a powerful aid and resource; it can never take the place of the teacher's personal enthusiasm, sympathy, and stimulus.

In these books teachers will find a great variety of material which they can use in accordance with their best judgment. Exercises are given for copying, for dictation, for reproduction of what has been learned, or read, or heard; for picture study and description; for letter-writing; for recording the results of observation and experience; for the use of words and their synonyms; for practice in the use of correct forms. Selections from the best literature are given to be studied and learned, and to furnish suggestions for kindred work from the school readers; ample provision is made for the correlation of nature work with language; and the elements of grammar are inductively presented.

The lessons are not of uniform length; they are graded, and those of a kind are arranged accordingly; but, in general, they are not dependent consecutively one upon another. The order

of them, therefore, may often be changed at discretion; some may be omitted, some divided; others may be amplified and dwelt upon.

The inductive method has been followed throughout. A right use of the suggestive questions will lead to habits of thought, observation, and investigation along given lines. Other questions may be added, but the direct imparting of information will not often be necessary.

Oral lessons should precede and outnumber written lessons. Each exercise should be the subject of conversation and study before any attempt is made to write it.

An especial effort should be made by the teacher to see that the child's thought is clear and distinct in his own mind. The first thoughts of children are, and perhaps ought to be, more or less hazy. It is the business of the teacher in English to dissipate the fog, to disentangle confused ideas, to induce habits of clear and orderly thinking. Much can be accomplished toward this end by training the child from the start to grasp firmly the units of discourse, — the sentence, the paragraph, and the whole composition. This does not mean that children are to learn to talk about these things, but that they must somehow gradually acquire a sense for them.

A final word of caution may not be out of place. Teachers of English are apt to attach much importance to the formal side of their instruction and to assume that a pupil's facility in reciting rules and detecting errors of speech is a sure sign of progress. The formal side must not, of course, be overlooked, but it should never be forgotten that the end of all instruction in English is growth in power of expression and appreciation. Drill which contributes to this end is good. Drill which, falling short of this end, merely fills the child's mind with rules and symbols, is a grievous waste of time.

CONTENTS

PAGE

PREFACE iii
SUGGESTIONS TO TEACHERS vii

PART I. — SENTENCE STRUCTURE 1–77

CHAPTER

I. SENTENCE: KINDS 4
II. SUBJECT AND PREDICATE 5
SUBJECT 5
PREDICATE 6
SUBJECT AND PREDICATE COMBINED 8
SIMPLE SUBJECT AND PREDICATE 9
OF INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES 13
OF IMPERATIVE SENTENCES 13
III. KINDS OF WORDS 15–42
NOUNS 15
PRONOUNS 18
VERBS 20
ADJECTIVES 24
ADVERBS 27
PREPOSITIONS 30
CONJUNCTIONS 36
INTERJECTIONS 39
SUMMARY 40
IV. SENTENCE-BUILDING 43–71
INCOMPLETE VERBS AND THEIR COMPLEMENTS 43
COPULATIVE VERBS 44
TRANSITIVE VERBS 47
COMPLEMENTS 50
COMPLETE VERBS 52
THE ESSENTIALS OF A SENTENCE 54
MODIFIERS 56
ADJECTIVES 57
ADVERBS 59
ADJECTIVE AND ADVERB PHRASES 60
ADJECTIVE AND ADVERB CLAUSES 61

CHAPTER PAGE

IV. Sentence-Building — *Continued.*
Prepositional Phrases 63
Possessives 64
Appositives 66
Possessive and Appositive Phrases 67
Appositive Clauses 68
Summary: Modifiers 69
Summary: Kinds of Sentences 70
V. Sentence-Analysis 72–77

PART II. — PARTS OF SPEECH 78–243

VI. Nouns 78
Kinds 78
Inflection 82
Uses 92
Parsing 101
Summary 104
VII. Pronouns 106
Kinds 106
Inflection 114
Uses 117
Parsing 121
Summary 122
Directions for the Use of 122
Number Forms 122
Case Forms 126
Choice of Pronouns 129
VIII. Adjectives 132–143
Kinds 132
Inflection 134
Uses 138
Parsing 138
Summary 139
Directions for the Use of 140
IX. Verbs 144–186
Kinds 144
Inflection 147
Tenses 148
Number and Person 149
Verbal Nouns and Verbal Adjectives 151
Conjugation 154

CHAPTER PAGE

IX. Verbs — *Continued.*
Mode . . . 157
Verb Phrases . . . 160
Future Tense . . . 161
Perfect Tenses . . . 162
Potential Forms . . . 163
Conjugation . . . 164
Emphatic Verb Phrases . . . 167
Progressive Verb Phrases . . . 168
Passive Verb Phrases . . . 168
Conjugation . . . 172
Parsing . . . 174
Summary . . . 175
Directions for the Use of Verb Forms . . . 176
X. Infinitives and Participles . . . 187
Infinitives . . . 187
Forms . . . 187
Uses . . . 188
Summary: Forms for Parsing . . . 192
Exercise in Parsing . . . 193
Directions for the Use of . . . 194
Participles . . . 195
Kinds . . . 195
Uses . . . 196
Summary: Forms for Parsing . . . 197
Exercise in Parsing . . . 198
XI. Adverbs . . . 200–207
Kinds . . . 200
Inflection . . . 204
Parsing . . . 204
Summary . . . 205
Directions for the Use of Adverbs . . . 206
XII. Prepositions . . . 208–211
Uses and Parsing . . . 208
Directions for the Use of . . . 210
XIII. Conjunctions . . . 212–218
Kinds . . . 212
Parsing . . . 216
Summary: Forms for Parsing . . . 216
Directions for the Use of . . . 217
XIV. Interjections . . . 219–220

CHAPTER PAGE

XV. Sentences and Their Elements, Etc. 221–237
Summary 221
Essentials of a Sentence 221
Modifiers 222
Independent Expressions 223
Compound Elements 224
Elliptical Sentences 224
Clauses and Clause Connectives 225
Analysis of Clauses 226
Variety of Expression 228
Selections for Analysis and Parsing 229

APPENDIX I 234–244
Case as a Relation 234
List of Irregular Verbs 237
Subjunctive Mode 241

PART III. — LESSONS IN COMPOSITION

LESSON

Chapter I. — Capitals, Punctuation, Etc. 244–250
I. Use of Capitals 244
II. Some Rules for Punctuation 245
III. Quotations 248
IV. Review of Capitals, Punctuation, Etc. 249

Chapter II. — The Choice of Words 251–265
V. Synonyms 251
VI. Synonyms 252
VII. Variety of Expression 253
VIII. Synonyms Discriminated 253
IX. Words Related in Meaning 255
X. Right Words and Wrong Words 256
XI. Expressions to be Avoided 258
XII. Right Words and Wrong Words 259
XIII. Words Similar in Form 260
XIV. Words Somewhat Alike 261
XV. Unnecessary Words 261
XVI. Inappropriate Words 262
XVII. Big and Little Words 263
XVIII. Ambiguous Words 264
XIX. Variety in Expression 265

LESSON		PAGE
	CHAPTER III. — LETTER WRITING	266–268
XX.	THE HEADING (OUTLINE MODEL)	266
XXI.	THE ADDRESS AND THE SALUTATION	269
XXII.	THE BODY, THE ENDING, AND THE SIGNATURE (MODEL FORMS)	271
XXIII.	BUSINESS LETTERS (MODEL FORMS)	275
XXIV.	REPLY TO AN ADVERTISEMENT (MODEL FORM)	279
XXV.	NOTES OF INVITATION (MODEL FORMS)	280
XXVI.	THE ENVELOPE (MODEL FORMS)	282
XXVII.	TELEGRAMS	285
	CHAPTER IV. — NARRATIVES	287–307
XXVIII.	HOW TO TELL A STORY	287
XXIX.	A STORY TO BE STUDIED. *An Unwelcome Visitor*	288
XXX.	A STORY TO COMPLETE	291
XXXI.	A LETTER AND A STORY	292
XXXII.	A STORY FROM A POEM. *The Oyster and Its Claimants*	293
XXXIII.	A STORY FROM A PICTURE. *The Hunters*	294
XXXIV.	A SUGGESTED STORY	295
XXXV.	THE MEANING OF THE TERM NARRATIVE	295
XXXVI.	BIOGRAPHICAL SKETCHES	297
XXXVII.	THE STORY OF COLUMBUS. *Columbus.* Picture, *Joaquin Miller*	298
XXXVIII.	THE STORY OF GEORGE WASHINGTON	300
XXXIX.	LIVES OF NOTED MEN AND WOMEN, STATESMEN, INVENTORS, AUTHORS	301
XL.	HISTORICAL SKETCHES (Outlines)	302
XLI.	A STORY TO TELL. *Inchcape Rock*	304
XLII.	STORY TO REPRODUCE. *The African Chief*	305
XLIII.	STORY TO WRITE. *The White-footed Deer*	305
XLIV.	STORY TO RETELL. *Paul Revere's Ride*	305
XLV.	STORY TO STUDY AND WRITE. *Nauhaught, the Deacon*	306
XLVI.	STORY OF THE FROST	306
XLVII.	STORIES FROM VARIOUS SOURCES	307
	CHAPTER V. — DESCRIPTIONS	308–327
XLVIII.	PICTURES IN A POEM. *Midsummer*	308
XLIX.	STUDY OF A POEM. *Midwinter*	310
L.	DESCRIPTIVE WORDS TO BE SUPPLIED	311
LI.	PICTURE. *Divided Affection*	312
LII.	DIRECTIONS FOR DESCRIBING	313

LESSON		PAGE
LIII.	Comparison and Contrast	315
LIV.	Study of Faces. *Three Faces*	317
LV.	Geographical Descriptions (Outlines)	318
LVI.	Description of Processes	319
LVII.	A Picture and a Poem. *Congress of Dogs*	320
LVIII.	Description of Animals (Outlines)	322
LIX.	Description of Plants (Outline)	325
LX.	Study of Picture: *Listening Dogs*	326
LXI.	Description of Persons (Outline)	327
	Chapter VI. — Explanations	328–338
LXII.	An Example of Explanation	328
LXIII.	Directions for Explaining	329
LXIV.	Explaining a Look	331
LXV.	Point of a Story	331
LXVI.	Some Passages to be Explained	332
LXVII.	A Poem to Learn and Explain. *The Prayer Perfect.* Picture, *James Whitcomb Riley*	333
LXVIII.	Study of a Poem. *Abou Ben Adhem*	334
LXIX.	Meaning of a Poem. *The Chambered Nautilus*	335
LXX.	Ancient Weapons and Tools (Picture)	337
LXXI.	An Old Mill (Picture)	338
LXXII.	Some Interesting Words	338
	Chapter VII. — Paragraphs	339–343
LXXIII.	What a Paragraph is	339
LXXIV.	Paragraphs to be Separated	340
LXXV.	Order of Sentences	342
LXXVI.	Study of Poems. *The Water Fowl; Concord Hymn*	343
	APPENDIX II.	344–364
	Capitals, Punctuation, etc.	344
	Development of Our Language	350
	Derivation and Word Building	355
	Index	364

LESSONS IN ENGLISH

BOOK TWO

PART ONE

SENTENCE-STRUCTURE

CHAPTER I

THE SENTENCE: KINDS

1. When we converse with one another or write letters to our friends, the words that belong together fall into groups, each group expressing a single complete thought.

2. If we were to go into the woods together, we might say —

1. **I should like to come here every day.**
2. **Are there any flowers there?**
3. **Listen to the brook.**

Writing to a friend, we might say —

4. **I am coming home tomorrow.**
5. **Will you meet me at the station?**
6. **Please show this letter to mother.**

Such groups of words are called sentences.

3. A sentence is a group of words expressing a single complete thought.

4. Let us see for what purpose each of these sentences is used.

Read sentences 1 and 4. In these we say what we *know* or *believe.*

Read sentences 2 and 5. In these we do not say that anything *does* or *is* so and so, we only *ask* about it; and in sentences 3 and 6 we *request* or *order* something to be done. Can you express a thought clearly without a sentence?

Exercise 1.— 1. Write two questions that might be asked after a great fire. Two commands that might be given. Two statements that might be made.

2. Write two sentences of each kind as if you were on a railway train.

Any other sentences we could make would do one of these three things — assert, ask, or order. Hence we say that —

5. Sentences are complete assertions, questions, or commands.

Exercise 2. — 1. What is the meaning of "assert"?

2. Make assertions in answer to the two questions in § 2.
3. Make replies to the two requests.
4. Change the two assertions to questions.

Exercise 3. —1. Think about each of these groups of words, and then tell whether it is a **complete sentence** or only **part of one.** Give your reason thus:

"Green with leaves" is not a sentence, because it does not form a statement, question, or command.

1. A fine October morning.
2. The leaves are red and green.
3. And some yellow.
4. Here are some purplish ones.
5. None are brown.
6. The trees in the swamps.
7. Very few flowers remain.
8. All along the road to the pond.
9. Found twenty dead trees.
10. We set them on fire.
11. O such a blaze!
12. The smoke filled the air.
13. A strong wind from the northwest.
14. Let us try to find some nuts.
15. If it rains.
16. Three gray squirrels in a hollow tree.

2. Change those of the preceding groups that are only **parts** of sentences, into **complete sentences** by using additional words.

3. Tell in your own words what they are all about, as if you were telling a story.

6. We have seen that every sentence either asserts or asks or orders. Hence we say that —

There are *three kinds of sentences*. We call them assertive, interrogative, and imperative.

We shall learn later that sentences are also classified according to their *forms*.

7. **An Assertive Sentence states a fact or an opinion.**

As — The old cat is washing her face. It will rain tomorrow.

8. **An Interrogative Sentence asks a question.**

As — Will it rain tomorrow?

9. **An Imperative Sentence gives a command, makes a request, or expresses a wish.**

As — Rain, rain, go away. Please pass me the sugar. May you live long and be happy.

Exercise 4. — 1. After reading each of these sentences, tell whether it is **assertive, interrogative,** or **imperative.** Give your reason thus:

"Cheer up" is an imperative sentence, because it gives a command.

1. Have you ever heard of Australia?
2. That's a strange question. Of course I have.
3. Do not be provoked.
4. I am going there next month.
5. Should you like to be my companion?
6. Indeed I should.
7. Do you really mean it?
8. Tell me.
9. How long should we stay?
10. Think how I should enjoy it.
11. You *will* take me.
12. Won't you say yes?
13. O I must go!
14. Stop!
15. Remember how far it is.

2. Listen to the reading of sentences by your teacher, and tell the kind of each as you hear it.

3. Classify the sentences in any of the subsequent exercises in this book.

4. What does "interrogative" mean?

10. Exclamations. Sentences of any of these three classes may also be exclamatory; that is, they may also express excitement, surprise, impatience, etc. For example:

ASSERTIVE: 'Tis false! There he goes!
INTERROGATIVE: Who would be afraid!
IMPERATIVE: Come on! Keep your courage up!

Exercise 5. — Which of the sentences in Ex. 4 are also exclamatory? What kind of sentence is each of these?

1. Hark!
2. Who cares!
3. Do come here!
4. We shall be so happy!
5. Rouse, ye Romans!
6. May Heaven bless you!
7. What do you say, you rascal!
8. Who would have believed it!

11. If there are any purely exclamatory sentences, they are such as begin with *how* or *what*, like —

How many colors the sunset shows!
What a long ride it would be to the moon!

but in many cases they are really shortened forms of command sentences — *See* **how many colors**, etc. *Think* **what a long ride**, etc.

CHAPTER II

Subject and Predicate

A. THE SUBJECT

12. Every assertive sentence must of course be an assertion *about something.* Whenever we make a statement, we say that *something* is or does so and so.

Exercise 6. — Read each sentence, and tell what the statement is about.

1. Embers glow.
2. Opals gleam.
3. Fire-flies glint.
4. Gold glitters.
5. Dewdrops glisten.
6. Sunsets flame.
7. Lamps flare.
8. Lightning flashes.
9. Candles flicker.
10. Torches blaze.
11. Diamonds sparkle.
12. Stars twinkle.

13. The part of the sentence that names *what we speak of* is called the *subject.* Thus, in the sentence, *Bees hum,* we speak of *bees,* and the word *bees* is the subject.

Exercise 7. — What is the **subject** in the following sentences? Give your reason thus :

"Horses neigh." In this sentence the word "horses" is the subject, because it names what we speak of.

1. Sparrows chirp.
2. Chickens peep.
3. Cocks crow.
4. Owls screech.
5. Crows caw.
6. Larks sing.
7. Doves coo.
8. Geese cackle.
9. Hens cluck.

14. In the following sentences the same statement is made about four different things:

Butterflies find honey in flowers.
Honey-bees find honey in flowers.
Swift humming-birds find honey in flowers.
Great burly bumble-bees find honey in flowers.

Read the subject of each one, and tell how many words are used in forming it.

Exercise 8. — What is the **subject** in each sentence? Give your reason thus :

"The deep blue sea flows round the world." In this sentence the words "The deep blue sea" are the subject, for they name that which we speak of.

1. The ocean is bitter and salt.
2. The wind was dying away.
3. Large and small fishes came to the surface to breathe.
4. Several whales were spouting.
5. Seven icebergs were drifting past.
6. What sign of life was there?
7. A polar bear could be seen amidst the ice and snow.
8. The strongest ships are often crushed in the ice-floes.
9. Whale-fishing is a dangerous occupation.
10. D is the first letter of danger and of death.

15. The Subject of a sentence names that about which something is said.

B. THE PREDICATE

16. In every assertive sentence something *is said about* one thing or another.

Exercise 9. — What is said of the things named in each of these sentences?

1. Clouds float.
2. Rain falls.
3. Sleet drives.
4. Snow drifts.
5. Hail rattles.
6. Water splashes.
7. Winds blow.
8. Waves break.
9. Breakers roar.
10. Billows roll.
11. Oceans surge.
12. Tides flow.

17. This part that states, declares, or asserts, is called the *predicate.* Thus, in the sentence, *Frogs croak,* the word *croak* is the predicate, because it asserts something about frogs.

Exercise 10. — What is the **predicate** in these sentences? Give your reasons thus:

"Lions roar." In this sentence "roar" is the predicate, because it asserts something about lions.

1. Donkeys bray.
2. Bears growl.
3. Wolves howl.
4. Dogs bark.
5. Lambs bleat.
6. Monkeys chatter.
7. The sea is rough.
8. The sails are rent.
9. We drop anchor.

18. In the following sentences four different statements are made about the same thing:

Icebergs **melt slowly.**
Icebergs **come from the polar regions.**
Icebergs **drift with the polar currents.**
Icebergs **are very dangerous to commerce.**

Melt slowly in the first is the predicate, because it tells what is asserted of icebergs.

Observe that the predicate of each of the other three sentences consists of several words.

Exercise 11. — 1. What is the **predicate** in each sentence? Give your reason thus:

"The night was nearly spent." Here "was nearly spent" is the predicate, because it is what is said about "the night."

1. All nature was asleep.
2. Every leaf was still.
3. The dew was sparkling.
4. The sun had just appeared.
5. Robins and bluebirds began to flutter about.
6. Gray smoke curled up from the chimneys.
7. The stage-horn sounded in the distance.
8. A dusty drover was hurrying some sheep along the road.
9. Everything seemed to catch the spirit of the morning.

2. Copy the sentences in Exercise 8, and draw a vertical line between the subject and the predicate, thus:

The earth | moves round the sun.

19. The Predicate of a sentence tells what is said about the subject.

C. SUBJECT AND PREDICATE COMBINED

20. We have found that every assertive sentence has two necessary parts — the *subject*, or that about which the assertion is made, and the *predicate*, or that which is asserted of the subject.

Two words therefore may make a sentence.

In commands, as — **Come,** the subject "you" or "thou" is usually understood.

Exercise 12. — Find in the following list the words that seem to belong together. Combine these words in sentences using one word as subject and one as predicate:

fishes	frogs	men	girls	monkeys
crawl	walk	trot	leap	chatter
worms	birds	boys	horses	ships
fly	float	swim	run	dance

21. We generally require *more than one word* to show what we wish to speak of. Thus, we may wish to say that *Trees grow*, meaning trees in general; but if we wish to speak more definitely, we say —

Those trees | grow, or
Those tall trees | grow, or
Those tall trees with arching branches | grow.

So, too, generally more than one word is needed to express what we wish to say about anything. Thus, we may say —

The trees | **grow**, or
The trees | **grow rapidly**, or
The trees | **grow rapidly this year**, or
The trees | **grow rapidly this year without care.**

Hence the subject and the predicate may each consist of several words.

Exercise 13. — **Write predicates** of *more than one word* for these subjects; that is, say something so as to make an assertive sentence:

1. Stars
2. The sun
3. The moon
4. Humming-birds
5. Victoria
6. Alfred the Great
7. Honesty
8. Kindness
9. The Philippines
10. Electricity
11. My photograph
12. Oil-paintings
13. Peacocks
14. Squirrels
15. The phonograph
16. Anger
17. The United States
18. The Chinese

Exercise 14. — **Write subjects** of *more than one word* for these predicates:

1. are chirping.
2. are buzzing.
3. are croaking.
4. is the President of the United States.
5. was a great general.
6. shade the streets.
7. laid the wall.
8. built the house.
9. made the furniture.
10. are found in the woods.
11. live upon flesh.
12. are all used for food.
13. are found in menageries.
14. is a beautiful poem.

D. SIMPLE SUBJECT AND PREDICATE

22. If we think about the sentences we use, we see that the subject part is very different from the predicate part.

Exercise 15. — Which of these expressions might be used as **predicates?**

1. the smoke
2. over the valley
3. disappeared
4. poisonous gases
5. covers the ground
6. morning mists
7. may settle
8. was scattered
9. a delicate perfume
10. will evaporate
11. smells very sweet
12. of a furnace

23. Some of our words, as —

John, eagles, dewdrops, courage, childhood,

are *names* of things, and, like **him, I, you,** etc., they cannot be used to state or assert. But we see at once that *asserting* words, like —

catches, soar, glisten, strengthens, hastens,

are very different, and that we do not use them as subjects.

24. The subject of a simple sentence must always contain one word or group of words that serves as a name for what we speak of. The most of such words are called *nouns*. The predicate must always contain an assertive word called a *verb*.

These are the necessary or essential parts of every subject and predicate, no matter how long it happens to be.

Thus in the sentence —

Those tall elm trees grow rapidly this year, the complete subject is **Those tall elm trees;** but of these four words the necessary or essential one is **trees,** for it names what we speak of. We call it the essential or **simple subject.**

So in the complete predicate, **grow rapidly this year,** the essential word is **grow;** for it is the word that makes the assertion. We call it the **simple predicate.**

The words *those* and *tall* are used with *trees* to show that only a limited number of trees is meant. *Rapidly* and *this year* are used with *grow* to add to its meaning by showing *how* and *when.*

25. Words used in this way with the simple subject and simple predicate of a sentence are called **modifiers,** because they *modify* or change the application or meaning of the words with which they are used.

Exercise 16. — Which of these words is a **modifier** of the other. Try to tell how it affects its application or meaning.

few books	speaks distinctly	very true
high chimneys	comes quickly	every person
some stars	walks carefully	somewhat better
faint sounds	writes to-day	never despairs

Use each of these expressions in a sentence.

26. A Modifier is a word or group of words used with another word to change its meaning or application.

Exercise 17. — Read carefully the following sentences. Notice what ideas or pictures they suggest to you. Then **lengthen each sentence** by adding modifiers to the simple subject and to the simple predicate, so as to make a fuller and more definite statement. Thus:

"Trouble | arises." Serious trouble among friends | often arises from trifling causes.

1. ivies grew
2. ships sail
3. pictures hang
4. carpenter built
5. house stood
6. gale broke
7. walls fell
8. windows looked
9. room contained

Exercise 18. — 1. In the following sentences what is the whole or **complete** subject?

2. Find the **simple** subject; that is, the one word that names what the assertion is about.

1. Our journey soon begins.
2. The last day has come.
3. Many years of happiness are gone.
4. All the future is uncertain.
5. A cold, bleak wind is blowing.
6. Traveling by night seems dreary.
7. The road to town is rough and steep.
8. For a week no friends will greet us.

27. The Complete Subject of a sentence is the simple subject and its modifiers.

28. The Simple Subject of a sentence is the subject without modifiers.

Exercise 19. — 1. In these sentences what is the **complete** predicate?

1. The storm passed this side of the mountains.
2. Our prospects brightened at once.
3. We hoped for the best.
4. Time decides all questions.
5. Something always happens unexpectedly.
6. The surprise gives us courage.
7. The morning finds our journey ended.
8. Who cares for wintry storms?

2. Find the **simple** predicate; that is, find the asserting word.

29. The Complete Predicate of a sentence is the simple predicate and its modifiers.

30. The Simple Predicate of a sentence is the predicate without modifiers.

Exercise 20. — Write these sentences; separate the principal parts by a vertical line; draw a *wavy* line under the **simple subject,** and a *straight* line under the verb, or **simple predicate,** thus:

The leaves of this tree | fall every autumn.

1. The southern forest yields the largest timber.
2. The trunks of some trees measure several feet in diameter.
3. The elms resemble human beings.
4. Their arching tops almost speak to us.
5. Whispers come from groves of pine.
6. Their needle-like leaves make a luxurious carpet.
7. The sturdy oak stands for stability and strength.
8. The wood of this tree serves many useful purposes.
9. The lifetime of a tree depends in part on its surroundings.
10. A century in the forest makes a venerable giant.
11. The groves were God's first temples.

31. Inverted Order. In simple assertive sentences the subject usually comes before the predicate. Sometimes, however, this order is changed or **inverted** for the sake of emphasis or clearness, or in poetry for other reasons.

Exercise 21. — 1. Arrange each of these sentences in the usual order. Is there a change of meaning? A loss of force?

1. Dark was the night.
2. Flashed all their sabers bare.
3. Down the hillside ran a small brook.
4. Vain were all their efforts.
5. Into each life some rain must fall.
6. Around this valley rise
   The purple hills of Paradise.
7. Blessed are the merciful.
8. Faithful are the wounds of a friend.
9. Then, if ever, come perfect days.
10. On sky and mountain wall,
    Are God's great pictures hung.
11. That mercy I to others show,
    That mercy show to me.

2. Point out subject and predicate, both simple and complete.

32. When the subject follows the verb the sentence is said to be in **inverted order.**

Many inverted sentences are introduced by *there*. As —

There is nothing new under the sun.

33. Interrogative Sentences. The subject of an interrogative sentence generally follows the verb or some part of it. Often an interrogative word introduces the sentence. As —

Have you heard the news? **When** shall you come?

Exercise 22. — Indicate the complete and the simple subject and predicate.

1. When was Rome founded?
2. What is the price of wisdom?
3. Where is ivory found?
4. Shall we give up in despair?
5. Come ye in peace, or come ye in war?
6. Why do birds sing?
7. Is it a time to be sad?
8. Can you count the stars?
9. Whither shall I flee from thy presence?
10. Is there no hope of peace?
11. There will be no night there.

34. Imperative Sentences. The subject of an imperative sentence represents the person to whom the command is given and is generally omitted. It is understood to be *you* (*thou* or *ye* in solemn or Biblical language) and when expressed commonly follows the verb. As —

Stand (you) firm. Sit (thou) here.

Exercise 23. — Find the complete and the simple subject and predicate.

1. Save in youth to spend in age.
2. Bring ye the tribute money.
3. Neither a borrower nor a lender be.
4. Praise God from whom all blessings flow.
5. Keep thy tongue from evil.
6. May happiness attend you.

7. Announced by all the trumpets of the sky
   Arrives the snow.
8. April cold with dropping rain
   Willows and lilacs brings again.
9. Learn the sweet magic of a cheerful face.
10. The ploughman homeward plods his weary way.
11. An honest man's the noblest work of God.
12. The spacious firmament on high,
    With all the blue ethereal sky,
    And spangled heavens, a shining frame,
    Their great Original proclaim.
13. Full many a gem of purest ray serene
    The dark unfathomed caves of ocean bear.
14. Lead thou me on.

CHAPTER III

Kinds of Words

35. We have studied in Chapter II the two most important ways of **using** words, and therefore know what the two principal kinds are.

Words **used to assert,** even if they have very different meanings, are all classed together as **verbs;** and when we speak of **nouns** we always mean words that are **used as names.**

So, too, all other words are divided into classes according to the way we **use** them in making sentences. Hence we say that —

36. Words are divided into kinds or classes according to their use in sentences.

We shall find that there are *eight* of these classes, and we call them the **Parts of Speech.**

37. In order that we may the better understand the structure of sentences, let us examine briefly the various **kinds** of words as determined by their **use.**

I. NOUNS

Exercise 24. — 1. Mention five kinds of birds; of fur-bearing animals.

2. Name five things you have seen in a store; at a fair.

3. Name five things to be seen at the seaside, or by a river. Name five to be seen —

On a ship. In a park. Among mountains. On a farm. In a mill. In a cotton field.

4. Name several things to be heard —

On the street. When traveling. In church. In the night.

5. What are four things that make —

A good scholar? A good soldier? A boy's character? A poor scholar?

38. About half the words in our language are alike in one respect; that is, they are names of things, and are therefore called *Nouns*.

Noun is derived from a Latin word meaning *name*.

Exercise 25. — Examine these sentences carefully, and mention every name or **noun** that you find:

1. The garden is brilliant with daffodils and tulips.
2. Their beauty depends much upon their colors.
3. This brook is full of fine trout.
4. "Poor Richard" was born in Boston.
5. Hear the jingle of the sleigh-bells.
6. A cry of joy rings through the land.
7. How delicate the perfume is!
8. The merry shouts of children fill the air.
9. What report did the messenger bring?
10. The breeze brings the odor of the flowers.

39. Some nouns stand for such things as can be seen, as, **daffodils, beauty, Boston**; others for what we hear, as, **jingle, cry, shout**; some for what we can only smell, as, **fragrance, odor**; others for what can be felt in some way, as, **pain, fear**; and when we come to think more about all such things we find use for many other nouns, as, **innocence, charm, childhood.**

40. A noun is a word used as the name of something.

41. An assertion may be made about anything we can name, and so any noun may be the subject of a sentence. But we often use the name of something about which we do not make

any statement, and so we may have in one sentence many nouns besides the subject. Thus:

This steamship | has two red paddle-wheels, a black stack for the smoke, and three tall masts without sails.

Here **steamship** is the subject, and the complete predicate is a long one, containing five nouns. What are they?

Exercise 26. — 1. Which of the nouns in Exercise 25 do not belong to the subject?

2. These nouns will suggest a story. Write five sentences such as might be used in this story, employing at least three of the nouns in each sentence:

flock	raven	fox	thief	wings
geese	piece	tail	home	flapping
trees	cheese	brush	dinner	noise

42. When the complete subject contains the names of several things, we must be careful to distinguish the one *essential* word, which if it stood alone, would still name the subject. Thus, in the sentence —

The famous palace of the kings of the Moors at Granada, in Spain, was called the Alhambra —

we have five nouns in the complete subject; but we see that it is the **palace** that was called the Alhambra. The other words are added to show *which* palace is meant.

We shall use the word "subject" hereafter to mean the *simple* subject.

Exercise 27. — Make a list of the twenty-five **nouns** in these sentences. Draw a wavy line under the eleven used as **subjects.**

1. The darkest clouds bring rain.
2. The leaves of the trees rustled in the wind.
3. Great clouds of smoke were floating in the air.
4. The rays of the sun were almost entirely obscured.
5. A dim light came in at the windows.
6. Our tasks were left undone.

7. At night the moon could not be seen.
8. The trees along the river were torn up by the roots.
9. The birds' feathers were wet and dripping.
10. The brooks on the mountains were swollen to torrents.
11. A wooden bridge near the town was carried away.

II. PRONOUNS

1. Read these sentences: Mr. Richardson was a wealthy man. **He** kept many horses. **These** were **his** favorites. **They** lived in a fine stable. **It** was like a dwelling-house.

2. Who is meant by **he**? What by **these**? By **his**? By **they**? To what does **it** refer?

3. Read the sentences, using these other words instead of **he, they,** etc., but without changing the meaning.

4. Which do you think is the better way to make these assertions? Give the reason.

43. Besides nouns, there are a few other words, almost meaningless in themselves, such as *he, these, they, it,* which often stand for something we have just mentioned, no matter what it is.

Thus, if any one said, **The President has inspected the Navy,** he might add, **He found it in fair condition;** but he would not repeat the nouns, and say that **The President found the Navy in fair condition.**

So when we point to a thing, instead of calling it by name, we generally use a word of this kind, like *this* or *that, these* or *those.*

44. Such words are called **Pronouns** because they take the place of nouns; and we always prefer to use them when we can be readily understood.

Exercise 28. — 1. Try to **improve** the following by using other words instead of repeating the nouns:

(a) The people were returning from work. The work was very hard. The work seemed to make the people weary.

(b) One woman was very ill. This woman was being carried by the woman's husband. The husband was the town-crier.

2. If Jane were speaking to John, would she say, "John surprised Jane," or, "You surprised **me**"? If Carl were greeting his friend William, what would he say **instead** of "Carl is glad to see William"?

45. When we speak or **write** to a person, we do not constantly refer to him by name; we say *you*, instead: and when we say anything about ourselves, we never think of using our names; for, no matter what they are, we almost always say, *I*, *me*, *myself*, *we*, *us*, and so on.

Thus, we should say, **I** wish **you** would come to see **me**; and the reply might be, **We** shall be glad to have **you** entertain **us**.

Exercise 29. — 1. Select the **pronouns** in these sentences; that is, the words used instead of nouns.

1. The doctor is coming.
2. Call to him.
3. Have you improved?
4. Yes, I feel quite well.
5. Early this morning I could see your arms stretched out over the snow.
6. It was perfectly white.
7. They seemed to me to be frozen.
8. The nurse was with us.
9. She warmed them by rubbing.
10. You must thank her.
11. We are very glad.

2. Which of these pronouns are used as **subjects**?

46. When we do not know the name of a person or a thing we use a pronoun to ask a question. Thus:

Who brought the news?
What caused the fire?
Which did you choose?
Whom shall we send?

Exercise 30. — 1. Write assertive sentences in answer to the preceding questions. 2. What words have you used in place of the pronouns? 3. Write a telegram containing imperative or interrogative sentences, using two of these pronouns in each one: I, myself; me, mine; we, ourselves; us, ours.

47. Every one of the thousands of nouns in our language, and every expression, however long, that is used like a noun to name a person or a thing, can be replaced at one time or another by a pronoun.

Exercise 31. — In these sentences give the whole expression that each pronoun takes the place of:

1. The sail down the river was very pleasant.
2. It occupied about nine hours.
3. We met several fine yachts.
4. They seemed to be racing.
5. The captain of the steamer told many of his adventures.
6. Two of them were exciting.
7. His first vessel was a brigantine of six hundred tons.
8. She foundered off the coast of Jamaica.
9. He told us how he was forced to abandon her.

48. **A Pronoun is a word that is used instead of a noun.**

The word "pronoun" means *for* a *noun.*

49. The word for which a pronoun stands is called its **Antecedent.**

"Hardy spoke to his landlady as he went out, and told her he would not be back to dinner." In this sentence the antecedent of *he* is *Hardy* the antecedent of *her* is *landlady.*

Exercise 32. — Point out the antecedent of the pronouns in Exercise 31.

III. VERBS

Exercise 33. — 1. What are assertive sentences? Give an example 2. What are the other kinds? Make a sentence of each kind. 3. Explain the meaning of "assert." 4. Make assertions about five things

that you see. 5. Are the following expressions sentences of any sort? Tell your reason.

Squirrels in hollow trees.	We chestnuts in October.
The sap in the spring.	The ice thick enough to bear.

6. Make assertive sentences of them by using *live, flows, gather, is.*
7. Change them to interrogative sentences.

50. Words used to *assert* are called **verbs**. They are not as numerous as nouns, but they form an equally important class, since complete sentences cannot be framed without them.

51. To make a complete sentence we need only give the *name* of something, and say or *assert* something about it. With a *noun* or a pronoun and a *verb* we can do just this. As —

Flowers fade. I command. Grass withers. They obey.

Without a verb there can be no assertion — no predicate — no sentence.

Exercise 34. — What kind of word will make sentences of the following? Supply what is needed.

1. Rubber —— from South America.
2. The pure gum —— very valuable.
3. Water —— the wheels of the mill.
4. The cotton-plant —— in the Gulf States.
5. A letter —— three thousand miles for two cents.
6. The Gulf Stream —— north-east.
7. Behring Strait —— the Arctic and the Pacific Oceans.
8. The signal service —— a fair day to-morrow.
9. The snow —— ten feet deep in the woods last winter.
10. The boys all —— hunting yesterday.
11. The fox —— by hiding under a rock.
12. Trout-fishing —— considerable skill.

52. Verb Phrases. The verb may be *a single word* that asserts; as when we say —

The tree | **grows,** meaning *now, or*
The tree | **grew,** meaning *some time ago.*

But if we wish to speak of time to come, we must say —

The tree | **will grow;**

and in all these sentences —

The tree | **is growing.**
The tree | **has grown.**
The tree | **would have grown.**
The tree | **may be growing.**
The tree | **might have been growing.**

we need the help of one, two, or three *other* words besides *grown* and *growing,* in order to assert what we wish about the growth of the tree. We see, then, that in these sentences we have two, three, or even four words grouped together to do the work of a single verb. Such word-groups are called **phrases.**

53. A Phrase is a group of related words used as some part of speech, but not containing a subject and predicate.

54. When, as here, such a group is equivalent to a verb, we call it **a verb phrase.**

The words that form a verb phrase are often separated by other words As : *Do* not *talk* so fast. The train *will* not always *be* late. The work *could* not well *have been* more quickly *done.*

Exercise 35. — Select the expressions of more than one word that take the place of single verbs; that is to say, the **verb phrases.**

1. The message was brought an hour ago.
2. We had hoped for better news.
3. But we must lose no time.
4. The best horses have been sent over the turnpike.
5. They may overtake the party.
6. Otherwise nothing but failure awaits us.
7. We might have kept Nero.
8. It is too late now.
9. Perhaps we shall meet them all at Castleton.
10. Saddle your horses at once.
11. The back road will be safest.
12. I should inquire for them at Newbury.
13. They must have gone early.

55. A Verb is an asserting word or phrase.

The term "verb" means *word.*

56. A Verb phrase is a group of words used as a single verb.

Verb phrases are often called **verbs.**

We shall learn sometime that many other groups of words used like single words are also called *phrases.*

Exercise 36. — Select the single **verbs** and the **verb phrases.**

The air thickens. Familiar objects are hidden as by a mist. Paths disappear. Voices of teamsters are heard. Nothing can be seen in the road. Like a fog the snow hides all things. Not a breath of wind disturbs its descent. The branches of the trees are clothed as with wool Still the noiseless flakes fill the sky. A change has taken place.

57. It very often happens, as in these sentences —

The **man** has a son, They **man** the boats,

that there is no difference in the spelling of two words, one of which is a noun and the other a verb; and we must remember to decide about them by their **use.**

Exercise 37. — Distinguish between the **nouns** and the **verbs** that are spelled alike in these sentences. Thus:

"Pass" in the first sentence is a *verb;* "pass" in the seventh sentence is a *noun.*

1. Pass through here.
2. Order a load of stones.
3. Load them with care.
4. They work with their hands.
5. They care not for play.
6. He stones the stray dogs.
7. Fear not the pass.
8. Will you consent to the change?
9. We demand your surrender.
10. He drives without fear.
11. He hands me a whip.
12. He gave his consent reluctantly.
13. He dogs me while at my work.
14. We whip them by your order.
15. They play during my drives.
16. Surrender at our command.

IV. ADJECTIVES

Exercise 38. — 1. What is a noun?

2. Point out the nouns in the following phrases:

1. Green leaves.
2. Strong men.
3. Cold noses.
4. Some dogs.
5. Loud sounds.
6. Heavy blankets.
7. Lame ducks.
8. This house.

3. Why say *green leaves, strong men, some dogs,* rather than simply *leaves, men, dogs?* 4. Is anything added to the idea of leaves by the the word *green?* If so, what is it? 5. What is the use of *cold, loud,* and *this* in the phrases where they are used?

58. By the use of a certain class of words we can **add** to the meaning of a noun. We can thus **describe** what it names or **make it more definite.** For example, if someone asks you, "Do you like apples?" you may reply, "I like *some* apples, but not others. What kind of apples do you mean — *sour* apples or *sweet* apples?" By the use of the words *some, sour,* and *sweet* you have added to the meaning of the word *apples. Apples* alone means all apples. *Some* apples means a smaller number. *Sour apples* means a particular kind or class of apples.

Words which add to the meaning of nouns are called **adjectives.**

Exercise 39. — Name the adjectives in Exercise 38.

59. Most adjectives are used to describe persons or things. They tell the kind or class to which the person or thing belongs.

Exercise 40. — 1. Name the adjectives in the following sentences and tell what they describe.

1. Kind friends have come.
2. They brought us purple grapes.
3. Black clouds turn to rain.
4. Rolling stones gather no moss.
5. Farmers gather golden grain.
6. It is a warm day in July.
7. White, fleecy clouds are in the blue sky.
8. I see a large grasshopper on a pointed leaf.
9. He has eaten a small round hole in it.
10. My tapping on the leafy bough stops his merry song.
11. Then a green locust begins with a loud buzz.
12. The limp grass would be revived by a gentle rain or a heavy shower.

2. Copy eight of these sentences, underlining subject and verb. **Inclose the adjectives** that modify the subject in curves. Thus:

(**Kind**) friends have come.

60. Other adjectives affect the meaning of a noun in a different way. Thus, if we say,

"**The** king lived **a** year and **some** months in **this** city," we show that we mean only a *particular* king, only *one* year, about *how many* months, and *which* city. These words, **the, a, some, this**, are adjectives, because they *add* something to our meaning that was not expressed by the noun alone; but they do not tell what *kind* of king, year, month, or city, as if we were to say, "A **good** king lived a **dreary** year and three **tiresome** months in **a hostile** city."

61. Words that refer to number are of this sort; as —

one day	**sixteen** months	**first** minute
two weeks	**tenth** hour	**half** second

These show to how many or to which one the name applies; and there are about forty others, including —

a or **an, the,**	**every, few,**	**same, several,**
many, any, all,	**first, last,**	**this** or **these,**
each, either,	**much, no,**	**that** or **those.**

62. Such adjectives, without describing, add to the meaning of the noun by showing *which one,* or *how many.* Since they **determine** or **limit** the application of the noun, they are called **limiting** adjectives.

Exercise 41. — Select the adjectives that do not describe, but only show to which ones, or to how many, the noun applies. Tell what each one **limits.**

1. Eight men were on that committee.
2. February has twenty-nine days every fourth year.

3. Much harm arises from imprudence.
4. No man knows all things.
5. Every flock contains some black sheep.
6. This park contains forty-four acres.
7. All the trees in yonder row have stood there many years.
8. Several English elms and some maples were blown down.
9. That pond down the slope is used for skating every year.
10. There are no shade trees on either side of that street.
11. Few persons take much interest in such matters.
12. Both rivers rise in the same plateau.

63. An Adjective is a word used to describe some person or thing, or to limit a noun.

The word "adjective" means *that which is added.*

64. Descriptive or **qualifying** adjectives **describe** what is mentioned.

Limiting adjectives show **which ones, how many,** and so on, *without describing.*

Exercise 42. — 1. Put all the adjectives into two lists — one for those that describe, and one for those that do not.

1. We have caught a few speckled trout in that brook.
2. The new yacht *Louette* won the last race.
3. Large quantities of cotton are exported from this country each year.
4. Carnivorous animals eat animal food.
5. Herbivorous animals eat vegetable food.
6. Omnivorous animals eat all kinds of food.
7. Every blossom on that apple tree should have five petals.
8. The century-plant blossoms only once in its lifetime of seven to seventy years.
9. Deciduous trees lose their foliage every autumn.
10. Evergreen trees are covered with foliage all the year round.
11. Galls are round bodies formed on some plants by the stings of insects.

2. What does each adjective describe or limit?

Exercise 43. — **Change** the descriptive adjectives to others of similar meaning:

We saw many novel sights in this remote town. There was a remarkable clearness in the air, and there were lofty hills all about clothed with extensive forests. We were walking along a zigzag path towards a rather desolate spot where the yearly fair had once been held. The abandoned booths were vacant, but we met a numerous company of persons who had come a prolonged journey through these retired valleys on some charitable errand to the peasants. They had found the burning heat very disagreeable, and seemed to be tired and eager to rest.

V. ADVERBS

Exercise 44. — 1. Which words in these sentences show **when** the men are to work? 2. Which tell **how**, or in what manner, they ought to work? 3. Which show **where**? 4. Which show **how much**?

The men must work **quietly**.	The men must work **well**.
The men must work **early**.	The men must work **now**.
The men must work **here**.	The men must work **outside**.
The men must work **less**.	The men must work **more**.

5. Can you think of any other single words that would show *how*, or *when*, or *where* men must work?

65. If we should take away from the examples in Exercise 44 the words **quietly, early, here, less, well, now, outside, more**, the same action would still be asserted by the verb. But each one of the added words makes a little change in what the verb alone would mean; for they show *how*, *when*, *where*, and so on.

Exercise 45. — Which words are added to show **how, when**, where, and so on?

1. Wait patiently.
2. You must go now.
3. I shall visit Europe soon.
4. Have you ever been there?
5. The train runs regularly.
6. Snow sometimes delays it.
7. The plow soon scatters the snow.
8. It was scarcely needed.
9. The pendulum moves to and fro continually.
10. The day has almost ended.

66. Words of this sort are called **Adverbs** because they are **added to verbs** to make our meaning more definite, very much as adjectives are added to nouns.

Exercise 46. — Fill each blank with an adverb that **will** tell **when, where,** or **how.**

1. The girls write ——.
2. We shall sing ——.
3. Those yachts sail ——.
4. They returned ——.
5. We might go ——.
6. Our hearts beat ——.
7. The river flows ——.
8. The fire burns ——.
9. The messenger will return ——.
10. Can you read music ——?

Exercise 47. — Mention every **verb,** and the **adverb** that modifies it, telling whether it shows how, when, or where. Thus:

The verb "must go" is modified by the adverb "now," which shows *when* we must go.

1. We must go now.
2. Yonder comes my father.
3. I never called there again.
4. Water is found everywhere.
5. He bears trouble patiently.
6. They sometimes sing finely.
7. The best often fail.
8. Return quickly.
9. The procession moved slowly onward.
10. Our friends will probably come back to-**morrow.**
11. The rain fell heavily last Tuesday.
12. Lightning flashed vividly in the clouds.
13. The thunder rumbled everywhere.
14. People were running hither and thither.
15. Umbrellas were quickly raised.
16. Carriages dashed hurriedly along.

Exercise 48. — Copy some of the sentences in Exercise 47, marking subject and verb, and putting the adverbs in brackets. Thus:

The procession moved [onward] [slowly].

67. Some of these words have another use.

Thus, instead of, The hill is steep, This book is new, we should often wish to say *how steep*, *how nearly new*, and so on, as in —

The hill is **very** steep.	This book is **almost** new.
The hill is **less** steep.	This book is **entirely** new.
The hill is steep **enough.**	This book is new **now.**

But what kind of a word is *steep*, and what have we done to express our meaning more fully?

There are modifiers for *adjectives*, then, just as for nouns and verbs.

68. Such words we already know about: they are *adverbs*. The reason for using the same kind of words with both adjectives and verbs, is that both need to be modified in the same way; that is, by telling *how*, *how often*, *when*, *where*, *how much*, *how little*, and so on.

Exercise 49. — Select the **adjectives** in these sentences, and tell which of them are modified by **adverbs :**

1. The night was very dark. 2. Everybody was sleeping soundly. 3. The dim light of the new moon was almost entirely concealed. 4. I was rather late about my errand. 5. The somewhat steep path over the hill was little trodden. 6. It was very much too rocky for so dark a night. 7. Even the sky was nearly black. 8. I was wisely cautious. 9. Except for such great care I should have fallen repeatedly. 10. I finally reached my destination in a completely exhausted condition.

69. Sometimes, in order to show just what we mean, we need to modify an *adverb*.

Thus: He has come **often** may be changed to —
He has come **very** often, or **rather** often, and —
He spoke **truly** may become —
He spoke **quite** truly, or **more** truly, or **less** truly.

Exercise 50. — Which words in these sentences modify adverbs?

1. Speak very distinctly.
2. James, you read too rapidly.
3. How quietly that train runs!
4. Water is found almost everywhere.
5. Kind deeds are almost never forgotten.
6. Have we gone far enough?

70. In such sentences the words that *modify* adverbs are *themselves* adverbs, and could be used to modify adjectives or verbs. Adverbs, then, can be used in *three* different ways.

71. An Adverb is a word used to modify a verb, an adjective, or another adverb.

Exercise 51. — 1. Use these adverbs in sentences to modify *verbs:*

cautiously	seldom	often	formerly
faithfully	always	again	lately
sometimes	forever	backward	never

2. Use these adverbs in sentences to modify *adjectives:*

almost	too	totally	quite
nearly	so	entirely	how

3. Use adverbs — all different — to modify the following in sentences:

feebly; rapidly; much; greatly; well.

VI. PREPOSITIONS

Exercise 52. — 1. What is an adjective?

2. In the expressions in the first column, what words describe houses? What kind of words are they?

wooden houses	or	houses *of wood.*
empty houses	or	houses *without occupants.*
three-storied houses	or	houses *with three stories.*
public houses	or	houses *for the public.*
city houses	or	houses *in the city.*

3. What do the groups of words in the second column describe? What are they used like?

4. Use **adjectives** in place of the following italicized groups without much changing the meaning. Tell what each modifies:

Business *of importance* detained me.
Carpets *from Persia* are costly.
We found a wagon *with two seats.*
Men *of wealth* should be generous.

Exercise 53. — 1. What is an adverb?

2. What words in the first column tell *how, when,* or *where* the ship sails? What kind of words are they?

The ship sails *rapidly*	or	The ship sails *with rapidity.*
The ship sails *safely*	or	The ship sails *without danger.*
The ship sails *afar*	or	The ship sails *to a distance.*
The ship sails *now*	or	The ship sails *at this time.*
The ship sails *there*	or	The ship sails *for that place.*

3. What does each group in the second column tell about the sailing of the ship? What does each one mean? What are they used like?

4. Use **adverbs** in place of the italicized groups without much changing the meaning. What does each modify?

The Indians lived *in this place.* Be courteous *at all times.*
Never write *without care.* Do they deal *upon honor?*

72. The adjectives and adverbs that we have studied thus far are single words; but little groups of words may be used in about the same way.

Thus we may speak of —

a **thorny** bush	or	a bush **with thorns;**
an **English** home	or	a home **in England.**

It is easy to see that **with thorns** and **in England** are much like adjectives in meaning, though they are put after the noun instead of before it. Again, in these sentences —

The letter was **carefully** written. It was sent **promptly.**
The letter was written **with care.** It was sent **without delay** —

the word-groups **with care** and **without delay** seem to modify the verbs just as the adverbs **carefully** and **promptly** do. So, too —

The wind blew **very furiously** might be changed to —
The wind blew **with great fury.**

73. It very often happens that there is no adjective or adverb in our language that will serve as a modifier to express our meaning, and then we are forced to use such groups of words.

Here, for example, no single word would take the place of the groups:

The house **by the river** is a hotel. He came **from the city.**
Those **on the shelf** are sold. The bucket hung **in the well.**
The path **of industry** leads **to success.**
My friend was **with his regiment.**

All such groups of words are called **phrases.**

Exercise 54. — 1. Which **phrases** in these sentences are used like *adjectives?*

2. Do those that are used like *adverbs* tell how, when, where, or how often?

1. He came in haste.
2. We are in fear.
3. People of intelligence live in this place.
4. Diamonds of great value are found in that field.
5. My friend never comes behind time.
6. He pays his rent by the month.
7. He finished his task with ease.
8. Children like stories about fairies.
9. The plan was made in secret.

3. Change the **phrases** to adjectives or adverbs, if you can think of any that will serve.

Exercise 55. — 1. Use a **phrase** instead of the adjective or adverb.

1. Turkish rugs
2. juvenile books
3. Java coffee
4. silver plates
5. strong men
6. a marine disaster
7. spoke distinctly
8. went homeward
9. go now
10. send it soon
11. study diligently
12. walk quietly

2. Use an **adjective** or an **adverb** in place of the phrase.

1. a road along the river
2. a path up the mountain
3. a man of strength
4. a journey toward home
5. a child at play
6. a trip through Europe
7. women of fashion
8. women of sense
9. lands beyond the seas
10. jewelry from France

74. All these phrases contain a noun or a pronoun with a word like *of, with, from, in, at,* or *by,* that connects it with what is modified. These words usually come first in the phrase, and they are called **Prepositions.**

Let us see what they do for our language that other words will not do.

75. If we wished to show that a clump of trees was the place where some boys were hiding, we might say —

The boys hid **in** the trees. The boys hid **among** the trees.
The boys hid **under** the trees. The boys hid **behind** the trees.
The boys hid **beyond** the trees.

The only difference is in the prepositions **in, under, among,** etc. Read the sentences *without* them, and you will see that nobody could tell what the *trees* had to do with the *hiding;* but *with* the prepositions we see that the word "trees" can be used to modify "hid" in various ways; for it is one thing to hide *under* the trees, another to hide *in* the trees, and so on.

Exercise 56. — Select the **phrases,** and tell what each one modifies. **Thus**

"From Plymouth" is a phrase used like an adverb to modify the verb "sailed."

1. The Mayflower sailed from Plymouth.
2. Magellan's ship sailed around the globe.
3. Beautiful pearls are found in the sea.
4. The early settlers hunted for gold.
5. The star rested over Bethlehem.
6. The English settled along the coast.
7. We shall return through the valley.
8. My friends will come in the next train.
9. President McKinley lived in Ohio during his boyhood.
10. No one should be condemned without a trial.

76. Using a phrase as an adjective, we might say —

The land **around** the grove. The shade **of** the grove.
The walk **from** the grove. The road **to** the grove.
The path **through** the grove.

Here we modify or explain the meaning of the nouns *walk, land, shade,* etc., by referring to the *grove;* but in order to do this we have to use a different preposition in each phrase.

77. To show how one word can modify another, or what the meanings of two words have to do with each other, is to show the **relation** between them.

Exercise 57. — Select the **phrases,** and tell what each one modifies. Thus:

"Of Rome" is a phrase used as an adjective to modify the noun "city."

1. The city of Rome is the capital of Italy.
2. The road up the mountain is very rocky.
3. Goods for that firm were shipped yesterday.
4. The planet with the rings is Saturn.
5. Admission to college depends on attainments.
6. The town beyond Lexington is Concord.
7. Success without effort is impossible.
8. The fort near the city was captured first.
9. Icebergs from the Arctic Ocean melt in the Gulf Stream.
10. Journeys into the interior are rarely made.

78. The *Object* of a preposition is the noun or pronoun which is used with it to make a phrase.

79. A Preposition is a word that shows the relation of its object to some other word.

The word "preposition" means *what is placed before.*

80. A *Prepositional Phrase* is a phrase that contains a preposition and its object.

Exercise 58. — 1. Select the **prepositions** in Exercises 55 and 56 and tell between what each shows the relation. Thus :

"From" is a preposition, and shows the relation between its object "Plymouth" and the verb "sailed," which the phrase modifies.

2. Mention the **prepositions** with the object of each, and tell whether the phrase is used as an adjective or an adverb.

1. Birds in great numbers fly over this grove. 2. Some with blue plumage have dropped a handful of feathers for me. 3. Quails from the north meet jays from the south. 4. There are eggs in the nest near the vine. 5. The mother bird is mottled at the throat and along the breast. 6. A bluebird nests under the eaves.

81. Since prepositional phrases can be used wherever an adverb can be, we find them modifying not only nouns, pronouns, and verbs, but *adjectives* and *adverbs* also. Thus:

He was happy **to excess,** or He was **excessively** happy.
They are ripe **before the time,** or They are **prematurely** ripe.

In other cases it is harder to find what will take the place of the phrase. As —

This breeze is fresh **from the ocean.**
We are weary **with working.**

Here the four phrases modify adjectives as adverbs would.

Exercise 59. — Point out the **prepositional phrases,** and tell whether they modify adjectives or adverbs.

1. Those trees are heavy with fruit.
2. You are too cautious for me.
3. The children were happy beyond measure.
4. Always be polite to strangers.
5. She is insane from anxiety.
6. Shall you be absent from home?
7. We found rosebuds pink at the tips.
8. The grass was wet with dew.

Exercise 60. — Here are the most common prepositions. Use each **one** in a sentence.

about	around	beyond	of	under
above	at	by	on	unto
across	before	down	over	up
after	behind	for	through	upon
against	below	from	till	with
along	beneath	in	to	within
among	between	into	toward	without

VII. CONJUNCTIONS

82. We have learned that a preposition connects two other words by showing what one of them has to do with the other. We come now to words that connect in a different way.

In the sentence, **The sun sets and the moon appears**, how many verbs are there? What is the subject of each? Read the sentence, omitting the word **and.**

Here, then, are two sentences joined or tied together as one sentence. They might have been printed thus:

The sun sets. The moon appears.

So we might unite three or more sentences into one, as —

The sun sets, (and) the moon appears, and the stars come out,

or we might connect two sentences in different ways; as —

The sun has set,	**and**	the stars appear.
The sun has set,	**for**	the stars appear.
The sun has set,	**but**	the stars appear.
The sun has set,	**therefore**	the stars appear.

And seems to join the sentences together, as if they were about one subject; **for** shows that one statement gives a reason for making the other; and so on with other words of this sort, such as *but, therefore, or, nor, hence, however.*

83. Since these words all connect or **join together** what we say, they are called **conjunctions.**

They denote various relations between the expressions they connect, by showing what the connected parts have to do with each other. But, unlike prepositions, they always connect expressions of the same sort.

Exercise 61. — What **sentences** have been **united** to make the following?

1. The birds have come and the flowers appear.
2. The ocean is rough, for the breakers roar.
3. My pears are ripe and I am glad.
4. Some are very large, but they are not yellow.
5. You cannot have tried earnestly or you would have succeeded.
6. The sky seems clear, yet no stars are visible.
7. We cannot get money nor have we any food.
8. The king must win or he must forfeit his crown forever.

84. Such sentences as the preceding differ from those we have been studying; for they are made up of *two or more simple sentences combined.* Instead of one predicate and the subject of it, they have two or more predicates, each with a subject of its own.

Exercise 62. — Copy the sentences in the preceding exercise. Place vertical lines before and after each conjunction, and mark each subject and each verb. Inclose adjectives and phrases that modify the subject, in curves; inclose adverbs and phrases that modify the verb, in brackets. Insert the comma where it belongs. Thus:

(**Kind**) friends have left us, | but | they will return [soon].

85. Sentences made in this way, by uniting two or more simple sentences, are called **compound.**

86. A Simple Sentence is a sentence that contains only one subject and one predicate.

87. A Compound Sentence is one formed by uniting simple sentences.

The sentences united to form a compound sentence are called **clauses.**

88. Conjunctions are used to connect not only sentences, but also words or expressions in the same sentence when they are of the same kind and used in the same way.

1. Two or more **nouns** or **pronouns** may be connected in one sentence; as in —

Music **and** *painting* are fine arts.
Did you ask *him* **or** *her* **or** *me?*

2. Several **verbs** may be joined together in one sentence; as in —

Farmers *raise* **and** *sell* vegetables for the market.

3. So, too, we may wish to unite two or more **adjectives** or **adverbs** or **phrases** that modify the same word; as in —

The *dead* **or** *dying* soldiers were left behind.
She walks *gracefully* **and** *firmly*, **but** *very slowly.*
The volume is *in the book-case*, **or** *on the table.*

Exercise 63. — Select the **conjunctions**, telling which words they connect and what kind of words are connected. Thus:

"And" is a conjunction, and connects the two nouns "time" and "tide."

1. Time and tide wait for no man.
2. Extreme poverty or great wealth may bring fame.
3. Some trees or shrubs would improve the place.
4. The days come and go in a ceaseless round.
5. Some people always promise, but never pay.
6. Who among you thinks or dreams of me?

7. All men live and die unknown by most of their fellows.
8. She plucked the daisies white and violets blue.
9. Michael Angelo was a painter and sculptor.
10. Now and then the whip-poor-will calls from the hill or the grove.
11. You and I are old and well-tried friends.
12. Shall we spend our time over worthless books and papers, or with the best authors?

89. A Conjunction is a word that connects sentences or parts of sentences.

The word "conjunction" means *that which joins together.*

VIII. INTERJECTIONS

90. The seven kinds of words that we have now learned to distinguish make up all our sentences: for every word that is really part of a sentence is either a noun, a pronoun, a verb, an adjective, an adverb, a preposition, or a conjunction.

There are other words, however, that we use *with* sentences, but not exactly as *parts* of them. They are a different kind of language.

Thus, if any one says, **Oh!** you hurt me, the word **oh** is apt to be very much like a groan. So in, **Aha!** I have found you! **aha** takes the place of a shout; and in the following sentences, **Pshaw!** what a silly reason! **Poh!** that's nothing; He came, **alas!** too late, the words **pshaw, poh, alas** are about as expressive as a hiss, a puff, and a sigh.

91. When we use these words we do not assert anything, and very much of our meaning comes from the tone in which we speak; but everybody understands at once that we are pained or pleased, and so on, just as we tell by a dog's whining whether he is grieved or delighted.

Exercise 64. — Which words would express *feeling*, even if used by themselves?

1. Oh! I have ruined my friend!
2. O that I were rich again!
3. Ha! Can you not hear it?
4. Ho ho! Ahoy! A sail! A sail!
5. Hurrah! We've won a victory.
6. Hist! The squirrel sees you.

92. Such words are called **Interjections** because they are thrown into the midst of what we say without having much to do with other words.

93. A different sort of interjection is used in expressions like this: "**Bang!** There goes another gun!" where the word **bang** is used merely to imitate a noise. When we wish to represent these words by writing, we spell out the sounds as nearly as we can, just as we write *bow-wow* to represent the bark of a dog.

94. An Interjection is an exclamatory word or phrase used to express a feeling or to imitate some sound.

The word "interjection" means something *that is thrown into the midst of* what we say.

Exercise 65. — 1. Which of the following interjections can be used to express *joy?* Which to express *disgust?* Which imitate some natural sound?

alas	hurrah	bravo	fie	O dear
pshaw	ahoy	whoa	hello	ha ha ha

2. Use each of the above words in a sentence.

SUMMARY: THE PARTS OF SPEECH

95. All the words in our language can be divided into these eight classes called **Parts of Speech.**

1. **Nouns** and 2. **Pronouns** } used to name persons or things
3. **Verbs** — used to *assert* } are always required to make a sentence.

4. **Adjectives** and 5. **Adverbs**	used only to *modify* other words	may help to form sentences.
6. **Prepositions** and 7. **Conjunctions**	used to show the *connection* between other words	
8. **Interjections**	used to express *feeling*	often stand by themselves.

96. The Parts of Speech are the classes into which words are divided according to their use in sentences.

97. THE BUILDERS

All are architects of fate,
Working in these walls of time;
Some with massive deeds and great;
Some with ornaments of rhyme.

Nothing useless is, or low;
Each thing in its place is best;
And what seems but idle show
Strengthens and supports the rest.

For the structure that we raise,
Time is with materials filled;
Our to-days and yesterdays
Are the blocks with which we build.

Truly shape and fashion these;
Leave no yawning gaps between;
Think not, because no man sees,
Such things will remain unseen.

In the elder days of art
Builders wrought with greatest care
Each minute and unseen part;
For the Gods see everywhere.

Let us do our work as well,
  Both the unseen and the seen;
Make the house, where Gods may dwell,
  Beautiful, entire, and clean.

Else our lives are incomplete,
  Standing in these walls of time,
Broken stairways, where the feet
  Stumble as they seek to climb.

Build, to-day, then, strong and sure,
  With a firm and ample base,
And ascending and secure
  Shall to-morrow find its place.

Thus alone can we attain
  To those turrets, where the eye
Sees the world as one vast plain,
  And one boundless reach of sky.

— *Longfellow.*

Exercise 66. — 1. Make a list of the nouns in the selection. 2. Of the verbs. 3. Of the adjectives. 4. Of the prepositional phrases. 5. Of the adverbs. 6. Change the second and third stanzas from the inverted to the natural order. 7. Mention three imperative sentences. 8. Give the pronouns and their antecedents.

CHAPTER IV

SENTENCE-BUILDING

A. INCOMPLETE VERBS AND THEIR COMPLEMENTS

98. In some of our sentences the verb alone is enough to make a complete assertion, or predication, about the subject, as in — I *talk*, You *listen*, He *can write*, She *is thinking*, Time *flies*. But sometimes we use verbs that need to be followed by one or more words to complete the assertion, as in — Flowers *are* fragrant, Time *is* money, The prince *will be* king, We *have sent* roses, Druggists *sell* medicine, The people *choose* the ruler.

Each of the verbs *talk, listen, can write, is thinking, flies,* is enough to complete the sense, but the verbs *are, is, will be, have sent, sell, choose,* only begin to tell us something. We must add the words *fragrant, money, king, roses, medicine, the ruler,* in order to make an assertion.

All verbs belong to one or the other of these two great classes. They are used either as **verbs of complete predication,** or as verbs of **incomplete predication.** For the sake of brevity, we speak of them as **complete** verbs, or **incomplete** verbs.

Let us study the **incomplete** verbs first.

Exercise 67. — 1. What must the subject of a sentence contain? What must the predicate contain? Define a verb. A verb-phrase. How may verbs be modified?

2. In six of these sentences the meaning is complete. Which are they? Read the remaining six, supplying with each verb what is needed to complete the meaning.

The wind changed	We must hurry	We were
The air is	The ice was	The night has been
My friend called	The snow melted	The gale increased
The skating will be	Our fun stopped	Such storms are

3. Which of the verbs would you call *incomplete?* Give your reason.

99. An Incomplete Verb is one that requires the addition of one or more words to give the sentence distinct meaning.

100. A Complement is what must be added to an incomplete verb to give distinct meaning to the sentence.

101. A Complete Verb is one that requires no complement.

Exercise 68. — Point out the **verb,** and show what completes the meaning.

1. The game was shy.
2. Our powder was wet.
3. We were hungry.
4. The pond was frozen.
5. Our hotel was distant.
6. Our lunch-boxes were empty.
7. Matters might have been worse.
8. We were not disheartened.

I. Copulative Verbs

102. Some incomplete verbs do little more than connect, or **couple,** the complement and the subject. In the sentences *I am cold, She is happy, They have been kind,* the verb *am* connects *I* and *cold,* the verb *is* connects *she* and *happy,* the verb-phrase *have been* connects *they* and *kind.* Such verbs are called **copulative verbs.**

Exercise 69. — Point out the copulative verbs in the following sentences.

1. Talk is cheap.
2. I am hungry.
3. Tennyson was a poet.
4. The grasshoppers have been silent.
5. Bananas will be scarce this year.
6. Mt. Shasta was once an active volcano.
7. Boys may be heroes.

103. To the same class belong the verbs *looks, seems, appears, becomes, feels, tastes,* and the like. These verbs have a little more meaning than *am, is, were, have been,* etc., but their chief business is still to connect the complement with the subject. Thus in the sentences *She seems happy,* and *She is happy,* the verbs *seems* and *is* are used in much the same way. Both verbs serve to connect the subject *she* with the complement *happy.*

Exercise 70. — Point out the copulative verbs in the following sentences:

1. Angels' visits are few and far between.
2. The vacation seems short.
3. Owls look wise.
4. All cats appear gray in the dark.
5. Why were you tardy?
6. Jack's old hat looked queer.
7. This plum pudding tastes good.
8. My new tooth feels sharp.
9. The music sounds discordant.

104. The complement of a copulative verb **describes or explains** the subject. In the sentences *Lead is heavy, A dog's nose is cold,* the complement *heavy* describes the subject *lead,* the complement *cold* describes the subject *nose.* In the sentence *A trout is a fish,* the complement *fish* explains the subject *trout.*

Exercise 71. — 1. (*a*) Select the verbs, and tell which of them are modified by adverbs or prepositional phrases. (*b*) Which are incomplete, and what **complements** are added to them to describe the subject?

1. Some grapes are sweet.
2. They grow in the south.
3. The wind will be cold.
4. Celluloid is inflammable.
5. His remarks were instructive.
6. Not all birds are migratory.
7. The wind sighs plaintively around her grave.
8. Delays are often dangerous.
9. The crocus blooms in the spring.
10. The early laws were severe.
11. My requests for dismissal have been useless.
12. The polar regions are uninhabitable.

2. Copy the preceding sentences, placing under the subject a *wavy* line, under the verb, a *straight* line, and under the complement a straight line *over* a wavy line. Thus:

Some grapes are sweet.

105. A Copulative Verb is one whose complement describes the subject.

The word "copulative" means *coupling* or connecting.

106. A Predicate Adjective is an adjective used as the complement of a copulative verb.

Exercise 72. — Write five sentences about *sounds*, using *predicate* adjectives with the following verbs:

seem, become, sound, appear, grow.

Exercise 73. — Write four sentences about things you have *seen*, using *predicate* adjectives with the following verbs:

looks, appears, grows, seems.

Exercise 74. — Write six sentences about the following things, using predicate adjectives with the verb *tastes* or *feels:*

An apple, a lemon, sandpaper, silk, ice, flint.

107. A *noun* may be used with the copulative verb as a sort of second name, to describe what the subject stands for, or to explain what is meant.

Exercise 75. — In the sentences —

Those men were *soldiers.* Boys may be *heroes.*
Harrisburg is the *capital.* Our guide will be an *Indian* —

what kind of word is added to the verb to describe the subject? What two words in each sentence name the same person or thing?

108. A Predicate Noun is a noun used as the complement of a copulative verb.

109. Predicate adjectives and predicate nouns and their equivalents are called *subjective complements.*

110. A Subjective Complement is a complement that describes or explains the subject.

111. The verb is the necessary word in the predicate, but its complement is so important that the two together may be called the *simple* predicate.

Exercise 76. — 1. Point out the **copulative verb** with its subject and complement, telling whether the latter is a noun or an adjective. Thus:

In the second sentence "was" is the copulative verb, having the noun "trouble" for its subject, and the noun "poverty" for its complement.

1. The man was poor.
2. His trouble was poverty.
3. The water of the ocean is salt.
4. Yonder vessel must be a schooner.
5. Farmers are independent.
6. Every barrel seems full.
7. Diamonds are costly.
8. Pure air is exhilarating.
9. Quartz is a mineral.
10. Our friends look anxious.
11. The lecture to-morrow will be short.
12. The cat's claws were sharp.
13. Turtles are amphibious.
14. The ship of the desert is the camel.
15. Tigers are carnivorous.
16. Tigers are flesh-eaters.
17. Henrietta shall be queen.
18. The boy is the shoemaker's best friend.
19. Idle boys become poor men.
20. The sound of the evening bells was sweet.
21. The night grows dark.

2. Copy those of the preceding sentences that have *nouns* as complements. Underline subject and verb as heretofore, and under the noun complement place a wavy line *over* a straight line. Thus:

Yonder vessel is a schooner.

Exercise 77. — Read the following words and notice what they suggest. Then use them in sentences as **complements** of copulative verbs. Mark as in preceding exercises.

mineral	old-fashioned	fatigued	Frenchman
combustible	mechanic	librarian	skillful
liquid	ingenious	Japanese	patriot

II. Transitive Verbs

Exercise 78. — 1. Try to **complete** the sentences that seem unfinished, and explain why they seem so.

1. It is raining
2. Who opened
3. We can look for eggs
4. Come to the barn
5. I will bring
6. We shall easily find
7. The nests are in the hay
8. Yesterday I had a fall
9. Somebody fired
10. I was frightened
11. Of course I broke
12. The fall almost killed

2. Do any of them lack the verb? What kind of word is needed?

Exercise 79. — 1. Give the **complete predicate** of each of these sentences.

1. The bright sun rises.
2. The March winds blow.
3. A robin sings on the bough.
4. The lilacs blossom.
5. The weather was mild.
6. The skies are clear.
7. The trees shed their leaves.
8. Farmers sell butter.
9. Hail destroys the crops.
10. The archer bends the bow.
11. The ground looks white.
12. A bee stung Mary.

2. (*a*) Which of these verbs assert that what the subject names *does* something, or performs some *action?* (*b*) Which verb represents the actor as doing something *to* a person or to a thing? (*c*) What *action* is asserted of the winds? (*d*) What word in the ninth sentence tells what the hail *does?* (*e*) What does the hail act *upon?* (*f*) Who performs the action of bending? (*g*) What object *receives* the action? (*h*) What is the object of "shed"? (*i*) Of "sell"?

Exercise 80. — 1. Give the **object** of these verbs; that is, tell the word that shows what receives the action:

1. I have sold my yacht.
2. He has bought a farm.
3. Who wrote the prescription?
4. The Pilgrims left their native land.
5. They founded a new nation.
6. The engine has broken a rail.
7. Who will take the tickets?
8. We cannot speak French.
9. Ask the meaning of the word.

2. Copy some of these sentences, marking subject and verb as before. Place two lines under the object. Thus:

The choppers fell the trees.

112. In nearly all the sentences in Exercise 79, the verb alone gives considerable information about the subject; but yet it would seem very incomplete to say —

The trees **shed.** Farmers **sell.** Hail **destroys** —

for any one would wait to hear *what* the trees shed, *what* the farmers sell, and so on. We see, then, that there are still *other*

verbs, such as *shed, sell, destroys, bends,* that we must call *incomplete,* since they have need of an object to fill out the meaning.

113. *These* verbs assert that some action is performed that passes over to and affects something else. The complement shows who or what it is that receives this action. So they are called **Transitive,** which means "passing over." The word that shows the receiver of the action is called the *object* of the verb.

114. We cannot tell whether a verb is transitive or not except by its *use,* for sometimes the verb without an object expresses as much as we wish to say, or else it has a different meaning. Thus, we may say, The man *stopped* the runaway horse, or The runaway horse *stopped* at the foot of the hill. In the first sentence the action denoted by the verb passes over to the *object* "horse." In the second sentence the action does not pass over, and the verb "stopped" is said to be used **intransitively.**

Exercise 81. — Tell whether the verb is transitive or intransitive; *i.e.,* whether it has an **object** or not.

1. That blind man never saw.
2. I saw my friend on his return.
3. The bells ring merrily over the snow.
4. The sexton rings the bell.
5. The trees sway in the wind.
6. How the wind sways the trees!
7. Our national flag flies from the mast-head.
8. The schooner in the offing flies a signal of distress.
9. The farmer plows his fields.
10. The ships plow through the waves.

115. A Transitive verb is one that has a complement showing who or what receives the action expressed by the verb.

116. The Object of a transitive verb is the word that denotes the receiver of the action.

III. Complements.

117. We have already learned about two kinds of complements:

I. **Subjective Complements.** The complement of a **copulative** verb refers to the subject, and is called a **Subjective Complement**.

Any word or phrase that can modify a noun or a pronoun may be a subjective complement; as —

Some plants are **poisonous.**	(adjective)
Your friends are **musicians.**	(noun)
It cannot have been **he.**	(pronoun)
Time is **of great value.**	(phrase)

118. II. **Objects.** The complement of a **transitive** verb is the **Object** of it, and has nothing to do with the subject of the sentence, but only with the verb.

119. Any noun or pronoun, or any phrase or clause used like a noun, may be used with a transitive verb as the object of it; as —

The jury has found a **verdict.**	(noun)
We have proved **him** innocent.	(pronoun)
Fear **to do wrong.**	(phrase)
Tell only **what is true.**	(clause)

120. III. **Objective Complements.** There are some transitive verbs that must often have a *second* complement to complete their meaning. Thus:

Age *makes* a man **feeble.**	Ice *keeps* water **cool.**
Elizabeth *made* Raleigh a **knight.**	*Call* your dog **Bruno.**

121. In "Age **makes** a man **feeble**" the verb **makes** alone does not express the action performed on a man, for we need the adjective **feeble** to show what quality is produced in him. We mean not "Age **makes** a man," but "Age **makes-feeble**, or enfeebles, a man."

So, too, the meaning of **made** in the second sentence is *completed* by the noun **knight**, which shows that knighthood was conferred upon

Raleigh — as if we had said "Elizabeth **made-knight**, or knighted, Raleigh."

122. Words used to complete the meaning of a transitive verb, and at the same time to add some name or quality to the object of it, are called **Objective Complements** — "objective" because they refer to the object, and "complements" because they complete the predicate.

Exercise 82. — Select the **objective complements**, and tell how each is used. In marking the analysis, underline the objective complement to show its connection with the verb, and inclose it in angles as a modifier of the object. Thus: **The snow paints the fields ⟨white⟩.**

1. Fear made the soldiers pale. 2. We shall tint our walls green. 3. The people made Roosevelt president. 4. Time makes the worst enemies friends. 5. The warm weather has made the ice thin. 6. The Turks call their ruler Sultan. 7. The people called Paul, Jupiter. 8. The President has appointed Mr. Clark postmaster. 9. Get the horses ready immediately. 10. The club has chosen Roy captain. 11. We have appointed Henry Wise our agent. 12. The merchant sold his stock short.

123. A word used as the second complement of a transitive verb, and referring to the object of it, is called an Objective Complement.

Exercise 83. — Use these verbs in sentences with **objective complements:**

struck; make; named; appoint; elect; swept; called; dyed; chose; colored.

Exercise 84. — Select the **complements** of the verbs, and tell whether they are *objects* or *subjective complements;* that is, whether they refer to the subject or only modify the verb. Which sentences contain objective complements?

1. Rivers to the ocean run.
2. The reason is very plain.
3. The stars look very small.
4. Our souls are immortal.
5. I can find no fault with him.
6. A long rain will be welcome.
7. No one is ever too old to learn.
8. Every day brings its own duties.

9. Good habits are most easily formed in youth.
10. We are the heirs of past generations.
11. A man's actions show his character.
12. The greatest English poet is Shakespeare.
13. He made money his chief aim.
14. A rolling stone gathers no moss.
15. The betrayer of his country is a traitor.
16. Every man must educate himself.
17. Praising what is lost makes remembrance dear.
18. Agriculture is the parent of all industries.
19. Mountain chains rob the winds of their moisture.
20. Wisdom's ways are ways of pleasantness.
21. War makes men bold.
22. Money alone can never make a man happy.

B. COMPLETE VERBS

124. Copulative and transitive verbs are the only ones that always need complements. Most others are complete in themselves. If we say —

The sun **rises,** The lilacs **blossom,**

the assertion is complete without adding anything, for nobody could ask *what* the sun rises, or *what* the lilacs blossom. The rising or the blossoming does not necessarily affect anything else. Such verbs are called verbs of *complete predication*, or briefly, **Complete verbs.**

Exercise 85. — 1. (*a*) In the following sentences, which verbs assert an action that is **complete** in itself? (*b*) Which assert actions performed **on** or **received by** some person or thing? Give their complements.

1. The morning dawned.
2. The bridge fell at noon.
3. The choppers fell the trees.
4. The hunter lost the trail.
5. Perseverance brings success.
6. Cotton grows in Louisiana.
7. Old Ironsides at anchor lay.
8. Many fruits ripen in September.

9. Our expected friends have arrived.
10. The angry man should control his passion.
11. We should hide the faults of others.
12. The grass withers and the flowers fade.
13. Time and tide wait for no man.
14. The melancholy days have come.
15. The city of Florence contains many palaces.
16. The farmers sow their seed in the spring.
17. If you plant in youth, you will reap in age.
18. He will spend the winter in Spain.
19. The fire in the woods burned for several days.
20. A fearful gale blew the ship out of its course.

2. Copy some of the preceding sentences, marking the subject, the verb, and the complement as before.

Complete and copulative verbs are often called **Intransitive**; that is *not transitive.*

125. Some verbs that are generally copulative may be used as complete verbs. The very common verb *be* — am, is, are, was, were — sometimes means exist, as in —

The time never *was* when God *was* not.

Generally when this verb is used in this way the sentence is introduced by *there.* Can you tell why?

Thus we say — *There is* no hope, not, No hope *is.*
There *has been* a severe storm.
There *will be* a large crop of wheat.

Exercise 86. — Which of these verbs are **complete** and which are **copulative?**

1. Delays are dangerous.
2. Yes, but there will be no delays.
3. A cat may look at a king.
4. A fool may look wise.
5. What will become of the acorn?
6. It will become an oak.
7. We must grow old or die.
8. Nothing will grow in this climate.
9. There is a king all must obey. His name is Death.
10. To the victors belong the spoils.

Exercise 87. — 1. Read the following, thinking of them first as **complete** verbs, and then as **transitive** verbs. Then use them in sentences.

write	set	reap	cheat	give
rides	succeed	learns	lose	sail

2. Select the verbs in Exercises 56 and 59, and tell whether they are *complete, copulative, or transitive,* and why.

Exercise 88. — 1. Think of the following as subjects of **complete** verbs. Then write the sentences they suggest.

lightning	war	time	spiders
moon	smoke	clocks	petroleum

2. Think of the following as subjects of **transitive** verbs, and write the suggested sentences.

reporters	avalanche	artists	locomotives
electricity	physicians	bankers	earthquakes

3. Use the same words as **objects** of transitive verbs.

4. Think of five objects which you saw on your way to school. Then write five sentences containing **copulative** verbs with adjectives as complements.

5. Write five with **noun** complements.

C. THE ESSENTIALS OF A SENTENCE

126. The materials that we must have for making the shortest of sentences are — a *subject* with a noun or a pronoun in it; and a *predicate* with a verb in it.

(*a*) *Two words* are required — something talked about, and something said; as—

Night comes. **Hope departs.** **Life ends.**
Look you! **Who calls?**

(*b*) But when the verb is *incomplete* — that is, when the sentence would be almost meaningless without some other

word in the predicate, — then *three* words at least are required; as —

We are children. Youth is hopeful. Love makes friends.

(*c*) When we have a transitive verb that requires a second complement, *four* words are needed; as —

Love makes labor light.

(*d*) When instead of a verb we have a *verb-phrase*, the number of essential words may be still larger; as —

Accidents may have caused delay.

127. In every sentence, then, there are these *two*, *three*, or *four* essential **elements**, out of which the whole sentence is constructed.

128. The essentials of a sentence, or what it needs more than anything else to give it meaning, are shown below.

The Essentials of a Simple Sentence			
Subject	**Predicate**		
Subject	Complete Verb	———	———
Subject	Copulative Verb	Subjective Complement	———
Subject	Transitive Verb	Object	———
Subject	Transitive Verb	Object	Objective Complement

129. The Essentials of a Sentence are its Simple Subject, Verb, and Complement without their modifiers.

Exercise 89. — 1. Reduce each sentence to its simplest form or mark it by underlining its essentials in this way:

Under the **subject** draw a wavy line ~~~~~.
Under the **verb** draw a straight line ———.
Under the **object** draw two straight lines ═══.

Under the **subjective complement** draw a straight line with a wavy line *under* it for **adjectives** ≈≈≈≈≈≈≈≈≈≈; *Over* it for **nouns** or **pronouns** ≈≈≈≈≈≈≈≈≈≈.

Under the **objective complement** draw a straight line and inclose it in angles. Thus:

The sun always shines somewhere.

Your favor will be very acceptable.

1900 was not a leap-year.

The sentinel stars set their watch in the sky.

Love makes labor ⟨light⟩.

1. Our good deeds live after us.
2. Seconds are the gold-dust of time.
3. The orbit of the earth is elliptical.
4. Most male citizens over twenty-one can vote.
5. At sea the distant clouds seem low.
6. They made him captain of the foot-ball eleven.
7. The old mayor climbed the belfry tower.
8. Joan of Arc perished at the stake.
9. Regret for a misspent past will be useless.
10. The miser willed his property to a college.
11. Stone walls do not a prison make.
12. Young hearts never grow old.
13. We have tinted our walls green.

2. Treat other exercises in the same way, until the essentials of a sentence can be recognized and described very readily.

D. MODIFIERS

Questions. — 1. What is a sentence? An assertion? What are the essential parts of one? 2. How many and what kinds of words *must* be used to make an assertion? 3. Illustrate from these sentences the meaning of "subject," "verb," "complement," "essentials," "modifier," and "adjective."

Cowardly men are generally poor soldiers.
These fine steamers now make regular trips.

4. What kind of steamers is meant? Which ones? 5. What words modify the verbs? What word describes the trips? 6. How would you say the subject and the object are modified?

130. Sometimes our sentences consist of only the two or three words that we have called the *essentials;* but generally we find it necessary to *modify* some part in order to express our meaning exactly.

Thus, instead of "Sheep furnish wool," or "They came," we might wish to say, "*My son's* sheep, *a foreign breed,* furnish wool *of fine quality,*" or "They *unexpectedly* came *yesterday* | *from town* | *to welcome us.*"

By adding modifiers, we construct fuller sentences, and it is about the **construction** or **growth of sentences** that we are to study now.

1. Adjectives as Modifiers

131. We know that the subject, the object, and sometimes the subjective complement, is a *noun* or a *pronoun,* and that adjectives may modify nouns wherever they occur; hence we conclude that

Adjectives may be added to either the *subject* or the *complement* as modifiers. Thus:

Australian sheep furnish **fine** wool.
These | **black** sheep furnish **some** | **valuable** wool.
Glass is **a brittle, transparent** substance.

Adjectives thus added directly to a noun, *i.e.,* without the intervention of a verb, are called **Attributive Adjectives.**

Exercise 90. — 1. (*a*) **Classify** each sentence; that is, tell its kind. (*b*) Read the essentials. (*c*) Point out the **subject** and its **modifiers.** (*d*) Point out the **verb.** (*e*) Point out the **complement,** tell its **kind,** and give its **modifiers.** Thus:

The first is a simple, assertive sentence. Its essentials are *dogs re-*

spect masters. The subject *dogs* is modified by the adjective *savage.* The verb is *respect.* The object *masters* is modified by the adjective *stern.*

1. Savage dogs respect stern masters.
2. Coming events cast long shadows.
3. Has any man a heavy coat?
4. Take the broad, open path.
5. Such long journeys are tiresome.
6. A low barometer indicates stormy weather.
7. Hidden fire makes black smoke.
8. An uncontrolled appetite is a relentless master.
9. The Polish salt-mines seem inexhaustible.
10. The longest day has an end.
11. Your barking dogs are cowardly.
12. Destructive freshets have injured the late crops.
13. Is that snow-capped mountain an extinct volcano?

2. Copy the preceding sentences, and mark the essentials as before. Inclose each subject-modifier in curves ( ), and each complement-modifier in angles ⟨ ⟩. Thus:

(These) sheep have ⟨long⟩ horns.

3. Write sentences to show the use of adjectives *as one of the essentials of the sentence.*

4. Write six sentences that illustrate their use *as modifiers.*

DIRECTIONS FOR MARKING SENTENCES

132. Every subject is to be marked with a *wavy* line, every verb with a *straight* line. The complement is always marked with *two* lines, — *both* also *straight* for the object, since that modifies only the verb; but *one* of them *wavy* for the subjective complement, since that is not only a part of the predicate, but is also related to the subject. The predicate noun is distinguished from the predicate adjective by placing the *wavy line first.*

The ⟨objective complement⟩ is underlined to show its relation to the verb, and inclosed in angles as a modifier of the complement.

Every (subject-modifier) of whatever kind is to be inclosed in *curves*, every [verb-modifier] in *brackets*, and every ⟨complement-modifier⟩ in *angles*.

Independent expressions are to be left unmarked.

2. Adverbs as Modifiers

133. Besides a noun or a pronoun, every sentence always, as we know, contains a *verb*, and it sometimes contains an *adjective* as the complement of the verb. We know, too, that if a verb or an adjective needs a modifier to finish the meaning, an *Adverb* may be used. For example:

The man approached **cautiously.** Children **sometimes** make mistakes — where the *verbs* are modified; and —

Some pine trees are **perfectly** straight. The old elm was **almost** dead — where the *adjective complements* are modified.

Exercise 91. — 1. Point out the **principal parts** of each sentence and their **modifiers,** as in the preceding exercise.

1. All the bells ring mournfully.
2. Some faces look very sad.
3. The whistle always shrieks wildly.
4. The summons is quite welcome.
5. This spot is delightfully cool.
6. Such bright days rarely come.
7. The officers were criminally negligent.
8. He probably came here lately.
9. Those stories are hardly credible.
10. The sun always shines brightly somewhere.
11. Most early navigators were very venturesome.
12. I have been too idle heretofore.

2. Copy each sentence, underline the essentials, and mark the modifiers. Put verb-modifiers in brackets [ ]. Thus:

(**Those**) **ships** [**frequently**] **make** ⟨**long**⟩ **voyages.**

We are [**never**] ⟨**entirely**⟩ **alone.**

3. Write four sentences illustrating the use of adverbs as *modifiers*.

3. Adjective and Adverb Phrases

134. We have seen how the essentials of the sentence may be modified by the addition of adjectives and adverbs. The next step will be to give to these added words *modifiers of their own.*

Thus, instead of *high, always,* and *many,* in —

High winds **always** injure **many** trees,

we may modify each with an adverb, and say:

Unusually high winds **almost always** destroy **very many** trees.

Here it is easy to see that "destroy," for instance, is modified not by **always** alone, but by the phrase **almost always**, since the adverb **almost** is added to show that we do not mean *quite* always.

How is "winds" modified? "Trees"? Does **very many** take the place of an adjective or an adverb? What may adverbs modify?

(*a*) These little *phrases* ("unusually high," etc.) are used as modifiers very much like single words; and when a noun or a verb has several modifiers, some of them may be words and some phrases. Thus:

Some | **large** | **thrifty** | **rather graceful** | trees.
They **unexpectedly** came **slowly** and **very quietly.**

Exercise 92. — 1. Give the essentials of each sentence and the **modifiers.** Select the modifiers that are phrases, and tell whether they are like **adjectives** or like **adverbs.**

1. Very few persons are perfectly happy.
2. We beheld the dark blue sky.
3. Will forgetful boys become good business men?
4. He displayed intensely disagreeable manners.
5. Hereafter I shall study more diligently.
6. Some rather dull boys have become very famous men.

2. Copy, and mark the essentials and the modifiers. Thus:

(This) (same) person [very recently] made ⟨a⟩ ⟨rather tiresome⟩ speech.

3. Write four sentences containing **modified adjectives** and **modified adverbs.**

135. An Adjective phrase consists of an adjective with its modifiers.

136. An Adverb phrase consists of an adverb with its modifiers.

When an adjective or an adverb takes a modifier *of any sort*, we have a phrase; as, **beautiful in color, suitable for driving**, where an adjective is modified by a prepositional phrase; **a little cautiously, ten feet farther**, where an adverb is modified by a noun phrase.

4. Adjective and Adverb Clauses

137. Adjective Clauses. We have seen that the essentials of a sentence may be modified by adjectives and adjective phrases. Let us study still another form of modifiers.

We need *trustworthy* boys.
We need boys *that may be trusted.*

1. Do these sentences differ in *meaning?* 2. How do they differ in *form?* 3. How are the boys described in each sentence? 4. What kind of modifier is *trustworthy?* 5. What kind of modifier must the equivalent expression *that may be trusted* be? 6. What does *that* stand for? 7. How many subjects and predicates in the second sentence? 8. What are they?

138. The second sentence contains two groups of words each having a subject and a predicate — *we need boys*, and *that may be trusted.* The first might be a complete sentence. The second group, however, depends for its meaning in part upon the first, and is used like an adjective to modify *boys.*

139. These parts of a sentence, each with a subject and a predicate, are called **clauses.** A clause that has meaning when used alone is an **independent** or **principal** clause. A clause whose meaning is incomplete when used alone, is a **dependent** or **subordinate** clause.

140. A clause is a part of a sentence containing a subject and a predicate.

141. An Independent or Principal Clause is one that is complete in meaning when used alone.

142. A Dependent or Subordinate Clause is one that is used as an adjective, adverb, or noun.

143. An Adjective Clause is one used like an adjective.

Exercise 93. — Point out the principal and the dependent **clauses** What does each adjective clause modify?

1. Time *that is once lost,* is lost forever. 2. Ethan Allen was the officer *who captured Ticonderoga.* 3. Read the paragraph *which describes the capture.* 4. A house that is divided against itself cannot stand. 5. That life is long which answers life's great ends. 6. The Pyrenees are the mountains that separate France and Spain. 7. No man who needs a monument ever ought to have one. 8. 'Tis heaven alone that is given away. 9. The evil that men do lives after them.

144. Adverb Clauses. Just as some dependent clauses are used as adjectives, others are used as adverbs. Thus:

Come *now.* Come *at once.* Come *when I call you.*
Stand *here.* Stand *in this place.* Stand *where you are.*

1. In these imperative sentences how is *come* modified? 2. What expressions tell *where* one is to stand? 3. Which of the modifiers are words? Phrases? Clauses? 4. Give the subject and predicate of each clause. 5. Use these clauses in sentences as modifiers: —— when the bell rings; —— before the car started; —— because it was closed.

145. An Adverb clause is one used like an adverb.

Exercise 94. — **Select the adverb clauses,** and tell what they modify.

1. The book was found where you put it. 2. They will do as they are bidden. 3. Come as the waves come when navies are stranded. 4. Think of the future when you spend money needlessly. 5. He whistled as he went for want of thought. 6. Scatter flowers where our heroes lie buried.

5. Prepositional Phrases

146. There are several other kinds of modifying expressions which have the meaning and use of adjectives and adverbs.

147. A Prepositional Phrase may always be used like an adjective or adverb. Thus:

As one of the essentials, like a predicate adjective:

Our utensils were *of wood* (= wooden).

These savages are *from Africa* (= African).

As a *modifier:*

The low mountains (*of Vermont*) contain marble.
The layers, or beds, extend [*for miles*].
They show great difference ⟨*in color*⟩.
I am happy ⟨*beyond measure*⟩.
Burns was a man ⟨*of genius*⟩.

What does each phrase modify? What modifiers are there besides the phrases?

Exercise 95. — 1. Copy, underline the **essentials,** and mark the **modifiers,** as in preceding exercises.

1. The path of industry is the path to success.
2. The needle of the compass may not always point toward the north.
3. The invention of letters was attributed to the Phœnicians.
4. The Queen of Sheba saw the wisdom of Solomon.
5. Twenty slaves were brought to Virginia in 1619.
6. The weight of evidence is against you.
7. A dull, heavy cloud of vapor hangs gloomily in the sky above our heads.

2. How many words are **needed** to make a prepositional phrase? Of what kind must they be? In the seventh sentence, how many modifiers has "cloud"? How many has "hangs"?

148. Modified Prepositional Phrases. The object of a preposition, like a noun in any other use, may be modified by one or more adjectives, or by phrases used as adjectives. Thus we may say:

The height of **mountains.**
The height of **these** mountains.
The height of **these lofty** mountains.
The height of mountains **in Alaska.**

In the first sentence the object of the preposition is unmodified, in the second it is modified by a limiting adjective, in the third by a limiting and a descriptive adjective, and in the fourth by a prepositional phrase used as an adjective.

Words which modify other modifying words, may be called **secondary modifiers.**

Exercise 96. — Find the nouns used in prepositional phrases and name the modifiers:

1. They marched to the sound of brazen trumpets. 2. The size of a man's head should determine the size of his hat. 3. In this small corner of the great Abbey lies the dust of many famous poets. 4. The paper in his nervous hand shook with a tremulous movement like that of an aspen leaf. 5. A dollar in the hand is worth ten dollars in some one else's pocket.

149. A Prepositional phrase consists of a preposition and its object with or without modifiers.

6. Possessives; Modifiers of Another Kind

150. Sometimes a word is adjective **by nature,** like those we have been studying; but a word that seems to be something else may be also adjective **by use.** In these sentences —

Edward's bicycle has just broken down,
They heard the horse's hoofs,
Your yacht was in the race —

can you find any words *used* like adjectives? Do they seem at all like nouns or verbs? To whom did the bicycle belong? What hoofs were heard? Who owned the yacht?

151. Such words as *Edward's, horse's, your,* are called **Possessives**, because, if the statements just made are true, we can say —

Edward had, or "possessed," a bicycle,
The horse had, or "possessed," hoofs,
You had, or "possessed," a yacht —

and we see that they are really *nouns* or *pronouns* changed a little from the common form, and *used like adjectives* to describe the thing mentioned by showing to whom or to what it belongs.

Exercise 97. — 1. Mention all the **possessives**, and tell what nouns they modify:

1. England's navy is very powerful. 2. Men's good deeds may live forever. 3. Children's manners show their training. 4. Napoleon ended his days at St. Helena. 5. We decorate her grave with flowers 6. Your money will be used for soldiers' monuments. 7. Is there a proverb about kings' daughters? 8. Greenland's warm climate is its greatest treasure. 9. Winter's rude tempests are gathering now. 10. Wisdom's ways are ways of pleasantness. 11. You'll find hornets' nests there. 12. Does Ecuador's largest coin equal our double eagle?

2. **Change** the possessive nouns to **prepositional phrases**, thus: "Greenland's climate" means "The climate of Greenland."

3. **Analyze** the sentences by marking the essentials and modifiers.

152. To make the possessive form, **nouns** commonly take an *apostrophe* and *s* ['s]; but if an *s* has already been added to

make the word plural, they take only an apostrophe [']. [The pronouns are changed in various ways; *you, your; they, their; he, his; I, my; she, her,* etc.]

153. A Possessive is a special form of a noun or a pronoun used to show whose property is meant.

7. Appositives: Nouns Used as Second Names

154. Another sort of modifier appears in this example:

This man is James Hooper, treasurer.

The nouns **James Hooper** and **treasurer** evidently refer to the same person, and we understand that James Hooper *is treasurer.* So, speaking of two men *who are machinists* we might say:

Hardy and Greene, **machinists,** have just failed.

Exercise 98. — In the following sentences:

My brother Rudolphus is coming home,
I, William, am to be married,
William Shakespeare, poet, died in 1616,
William Shakespeare, confectioner, lives in D street,
We had reached that great wheat market, Chicago —

what word shows which brother is meant? Which words show who is meant by "William Shakespeare"? By "I"? In the fifth find two names for one thing.

155. A noun is often added to another noun to describe or explain its meaning, when one name is not enough. The noun thus added is called an **appositive,** and is just as much a modifier as an adjective is, though, unlike an adjective, it almost always *follows* the word it modifies.

The word *appositive* means "put by the side of."

Exercise 99. — 1. Select the **appositives,** and tell to what words they refer.

1. The historian Macaulay wrote "The Lays of Ancient Rome." 2. The river Nile overflows its banks annually. 3. The seventh month, July, was named in honor of Julius Cæsar. 4. The children's favorite was Eugene Field, the poet. 5. The New England festival, Thanksgiving, comes in November. 6. The capital of New York, Albany, is on the Hudson. 7. We boys have neglected our lessons. 8. She advised us girls to be patient. 9. You carpenters have a busy life.

2. Make sentences, using the first five appositives **as subjects modified by appositives.**

156. An Appositive is a noun used with another noun or with a pronoun to explain its meaning.

8. Possessive and Appositive Phrases

157. Possessive and appositive phrases will be easy for us to understand because, like adjective and adverb phrases, they are only possessives and appositives, with their modifiers.

158. We must remember that possessives and appositives are only **used** like adjectives; they are not what we *call* adjectives, but are really nouns or pronouns. Hence they have the same modifiers that other nouns and pronouns have.

Thus, instead of *girl's* hair, we might wish to speak of

This young Japanese *girl's* hair,

using a possessive phrase in which the adjectives **this, young,** and **Japanese** all modify the possessive *girl's.*

So with appositives:

My companion, **an old** *friend* **from Ohio,** was very entertaining.

Here **an, old,** and **from Ohio** are added to the appositive as secondary modifiers.

159. An Appositive phrase is an appositive with all its modifiers.

160. A Possessive phrase is a possessive with all its modifiers.

Exercise 100. — 1. Tell which phrases in the following are **appositive** and which **possessive**; and give the modifiers in each phrase.

1. Charles Dickens, the great English novelist, died in 1870. 2. The Moon, the satellite of the Earth, is about two thousand miles in diameter. 3. In 1807, Robert Fulton, an American engineer, sailed the first steamboat, the *Clermont*, on the Hudson. 4. Benjamin Franklin, a distinguished American statesman, was born in Boston in 1706. 5. Who would disregard a loving mother's counsel? 6. The brave colonel's reply was, "I'll try, sir." 7. Whittier, the Quaker poet, wrote "Snow Bound, A Winter Idyl." 8. Nathaniel Hawthorne, author of "The Marble Faun," was born in Salem, a city in Massachusetts. 9. Cortez, the conqueror of Mexico, was a Spaniard. 10. Remember your last year's experiences. 11. This is a debt of many years' standing. 12. Now comes the morning star, day's harbinger.

2. **Analyze** the preceding sentences by copying and marking.

Exercise 101. — Read these words and note the ideas they suggest to you. Then make sentences containing these words **modified by appositive words or phrases.**

Gen. Putnam	Harrisburg	author	Chicago
steamboat	David	inventor	Amazon
Edward VII.	student	Mt. Shasta	commander

9. Appositive Clauses

161. Some dependent **clauses** are used as appositive modifiers just as nouns are. Thus:

> The fact *that life is short* should keep us busy.
> The message, *that peace was declared*, flashed over the wires.
> Harvey made the discovery *that the blood circulates*.

1. Point out the dependent clauses in these sentences. 2. Tell the subject and predicate of each. 3. Read each sentence omitting the clause. 4. What word does each one explain?

Appositives are generally nouns. A clause used as an appositive is a **Noun Clause.**

Exercise 102. — Select the **noun clauses,** and tell what each one modifies. Show the subject and the predicate. Read the principal clause.

1. The rumor that the steamer had been burnt was unfounded. 2. The statement that the earth is round is now undisputed. 3. The question whether I go or stay is still unanswered. 4. The wonder grew that one small head could carry all he knew. 5. Do not forget this — that the door to success is always marked "Push."

162. A Noun Clause is one used like a noun.

163. A Complex Sentence is one containing a principal clause and one or more subordinate clauses.

SUMMARY : MODIFIERS

164. We now understand how it is that a sentence may be very long; for it may contain several clauses, and we must often modify a word again and again before we can express exactly what we mean.

The *simplest modifiers for each part of speech* are given below. [See Chap. XV.]

Nouns and *Pronouns* may have for modifiers —

1. **An Adjective** —
   - **word:** **Kind** *hearts* are more than coronets.
   - **phrase:** This is an **extremely interesting** *book.*
   - **clause:** Those **that came** remained.
2. **A Prepositional Phrase:** The *life* **of Livingstone** was *one* **of self-sacrifice.**
3. **A Possessive** —
   - **word:** **His** *energy* was **his** only *capital.*
   - **phrase:** **Every man's** *work* shall be manifest.
4. **An Appositive** —
   - **word:** The *poet* **Milton** was blind.
   - **phrase:** *Homer,* **the Greek poet,** was blind.
   - **clause:** The fact **that he is dead** is proved.

Verbs, *Adjectives*, and *Adverbs* may have for modifiers —

1. **An Adverb** { **word:** He *gives* **twice** who *gives* **quickly.**
   phrase: *Shall* we not *strive* **more constantly?**
   clause: Go **when he calls you.**

2. **A Prepositional Phrase:** *Look* not mournfully **into the past.**

The other parts of speech are very rarely modified.

KINDS OF SENTENCES: SUMMARY

165. We have learned that in their *meaning* or use sentences are of three kinds:

Assertive (or **Declarative**), containing statements.
Interrogative, asking questions.
Imperative, making commands or requests.

166. In *form*, sentences may be of four kinds —

Simple, having one independent clause.
Compound, having two or more independent clauses.
Complex, having one independent clause and at least one dependent clause.
Complex Compound, having at least two independent clauses and one or more dependent clauses.

167. The *subject* of a sentence may be —

Simple, A *friend* in need is a friend indeed.
Compound, *Honor* and *fame* from no condition rise.

The *essential predicate* of a sentence may be —

Simple, Slowly the mist o'er the meadow *was creeping.*
Compound, In Him we *live* and *move* and *have* our being.

The *complement* of a verb may be —

Simple, Honor the *memory* of our fallen comrades.
It seems but an idle *tale.*
Life is too *short* to be wasted.

Compound, Bring *roses* sweet and *lilies* fair.
Franklin was a *philosopher* and a *statesman.*
The traitor died *unwept, unhonored,* and *unsung.*

WESTMINSTER ABBEY

I passed some time in Poet's Corner, which occupies an end of one of the transepts or cross aisles of the abbey. The monuments are generally simple, for the lives of literary men afford no striking themes for the sculptor. Shakespeare and Addison have statues erected to their memories; but the greater part have busts, medallions, and sometimes mere inscriptions. Notwithstanding the simplicity of these memorials, I have always observed that the visitors to the abbey remained longest about them. A kinder and fonder feeling takes place of that cold curiosity or vague admiration with which they gaze on the splendid monuments of the great and the heroic. They linger about these as about the tombs of friends and companions; for indeed there is something of companionship between the author and the reader. Other men are known to posterity only through the medium of history, which is continually growing faint and obscure; but the intercourse between the author and his fellowmen is ever new, active, and immediate. He has lived for them more than for himself; he has sacrificed surrounding enjoyments, and shut himself up from the delights of social life, that he might the more intimately commune with distant minds and distant ages. Well may the world cherish his renown; for it has been purchased, not by deeds of violence and blood, but by the diligent dispensation of pleasure. Well may posterity be grateful to his memory; for he has left it an inheritance, not of empty names and sounding actions, but whole treasures of wisdom, bright gems of thought, and golden veins of language.

— *Washington Irving.*

Exercise 103. — 1. Select five words belonging to each part of speech. 2. Mention five transitive verbs with their objects. 3. Five copulative verbs and their complements. 4. Quote an adjective clause. 5. What appositive in the first sentence? 6. What indirect object in the last? 7. Select three complete verbs. 8. Write the essentials of the first ten clauses. 9. What series of adjectives do you notice? 10. For what are the semicolons used?

CHAPTER V

SENTENCE-ANALYSIS

Exercise 104. — 1. Mention the three classes into which sentences are divided according to meaning. 2. What is a simple sentence? 3. A compound sentence? 4. Into what may every compound sentence be separated? 5. Every simple sentence? 6. Into what may every enlarged subject be separated? 7. Every enlarged predicate? 8. Name the *two* essentials that are found in a sentence. 9. The *three* essentials. 10. What parts of speech may form a complement? 11. What is a modifier?

168. While studying the building up of sentences we have had some practice in *Analysis*, or the taking apart of sentences; for we have pointed out their principal parts, and have shown how each is modified.

169. Analysis is the process of separating a sentence into its parts, and of showing what they have to do with one another.

170. Method. — If, in analyzing a sentence, we treat modifying phrases or clauses as single words, the structure of it can be made clear, either orally or in writing, by telling in this order —

1. The **kind** of sentence.
2. The kind of clauses that **form it.**
3. The **principal** clause (or clauses).
   - *a.* The subject and its modifiers.
   - *b.* The verb and its modifiers.
   - *c.* The complement and its modifiers.
4. The **subordinate** clause (or clauses).
   - *a.* The subject and its modifiers.
   - *b.* The verb and its modifiers.
   - *c.* The complement and its modifiers.

5. The **connectives.**
6. The **independent expressions.**

Model for Analysis. — "A fool speaks all his mind, but a wise man reserves something for hereafter."

1. This is a **compound assertive** sentence.
2. Formed by uniting **two simple** assertions.
3. The **essentials** of the first assertion are *fool speaks mind.*
4. The **subject** *fool* is modified by the adjective *a.*
5. The **verb** *speaks* is completed by its object *mind.*
6. The **object** *mind* is modified by the adjective *all,* and by the possessive *his.*
7. The **essentials** of the second assertion are *man reserves something.*
8. The **subject** *man* is modified by the adjectives *a* and *wise.*
9. The **verb** *reserves* is modified by the prepositional phrase *for hereafter.*
10. The **object** *something* is unmodified.
11. The **conjunction** *but* unites the two assertions.

171. A *phrase* or *a dependent clause* may be analyzed by telling —

1. Its **kind.**
2. What it **modifies.**
3. The **essentials.**
4. The **modifiers.**

Thus, in the sentence —

De Soto (the discoverer of the Mississippi) was buried [in its waters] — we may say that *the discoverer of the Mississippi* is —

1. An **appositive** phrase, 2. **Modifying** the noun *De Soto.*

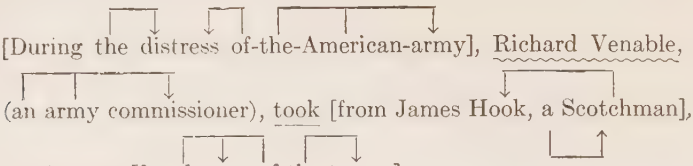
3 and 4. The **noun** *discoverer* is modified by the adjective *the* and by the prepositional phrase *of the Mississippi.*

172. A simple form of written analysis is that already given on **page** 58. Thus:

(A) fool speaks ⟨all⟩ ⟨his⟩ mind, | but | (a) (wise) man **reserves** something [for hereafter].

[+[When] hope is lost] all is lost.

173. Secondary Modifiers may be joined to what they modify by lines straight or curved, an arrow-head showing the modified word. Thus:


[During the distress of-the-American-army], Richard Venable,
(an army commissioner), took [from James Hook, a Scotchman],
⟨two⟩ steers [for the use of-the-troops].

174. When there is reason for the change, *modifiers* of almost every kind may be placed in *inverted order*, or they may be separated from that part of the sentence to which they belong; *e.g.*:

A maiden **fair** And I **the victor** slew. Lean thou this staff **upon.** **Slowly** the day declines. **For us** the sun ne'er sets.

In oral analysis, we must be careful to **transpose** every part of the sentence to its more usual place.

When modified by a phrase, an adjective usually follows its noun. Thus, we say, "a man ready for work," not "a ready for work man."

Exercise 105. — 1. Read each of the following sentences, **transpose** into the usual order, and explain what changes you make.

2. Copy and analyze by marking thus:

[Up the hill] ⟨his⟩ horse he [hotly] urged.

1. Here ends the tale. 2. Many are our faults. 3. A mighty king was he. 4. Of years agone I'm dreaming. 5. The queen hath him offended. 6. Of many men the names he knew. 7. To pastures new press we now eagerly on. 8. Within my garden bloomed a lily tall. 9. Through the dark defile wound the long battalion slowly. 10. Here once the embattled farmers stood. 11. Lightly from bough to bough fluttered the birds in the tree-tops. 12. A vision bright at dead of night I saw. 13. Slowly and sadly we laid him down.

Exercise 106. — 1. Read and **transpose** as in Exercise 104.

2. Copy and make a **written analysis**, as in § 170.

1. Somewhere the birds are singing evermore.
2. Pleasantly rose the sun on the village of Grand Pré.
3. Under the spreading chestnut-tree
   The village smithy stands.
4. Down the broad valley, fast and far,
   The troubled army fled.
5. There wandered a noble Moslem boy
   Through the scene of beauty in breathless joy.
6. Safely through another week
   God has brought us on our way.
7. Softly now the light of day
   Fades upon my sight away.

Exercise 107. — **Analyze** the following sentences in full, orally, in writing, or by marking:

1. What think ye of this? 2. How use doth breed a habit in a man! 3. Heaven helps those who help themselves. 4. All things come to him who will but wait. 5. Study wisdom, and you will reap pleasure. 6. These are the reasons that have been given. 7. Here rest the great and good in lowly graves. 8. Betwixt eyes and nose a strange contest arose. 9. He is the freeman whom the truth makes free. 10. The human body is a study for one's whole life. 11. Hypocrisy is the tribute that vice pays to virtue. 12. The streams of small pleasures fill the lake of happiness. 13. The fate of empires depends upon the education of youth. 14. Not every disappointment which a man meets is a misfortune. 15. In the market-place of Bruges stands the belfry, old and brown. 16. Strong is thy dwelling-place, and thou puttest thy nest in a rock. 17. The first and greatest end of education is the discipline of the mind. 18. Work while it is day; the night cometh in which no man can work. 19. Hands of angels, unseen by mortal eyes, shifted the scenery of the heavens; the glories of night dissolved into the glories of the dawn.

20. Among the pitfalls in our way.
The best of us walk blindly.

21. Duty points, with outstretched fingers,
Every soul to action high.

22. Oft on the trampling band, from crown
Of some tall cliff, the deer look down.

23. Silently, one by one, in the infinite meadows of heaven,
Blossomed the lovely stars, the forget-me-nots of the angels.

24. O softly on yon bank of haze
Her rosy face the summer lays.

25. They are slaves who fear to speak
For the fallen and the weak.

26. Through all the long midsummer day
The meadow sides are sweet with hay.

27. Lack of occupation is not rest;
A mind quite vacant is a mind distressed.

28. Still stands the forest primeval; but under the shade of its branches
Dwells another race, with other customs and language.

29. The master of the district school,
Brisk wielder of the birch and rule,
Held at the fire his favored place.

30. In the Acadian land, on the shores of the Basin of Minas,
Distant, secluded, still, the little village of Grand Pré
Lay in the fruitful valley.

31. Then came the laborers home from the field, and serenely the sun sank
Down to his rest, and twilight prevailed.

32. Somewhat apart from the village, and near the Basin of Minas,
Benedict Bellefontaine, the wealthiest farmer of Grand Pré,
Dwelt on his goodly acres; and with him, directing his household,
Gentle Evangeline lived, his child, and the pride of the village.

33. Thus, at peace with God and the world, the farmer of Grand Pré
Lived on his sunny farm, and Evangeline governed his household.

GEN. WARREN'S ADDRESS AT THE BATTLE OF BUNKER HILL

Stand! the ground's your own, my braves!
Will ye give it up to slaves?
Will ye look for greener graves?
    Hope ye mercy still?
What's the mercy despots feel?
Hear it in that battle peal!
See it in yon bristling steel!
    Ask it, ye who will!

Fear ye foes who kill for hire?
Will ye to your homes retire?
Look behind you! — they're afire!
    And, before you, — see
Who have done it! From the vale
On they come! and will ye quail?
Leaden rain and iron hail
    Let their welcome be!

In the God of battles trust!
Die we may: and die we must:
But, oh! where can dust to dust
    Be consigned so well,
As where heaven its dews shall shed
On the martyred patriot's bed,
And the rocks shall raise their head,
    Of his deeds to tell?

— *John Pierpont.*

Questions. — 1. How many assertive, or declarative, sentences in this selection? 2. How many interrogative sentences? 3. How many imperative sentences? 4. What pronoun is omitted from the fifth line of the first stanza? 5. What adjective clause in the second stanza? 6. Make a list of the adverbs in the third stanza. 7. Explain the last two lines. 8. What are the modifiers of *come* in the second stanza? 9. What is the complement of *be* in the same stanza? 10. What transitive verbs in the last stanza? 11. How many sentences are used in an exclamative way? Why?

PART TWO
THE PARTS OF SPEECH

CHAPTER VI

NOUNS

Exercise 108. — 1. What is a noun? 2. If a word stands as subject of a sentence, to what parts of speech may it belong? 3. To what if it is the object of a verb or of a preposition? 4. What do you call a word that is modified by an adjective? 5. How do you tell whether a word is a noun or not? 6. What kinds of words or phrases may modify a noun? 7. Use "store" as the subject of a sentence, and give it two or three modifiers. 8. Use "president" as an object, and modify it by a prepositional phrase and an appositive.

A. KINDS

COMMON AND PROPER

175. Nouns may be divided into classes according to their *meaning.*

Exercise 109. — 1. (*a*) Does the name "gulf" always stand for the same body of water? (*b*) To how many parts of a year may the word "month" apply? (*c*) To how many does the word "April" apply?

2. About each of the following nouns say whether it may represent *any one of several* things, or is meant to be the special name of one individual.

river	Amazon	city	Berlin
mountain	Vesuvius	ocean	Atlantic
continent	Africa	dog	Bruno
orator	Webster	month	August
holiday	Christmas	book	"Jo's Boys"

2. (*a*) Which word in each of the following groups applies to the greatest number? (*b*) Which to the least? (*c*) Which are names for every one of a certain class? (*d*) Which are "given names"? (*e*) Name another individual of each class.

man	ruler	vessel	gentleman
author	sovereign	steamer	scholar
poet	king	battle-ship	teacher
Longfellow	Edward VII.	Oregon	Dr. Arnold

176. Some nouns, such as "man" or "water," represent a thing as *being of a certain kind* or class, without showing which particular one or which part is meant. Other nouns are names given to designate a *particular individual.*

Thus the noun *man* may apply to any one of millions of persons, but the name **John Milton** applies to one person only. The name *city* is held in common by hundreds of places, because they are in some respects alike; but **Philadelphia, Chicago, Omaha,** are names given to certain cities, to be, as it were, their exclusive *property.*

177. A name held in common by all of a kind is called a **Common Noun**; and a special name given to one individual *for its own* is called a **Proper Noun.**

"Proper" is derived from a word meaning *one's own.*

178. Common Nouns, such as *clock, kitchen, tree, glass, putty, oysters, weight, writing, mercy,* have meanings that **describe** things and show what they are **by nature.**

Proper nouns, as we use them, have no longer much meaning in themselves, and like the word *Dick,* which may name a horse, a man, a boy, a dog, or a bird, they serve only **to designate one** person, place, or thing.

We can judge by looking at an object what *common* nouns to apply to it; but if it has a *proper* name, that must be learned in some other way.

Exercise 110. — 1. Tell which of these nouns are **common** and which **proper:**

King	Solomon	Temper	Music	Paris
Rome	Eagle	Shasta	Noise	Samuel
Ocean	Peru	Mitchell	Piano	Riches
War	Beauty	Warden	Mozart	Mercy
Christian	Turk	Italian	Democrat	Saint

2. Does the last word in each column show *what sort* of person is meant? If so, these words are common nouns.

179. A Proper Noun is a special name meant for only one person or thing.

All other nouns are *common* nouns.

180. A Common Noun is a general name that applies to any part or to all of a kind or class of objects.

Proper nouns are sometimes used as class names, or common nouns. As — A Napoleon; The four Georges; A Daniel come to judgment!

Exercise 111. — 1. Write the special or **proper** names of several individuals in each of the following classes:

River; town; volcano; governor; king; author; country; planet; queen; dog; historian; state; yacht; month; painter; poet; capital; president; book; inventor.

2. What are the people called who live in the following places? Thus:

"Canada," Canadians; "Genoa," Genoese.

Canada; Genoa; Cuba; Spain; Venice; Italy; Europe; Mexico; Brazil; Burmah; China; Japan; Malta; Norway; Boston.

Collective Nouns

1. What is the difference between a soldier and an army? 2. A ship and a fleet? 3. A singer and a choir? 4. Of what is a jury made up? 5. A flock? 6. A school?

181. Some nouns, even in the singular form, may be plural in meaning, and are called **Collective Nouns,** because they denote a collection of individuals.

Exercise 112. — Fill the blanks so as to show *of what* each collection is composed:

1. A regiment of ——. 2. A crew of ——. 3. A swarm of ——. 4. A herd of ——. 5. The Senate contains ——. 6. A family of ——. 7. A team of ——. 8. A pair of ——. 9. A club of ——. 10. A troop of ——. 11. —— in the constellation. 12. —— on the committee. 13. —— in the tribe. 14. —— in the pack. 15. —— in Congress.

182. A Collective Noun is one that even in the singular form denotes a number of separate persons or things.

Exercise 113. — **Define** each word so as to show that it is a collective noun:

Group; class; council; hive; multitude; jury; fleet; flock; mob; society; band; drove; couple; bevy; gang; horde; corps; suite.

Concrete and Abstract Nouns

183. The names of objects that are perceived by the senses, that is, which include all living things and whatever is like a solid, a liquid, or a vapor, are sometimes called **Concrete** nouns.

The names of the qualities, or attributes, or actions of such objects considered *separately* from the objects themselves are called **Abstract** nouns.

"Abstract" means *drawn off, separated.*

184. Nouns of this class apply to *what cannot take up room, or be weighed, or touched, or moved.* Thus:

Motion, movement, hurry, race, speed, distance, absence.
Beauty, color, freshness, brilliancy, gleam, warmth.
Harmony, music, tune, discord, sound, disturbance, war.

185. Kinds. Of the many kinds of abstract nouns, the most important are —

1. Nouns that name a *quality* or a *condition;* as —
   brightness, poverty, pride, weight, flexibility.
2. Verbal nouns, which name the *action* asserted by a verb; as —
   learning, rejoicing, loving, to swing, to skate.

Exercise 114. — 1. Select from this list five words that may be names of **actions,** ten names of **qualities** or **conditions.**

weakness	industry	hoping	speed	fear
despair	temperance	heat	slumber	hunger
singing	haste	reading	dashing	coasting

2. Name four **qualities** or **conditions** of —

wood	gold	an explorer	a good son
air	water	a gymnast	a great man
camels	music	a miser	an agreeable companion

186. An Abstract Noun is the name of a quality, a condition, or an action.

Exercise 115. — There are five nouns of a kind in the following list. Which of them are **proper** nouns? Which **collective?** Which **abstract?**

Maryland; Great Bear; legislature; Eliot; Frenchman; Englishman; skill; humility; audience; slavery; Quito; knowledge; brigade; bevy; suite; Thursday; marching.

B. INFLECTION

Changes in Form for Different Uses

187. Besides using adjectives or other modifiers to show just what a word represents, it is often necessary to *change the form* of the word according to its different uses or applications; *i.e., to inflect* it.

Thus: *trees, tree's* are inflected forms of the noun *tree; sweeter* and *sweetest,* of the adjective *sweet; his* and *him* of the pronoun *he;* and *drove, driving, driven, drive, drivest,* of the verb *drive.*

188. Inflection does not change the *original meaning* of a word, but rather extends or restricts its application, or adapts it to some particular use in the sentence.

Not all variations in form are inflections. Thus, adding *er* to *quick* to make *quicker* is an inflection. The word is still an adjective. *Quicken,* however, is a derivative rather than an inflected form, for the suffix *en* is added to make the word a verb and thus to change it from one part of speech to another.

As compared with other languages English has very few inflections. Most of the inflected forms it once had, have worn away and disappeared; and now grammatical relations and uses are expressed by the order of the words in a sentence, by other words, or by substitute phrases.

Inflection means a *bending away* from the original form.

189. Most nouns have two forms for *number* and two for *relation.* A few nouns have two forms for *gender.*

Eight pronouns have three forms for *relation,* and a few are inflected for *number.*

Many adjectives and adverbs have three forms for *comparison.*

Verbs have seven or eight inflected forms for various uses. The other parts of speech are uninflected.

190. Inflection is a change in the form of a word to denote a difference in application or use.

Number

191. The most common change in the form of a noun is that by which we express *Number.*

192. Number is the form of a noun or pronoun that shows whether it denotes one or more than one.

193. The singular number is the form of a noun or pronoun that denotes only one.

194. The plural number is the form of a noun or pronoun that denotes more than one.

195. Most nouns have two number-forms, the **singular** and the **plural.**

196. RULE I. — *Most nouns are made plural by adding* s to *the singular.* Thus:

chair	valley	zero	gulf	fife	monarch	German
chairs	valleys	zeros	gulfs	fifes	monarchs	Germans

197. RULE II. — *Letters, figures, signs, etc.,* are made *plural by adding* 's. Thus:

Do not make your **r's** and **v's** alike. Cancel the **9's.** Make the **+'s** and **−'s** larger.

Exercise 116. — 1. (*a*) Is the number of syllables always the same in both singular and plural? (*b*) Which of these words are pronounced with an additional syllable in the plural? (*c*) Try to discover the reason. (*d*) What is the additional syllable?

House; place; pane; size; noose; plate; fire; bridge; bride; niche; name; rope; truce; pulse; fence; case; pause; force.

2. Can you tell why in making these plurals we have added **es** instead of **s** alone?

Losses; taxes; topazes; dishes; churches.

198. Some nouns end with a sound so much like that of **s** that we cannot pronounce the plural easily without making another syllable. Hence —

199. RULE III. — *Nouns ending in* **s, x, z, sh,** *or* **ch** (*soft*) *form the plural by adding* **es** *to the singular.* Thus:

grass	box	topaz	wish	larch
grasses	boxes	topazes	wishes	larches

Exercise 117. — Write the plural of —

Pass; branch; honey; tyro; clef; safe; fez; bush; patriarch; piano; fife; dwarf; fox; arch; medley; chimney; hoof; i *and* t.

200. Some nouns require other changes to be made in forming the plural.

Notice those ending in *y*. Which of them end in *y* after a consonant? What is the change in the plural?

fly	key	lily	buoy	story	tray	enemy	ditty
flies	keys	lilies	buoys	stories	trays	enemies	ditties

201. Rule IV. — *If the singular ends in* y *after a consonant,* y *becomes* ie *in the plural.*

Thus: Pony, *ponies;* sty, *sties;* cry, *cries;* body, *bodies.* Also, soliloquy, *soliloquies;* colloquy, *colloquies.*

Note. — Words like *lady, city,* etc., formerly ended in ie in the singular.

202. Rule V. — *Thirteen nouns ending in* f, *and three in* fe, *form the plural in* ves. They are —

Beef, calf, elf, half, leaf, loaf, self, sheaf, shelf, staff, thief, wharf, wolf; knife, life, wife. (Plural, *beeves, calves, elves; knives,* etc.)

wharfs is a recognized plural of wharf.

All other nouns in f or fe are regular, adding only s.

203. Rule VI. — *About forty nouns ending in* o *after a consonant form the plural in* es.

The most common ones are —

Buffalo, cargo, calico, echo, embargo, flamingo, hero, mosquito, motto, mulatto, negro, potato, tomato, tornado, torpedo, volcano, veto. (Plural *cargoes, echoes,* etc.)

Most nouns in o (several *hundred* in all) are regular, adding only s.

204. RULE VII. — *Nine common words always form their plural without* **s.** They are —

Man, *men;* ox, *oxen;* goose, *geese;* woman, *women;* foot, *feet;* mouse, *mice;* child, *children;* tooth, *teeth;* louse, *lice.*

German, Mussulman, Turcoman, ottoman, talisman, are not compounds of *man,* and form their plural in **s.**

Exercise 118. — Write the **plural** of each word:

Jelly; ruby; fairy; glory; duty; victory; turkey; sheaf; chief; strife; money; attorney; cameo; motto; grotto; half; waif; soliloquy; alley; ally; veto; solo; mouse; memento.

205. Proper Nouns, when made plural, generally follow the same rules as common nouns. Thus we write:

All the *Beechers;* the *Adamses;* the *Alleghanies;* several *Mr. Smiths;* both the *Miss Hudsons;* the two *Gen. Johnstons;* one of the *Dr. Davises;* the *Mrs. Wrights.* But

(*a*) To prevent confusion, we may make the fewest changes possible in the forms of proper nouns, and may write (for example) *the eight Henrys,* the *Marys,* the two *Miss Carys,* instead of the *Henries,* the *Maries,* the *Caries.*

(*b*) In referring to members of one family, or to partners in business, we may give the plural form to the title "Mr." or "Miss," instead of to the name itself. Thus we may say —

Mr. Hayes, the *Messrs. Hayes;* Miss Sands, the *Misses Sands.*

(*c*) A title is, of course, made plural when used with several names. Thus:

Messrs. Long and Collins: *Misses* Charlotte, Emily, and Anne Brontè: *Drs.* Brown and White; *Gens.* Lee and Jackson.

206. Most **Compound words** form their plural like simple words by changing the **final syllable.** Thus:

Frenchmen; greenhouses; flag-staffs; handfuls; court-yards; major-generals; four-in-hands; forget-me-nots; jack-in-the-pulpits; three-per-cents; piano-fortes.

(*a*) A few compounds are made plural by changing the *first part*, which the rest of the word merely describes. Thus:

Brothers-in-law; *sisters*-in-law; *sons*-in-law; *daughters*-in-law; *fathers*-in-law; *mothers*-in-law; *attorneys*-at-law; *attorneys*-general; *postmasters*-general; *commanders*-in-chief; *generals*-in-chief; *aides*-de-camp; *courts*-martial; *cousins*-german; *hangers*-on; *lookers*-on; *knights*-errant; *men*-of-war; and a few others.

(*b*) Occasionally *both parts* are changed, as in man-servant, *men-servants*.

Exercise 119. — Spell or write the **plural** of these words:

Gentleman; grandmother; spoonful; son-in-law; handicraft; maid-servant; court-martial; dining-room; major-general; rope-ladder; eyelash; touch-me-not; go-between; stowaway; sailor-boy; out-going; cupful; by-path; attorney-general; man-servant; ottoman; Englishman; flower-de-luce; will-o'-the-wisp.

207. Foreign Plurals. — Many words taken without change from other languages retain their foreign plurals. Thus:

Larva, *larvæ;* vertebra, *vertebræ;* alumnus, *alumni;* focus, *foci;* fungus, *fungi;* radius, *radii;* stratum, *strata;* axis, *axes;* crisis, *crises;* ellipsis, *ellipses;* oasis, *oases;* genus, *genera;* phenomenon, *phenomena*, etc.

208. Some nouns have the *same form for both singular and plural meanings*. We can tell the number of such nouns only by the context. Among them are —

(*a*) *Deer, sheep, swine, alms, gross* — always singular in form.

(*b*) *Amends, means, odds, pains, wages* — always plural in form.

(*c*) *Brick, cannon, heathen, head, shot, sail; grouse, salmon,* and many *names of fish* and of *game; brace, score, hundred,* and other words referring to *number,* or to *quantity*. These have also regular plurals with a meaning different from that of the singular. *Alms* is now generally treated as plural in meaning, although singular in origin. As — The alms were received at the alms-gate.

209. (*a*) Some nouns, from the nature of what is meant, are almost *always singular*. (See p. 82.) As —

Wisdom, music, temperance, honesty, etc.

(*b*) And some are *always plural*. As —

Ashes, annals, antipodes, measles, nuptials, scissors, shears, tidings, victuals, vitals, etc.

210. (*a*) Some nouns are *plural in form* but *singular in meaning*. As —

News, gallows, and words in *-ics, — politics, mathematics, ethics,* etc.

(*b*) And some, *singular in form,* may be *plural in meaning*, As —

Army, kin, committee, and other collective nouns. Also, *cattle.*

211. Some nouns used in two senses have *two plural forms.*

brother	*brothers* (by parentage)	*brethren* (by association).
cloth	*cloths* (kinds of cloth)	*clothes* (garments).
die	*dies* (for coinage, etc.)	*dice* (for games).
fish	*fishes* (regarded separately)	*fish* (collectively).
genius	*geniuses* (men of genius)	*genii* (supernatural beings).
index	*indexes* (table of contents)	*indices* (algebraic signs).
pea	*peas* (in definite number)	*pease* (by the quantity).
penny	*pennies* (single coins)	*pence* (as a value or amount).
staff	*staffs* (as a military term)	*staves* (in most senses).
stamen	*stamens* (of flowers)	*stamina* (support or strength).

Gender

212. Among the nouns that name *living beings,* many names show to which *sex* a person belongs; as —

Edward, Mary, Margaret;

and we sometimes find two nouns with no difference in meaning, except that one of them denotes a *male* and the other a *female;* as —

prince, princess; son, daughter; John, Jane.

213. Nouns that denote males are said to be masculine, or of the **masculine gender**; those that denote females are said to be feminine, or of the **feminine gender.**

Most nouns that denote living beings apply alike to males or females and are said to be of **common** *gender*. For example: *child, parent, author, thief, stenographer, clerk,* etc.

The names of things without sex are, of course, of neither gender, that is, of the **neuter** gender. Neuter means *neither*. For example: *mountain, iron, sky.*

214. The gender of a noun is of little grammatical importance except as it determines the form of a pronoun used to represent it. *He, his,* and *him* represent **masculine** nouns; *she* and *her,* **feminine** nouns; and *it* and *its,* **neuter** nouns.

215. When sexless things are given the characteristics of persons they are said to be *personified,* and may be either masculine or feminine. Thus, the *Sun, Time,* the *Ocean, Anger, War,* a *river,* etc., are represented by *he;* while the *Moon,* the *Earth, Virtue,* a *ship, Religion, Pity, Peace,* are spoken of as feminine.

216. Gender is distinguished in the following ways:

1. **By Inflection.** — The correlative nouns are similar in form, the feminine adding *ess* to the masculine. Thus:

abbot, abbess;	governor, governess;	master, mistress;
actor, actress;	heir, heiress;	negro, negress;
baron, baroness;	host, hostess;	priest, priestess;
count, countess;	Jew, Jewess;	prince, princess;
duke, duchess;	lad, lass [*contracted*];	prophet, prophetess;
emperor, empress;	lion, lioness;	shepherd, shepherdess;
god, goddess;	marquis, marchioness;	tiger, tigress.

Some words from *foreign languages* retain their inflected forms. Thus:

administrator, administratrix;	hero, heroine;	Francis, Frances;
beau, belle;	sultan, sultana;	Henry, Henrietta;
czar, czarina;	testator, testatrix;	Joseph, Josephine;
executor, executrix;	Augustus, Augusta;	Louis, Louisa;
	Charles, Charlotte;	Paul, Paulina.

217. 2. **By Different Words.** — Sometimes the feminine is a wholly *different word* from the masculine. Thus:

bachelor, maid;	lord, lady;	stag, hind;
earl, countess;	monk, *or* friar, nun;	wizard, witch;
king, queen;	sir, madam;	youth, maiden.

In *widower*, *widow*, the masculine is made from the feminine.

218. 3. **By Composition.** — Sometimes a well-known gender word is made a part of a compound word to show which sex is meant. Thus:

he-goat, *she*-bear, *man*-servant, *ewe*-lamb, *cock*-sparrow.

Exercise 120. — 1. Tell the gender of the following nouns, and when possible give the corresponding word of opposite gender.

Cousin; clerk; Edward; duchess; president; bridegroom; printer; empress; cashier; peacock; child; cook; czar; lass; widow; secretary; sultana; servant; nun; artist; spinster; aunt; goose; abbot; maiden; husband; roe; hen; landlord; laundress.

2. Give as many general names as you can for **relatives** of both sexes; as — ***uncle, aunt.***

219. Gender is a distinction in words that denotes sex.

Case*

Exercise 121. — 1. Tell to **what part of speech** "cross" belongs in each sentence, and tell how you make the distinction.

1. The bridges cross the stream.
2. He gave me a cross look.
3. The emblem of the Christian religion is the cross.

2. (*a*) In **what seven ways** is the noun "Albert" used in these sentences?

1. Albert has returned.
2. This was Albert's book.
3. Go with Albert.
4. My brother Albert is ill.
5. Have you met Albert?
6. My name is Albert.
7. We named him Albert.

(*b*) **How many forms** does the noun have in these sentences? (*c*) Which use requires a special form? (*d*) How do the forms differ?

* See Appendix I.

220. Besides having number-forms to show singular or plural meaning, nouns have also what are called *Case-forms*, according to their *use* in a sentence. But there is only one of the various uses for which a special form is required.

221. Nouns have two case-forms or **cases** — the general or **common** *form*, for all uses but one; and the special or **possessive** form, used to show ownership or possession.

222. The **possessive** form of nouns is made by adding to the common form an apostrophe and s ['s], or an apostrophe alone ['], according to the following

RULE. — *To plural nouns ending in* s *add an apostrophe; to all other nouns add an apostrophe and* s. Thus:

Day's, days'; man's, men's; lady's, ladies'; Mr. Hay's book; Mr. Hayes's house; ostrich's, ostriches'.

NOTE 1. — In words ending with a sound that resembles that of s, the apostrophe with s forms an additional syllable. Thus:

James's; Miss **Finch's** [pron. *James-ĕz, Finch-ĕz*].

NOTE 2. — The only exception to the rule occurs in such expressions as **conscience' sake, goodness' sake, righteousness' sake, Jesus' sake** where the apostrophe alone is added because another s would make too many hissing sounds.

NOTE 3. — In forming the possessive of compound nouns or of noun phrases, the possessive sign is always placed at the end. [§ 206.] Thus:

son-in-law's; sons-in-law's; **his brother John's** death;
Martin Luther's hymn; **William the Conqueror's** reign.

Exercise 122. — Write the **four forms** of each of the following nouns. Thus:

	SING.	PLUR.
Common Form.	child,	children.
Possessive Form.	child's;	children's.

Girl; woman; wife; monkey; mouse; Miss Long; lady; chief; dwarf; ox; swine; Mr. Adams; man; hero; thief; brother; deer; colony; baby; piano; fox; son-in-law; German; attorney-general.

223. The meaning of the possessive case may often be expressed by the use of the preposition **of** and its object. Thus:

My uncle's death, or The death **of my uncle**.

Exercise 123. — 1. Write these expressions, using the **possessive case** instead of the prepositional phrase:

The residence of my sister.	The singing of Miss Vokes.
The wife of my brother.	The stories of Howells.
The manners of a gentleman.	The lectures of Curtis.
A photograph of the baby.	The novel of Dickens.
The sting of a mosquito.	The mother of James.
The store of Mr. Brown.	The letters of Agnes.
The decision of the court-martial.	The army of Xerxes.
The top of the chimney.	The home of Adam.
The retreat of the enemy.	The home of Mr. Adams.

2. Write the expressions in the first column, making every noun *plural*, and then write the equivalent **possessive phrase.**

224. A possessive does not always show ownership. It may denote —

1. *Origin;* as in — I own **Scott's** novels, She **uses Butterick's** patterns. Or —

2. *Kind;* as in — He sells **women's** shoes and **men's** hats, and She has a **man's** voice.

C. THE USES OF NOUNS

Exercise 124. — **Analyze** these sentences, and tell the way in which the noun "diamond" is used in each:

1. *Diamonds* are found in Africa and India. 2. Brazil exports *diamonds*. 3. The most precious jewel is the *diamond*. 4. Shall we call the jewel a *diamond?* 5. The countess wore a necklace of *diamonds*. 6. This priceless gem, the Kohinoor *diamond*, originally weighed eight hundred carats. 7. The *diamond's* luster is unsurpassed.

225. There are *twelve* different uses which nouns may have in the expression of thought. Seven of these uses we already know about.

A Noun may be used in a sentence as —

1. The **Subject of a verb**:

   The **wind** *sways* the tops of the trees.
   Can **woodpeckers** *make* such large holes?

2. The **Subjective Complement of a copulative verb** (or of a passive verb-phrase) [§ 426]:

   These trees *are* ancient **landmarks.**
   The Emperor of Russia *is styled* the **Czar.**

3. The **Object of a transitive verb** (or verbal word) [§ 369]:

   We *bend* the **branches** *to reach* the **fruit.**

4. The **Object of a Preposition:**

   The shadow *of* the **tree** reaches *beyond* the **wall.**

5. The **Objective Complement of a transitive verb;**

   They *made* Theodore Roosevelt **President.**

6. An **Appositive** to explain another noun or pronoun:

   Homer, the famous Greek **poet,** was blind.
   She mourned *him*, her only **son.**

7. A **Possessive:**

   The **Indian's** wigwam gave place to the **settler's** cabin.

This is the only use that requires a special *form* of the noun.

NOTE. — Instead of speaking of the *uses* of nouns or other words in sentences, we sometimes speak of their *construction* or *syntax*. These expressions are identical in meaning, and have to do with the relations of words to one another, or the way they are put together or arranged in sentences.

Rules for the Use of Possessives

226. Sometimes the names of several persons are treated like a single noun in forming the possessive.

Thus, if **Parker and Ward** is the name of a business firm, we treat it like a compound noun, putting the possessive sign at the end when we speak of **Parker and Ward's business** or **mills.** To say **Parker's and Ward's business** or **mills** would show that the men were in business separately, or owned different mills.

Exercise 125. — In the following expressions do we mean **joint** owners of the *same* thing, or **separate** owners of *different* things?

1. Hall and Whipple's hotel.
2. Elizabeth and Mary's reign.
3. William and Mary's reign.
4. Rice and Besant's novels.
5. Bulwer's and Thackeray's novels.
6. Do you prefer Tennyson's or Whittier's poetry?
7. Who were Cain and Abel's parents?

227. RULE I. — (*a*) *To show separate possession of different things by several persons, use the possessive sign after the name of each. But* —

(*b*) *To show joint possession, use the sign after the last name only.*

Exercise 126. — 1. Change these expressions so as to show **joint possession:**

1. Gilbert's and Sullivan's operas. 2. Woodward's and Brown's pianos. 3. Warner's and Twain's "Gilded Age." 4. Grant's and Sherman's friendship. 5. Spain's and Portugal's alliance. 6. Beaumont's and Fletcher's dramas. 7. Hay's and Nicolay's "Life of Lincoln."

2. Change these so as to show **separate possession:**

1. Webster and Worcester's Unabridged Dictionary. 2. Steinway and Chickering's pianos. 3. Green and Macaulay's "History of England." 4. Webster and Worcester's dictionaries. 5. Do you prefer Tennyson or Browning's poetry? 6. Bancroft, Prescott, and Motley's History. 7. Lowell and Holmes's poems.

3. Give two different phrases each implying that Noyes and Weeks own the *same* mine. How would you show that they own *different* mines?

228. To express the idea of possession it is often better to use a *prepositional phrase* than to use the possessive sign. In this way we may avoid awkward forms or the unpleasant repetition of hissing sounds. Thus:

"In the reign of Napoleon the Third" is better than
"In Napoleon the Third's reign"; and
"The houses of my father's partner" sounds better than
"My father's partner's houses." So, instead of
"Socrates's sayings" we say —
"The sayings of Socrates." Hence —

229. Rule II. — *Avoid harsh or awkward expressions by using a prepositional phrase instead of a possessive.*

Exercise 127. — Improve the following sentences according to Rule II:

1. What is the first governor of Rhode Island's name? 2. Did you hear the senator from New York's speech? 3. The conductor of the freight train's excuse was insufficient. 4. Remember my wife's sister's invitation. 5. What is your college chum's father's business? 6. *Harper's Magazine's* circulation is immense. 7. Where are the architect of the post-office's designs? 8. This is Dr. Smith's the eminent surgeon's opinion.

Exercise 128. — Point out the errors in the use of the possessive, and give the rule violated.

1. Lady's maids. Childrens' playthings. Everybodies' business. 2. Where is Smith's and Jones's store? 3. This is the administrator of the estate's office. 4. The January "St. Nicholas's" illustrations are admirable. 5. Scott and Abbott's estimate of Napoleon differ greatly. 6. Do you prefer Smith or Kitto's Bible Dictionary? 7. What do you think of the captain of the *Dauntless's* skill? 8. Which is larger, the *Independence* or the *Shamrock's* jib?

230. A possessive noun does the work of a phrase or of an *adjective*, and, like an adjective, may be used without the noun it modifies, as in "This poem is **Longfellow's.**" [See § 288.]

8. Nouns as Indirect Object

231. A noun may be used as the *Indirect Object* of a verb. Thus:

We have *sent* the **superintendent** an invitation.

Exercise 129. — 1. Mention the **object** of each verb, and tell *to whom* or *for whom* something was done.

1. They gave a whip to the driver. 2. He paid a hundred dollars to physicians. 3. I bought a horse for my brother. 4. Who painted the picture for your friend? 5. I asked questions of the teacher. 6. We made a call on the Czar. 7. They gave the driver a whip. 8. She built the king a castle. 9. We offered the lady a glass of water. 10. Did you lend Henry this book? 11. I have written my mother a long letter.

2. Read the last four sentences with the **object next to the verb.**

3. Change the first six so as to have the **object at the end.**

232. Verbs like those in the preceding exercise often have two objects —

(1) One showing *what* is given, bought, etc., called the **Direct** Object, because it shows what the action directly affects; and —

(2) The other showing *to whom* or *for whom* something is given, bought, etc. This is called the **Indirect** Object, because it is less closely connected with the verb.

233. When the direct object comes first, the indirect object is expressed in a prepositional phrase, introduced generally by **to** or **for**; sometimes by **of** or **on**, as in sentences 1–6, Exercise 129.

234. The Indirect Object of a verb is the noun or pronoun that shows to or for what person or thing the action is performed.

Exercise 130. — 1. Read the following sentences, **omitting** the indirect object.

2. Mention the **direct** and the **indirect** objects.

1. He sent my sister some fine mosaics from Florence. 2. The king granted the offender a full pardon. 3. He showed his audience some rare views. 4. This land yields its owner large crops. 5. This merchant allows his customers large discounts. 6. Throw the man a rope! 7. The government granted the Pacific railroad large tracts of land. 8. He forgave the man that debt. 9. Can you teach an old dog new tricks? 10. The judge showed the culprit no mercy. 11. Do you tell me the truth? 12. Can you bring us proofs? 13. We paid the men four dollars.

3. Read the sentences, substituting a **prepositional phrase** for the indirect object.

4. Analyze the preceding sentences, treating the indirect object as a *modifier of the verb.* Thus :

(The) king granted [the offender] ⟨a⟩ ⟨full⟩ pardon.

235. When a transitive verb with an indirect object is changed into a passive verb-phrase, either the direct or the indirect object may be made the subject. Thus:

They gave [*me*] a cordial **invitation**, may be changed to

A cordial **invitation** was given [*me*], — *i.e.*, [to me], or

I was given ⟨a⟩ ⟨cordial⟩ invitation.

In the latter case the direct object is retained as the object of the passive verb. It is often called the *retained* object. [See Passive Verb Phrases.]

Exercise 131. — Use the following verbs in sentences containing **direct** and **indirect** objects:

pay; find; sell; give; toss; make; return; deliver; write; lend.

9. Nouns Used Adverbially

Exercise 132. — 1. What kind of **phrases** may be used like adverbs?

2. What words or phrases modify the following verbs as **adverbs** would? Tell whether they show *how much, how often, when*, and so on.

1. Have you been standing long?
2. We have been waiting for hours.
3. You might have slept a few minutes.
4. His burden weighs heavily.
5. The load weighs several tons.
6. He came very recently.
7. They went away in the night.
8. We met them last year.
9. She arrived last Sunday.
10. We buy a newspaper every day.
11. Did you fall far? No; I fell a few feet, then slid several rods, and rolled the rest of the way.
12. The steamer sailed due east three hundred miles the first day.

236. We see from the preceding sentences that not only adverbial and prepositional phrases, but also *nouns* and *noun phrases*, may be used like *adverbs*. They may modify —

Verbs:
- We *shall remain* a **week**.
- He *has traveled* a thousand **miles**.
- He *was beaten* several **times**.

Adjectives:
- This is a **pound** *heavier*.
- It is *worth* ninety **cents**.
- My ladder is ten **feet** *long*.

Adverbs:
- You might write a great **deal** *better*.
- We shall walk a **mile** *farther*.
- A **minute** *later* all was lost.
- Where shall we be a hundred **years** *hence?*

237. Nouns used adverbially may denote time, place, or manner — showing when, where, or how; but they generally denote *measure*, showing *how much, how far*, etc.

Exercise 133. — 1. Select the nouns used **adverbially**; tell what they modify, and whether they denote **measure, time, place**, or **manner.**

1. The sun sets fifty minutes later. 2. The moon rises an hour earlier. 3. They perished ages ago. 4. What is that coming this way? 5. A few years ago men were a month traveling a thousand miles. 6. Cowards die many times before their deaths. 7. A piece two inches wide and four feet long weighs three pounds and is worth one dollar.

8. He has crossed the ocean twenty times a year. 9. I walked the floor all night long. 10. Emperor William was forty-two years old last Tuesday.

2. **Analyze** the preceding sentences orally or in writing.

10. Nouns Used Independently

238. A Noun may be used *Independently* in a sentence —

1. *In calling to or addressing* some person or thing; as —

> Bring us some lilies, **Mary.**
> **Gentlemen,** have you agreed upon a verdict?

We say of such nouns that they are used "independently *in address*." They are, therefore, sometimes called **vocatives.**

2. *In calling attention* to something not addressed; as —

> The **wind,** the **wind**! hear how it roars!
> Alas! poor **creature**! how she must have suffered!

We say of such nouns that they are used "independently *in exclamation*."

(*a*) A noun used in either of these ways stands by itself as a separate part of the sentence, *and should be set off from the rest of it by commas or an exclamation point.*

Exercise 134. — Select the **nouns** that are **used independently,** and tell whether they are used *in address* or *in exclamation.*

1. Drink, pretty creature, drink. 2. Give me of your balm, O fir tree! 3. What a fall was there, my countrymen. 4. Soldiers, here you must either conquer or die. 5. Our country! it is not the East with its broad-armed ports. 6. Roll on, thou deep and dark blue ocean, roll! 7. Mr. President, my object is peace. 8. The Pilgrim fathers! where are they? 9. The flag of the free! O long may it wave! 10. Permit me, sir, to add another circumstance. 11. "Youth!" he said, "I forgive thee."

11. Nouns Used with Participles

239. A Noun may be used *with a participle* that modifies it [§ 491] to make an adverbial phrase showing the *time* or *cause* of what is predicated. Thus:

Our **commander** *being slain*, we retreated. (Showing what *caused* the retreat.)

My **suspicions** *having been aroused*, I began to watch him. (Showing *why* or *when* I watched him.)

240. A noun used in this way is sometimes said to be used "absolutely." The entire phrase is used as a substitute for an adverbial clause [§ 498], and really modifies the verb of the accompanying assertion. The examples given above mean —

We retreated *because our commander was slain.*
I began to watch him *since my suspicions were aroused.*

Exercise 135. — Tell **how each verb is modified**, and explain the **use** of the italicized nouns.

1. His *supplies* having been exhausted, the general capitulated. 2. We returned home, our *work* being finished. 3. The *jury* having been sworn, the trial proceeded. 4. The *river* being impassable, no attempt was made to cross it. 5. His *trials* (being) ended, he rests in peace.

12. Nouns as Subject of the Infinitive

241. A noun may be used as the subject of an infinitive. Thus:

We know the **earth** to be round.
I believe **him** to be a dishonest man.

The noun here stands in the relation of object to the leading verb as well as that of subject of the infinitive. A personal pronoun thus used requires the objective case-form. Thus:

Make **him** hear.

[See Infinitives § 474].

PARSING

242. We analyze a sentence by separating it into its *parts*, — words, phrases, or clauses — and showing how each one is connected with some other; if we then analyze each phrase and clause, we show how *every word* is used.

But we need to be perfectly familiar with the *forms* and *classes* of words as well as with their use. To do this we must examine each word by itself, and tell what is *grammatically important* about it. This is called **parsing** the word.

243. To parse a word is to tell what is of grammatical importance about it.

244. We should *analyze* a sentence before we parse the words in it, for the forms and classification of words depend upon their *use*, and this we discover through our analysis.

245. We should parse the words of a sentence in the following order:

I. **The Essentials** (subject, verb, complement).
II. **The Modifiers.**
III. **The Secondary Modifiers,** etc.
IV. **The Connective Words.**

246. In parsing a word we should tell —

1. The *part of speech* to which it belongs.
2. In what subdivision of that part of speech it is found; that is, *what kind* of noun, verb, adjective, etc., it is.
3. Its grammatical *form* — number, case, tense, etc.
4. Its *use* or *construction*, or what it has to do with some other word.

247. *How to Parse a Noun.* The following form may be used in parsing nouns:

Alexander II. gave [the Russian serfs] ⟨their⟩ freedom [not many years ago].

Alexander II. is a *noun*, because it is a name; *proper*, because it is a special name meant for one person only; *singular*, because it denotes but one; *used* as the subject of the verb **gave**, for it represents the person about whom the assertion is made.

freedom is a noun; *abstract*, for it names [a quality or] a condition; *singular;* used as the *object* of the verb **gave**, for it shows *what* was given.

serfs is a *common* noun, because it is a name for any or all of a certain kind; *plural*, because it denotes more than one; used as the *indirect object* of **gave**, for it shows *to whom* freedom was given.

years is a *common* noun; *plural;* used *adverbially* to modify **ago**; it shows *how long* ago the event happened.

248. The following *briefer form* is generally better:

Alexander II. is a singular proper noun; subject of the verb **gave.**
freedom is a singular common noun; object of the verb **gave.**
serfs is a plural common noun; indirect object of the verb **gave.**
years is a plural common noun; used adverbially to modify **ago.**

Exercise 136. — Analyze the following sentences, and **parse** the nouns:

1. The maize-field grew and ripened, and it stood in all the splendor of its garments green and yellow. 2. We may cover a multitude of sins with the white robe of charity. 3. I was born an American; I live an American; I shall die an American. 4. How cunningly Nature hides every wrinkle of her inconceivable antiquity under roses and violets and morning dew. 5. Frequent the company of your betters. 6. Congenial autumn comes, the Sabbath of the year. 7. It is the tint of autumn, a mighty flower-garland, blossoming under the spell of the enchanter Frost. 8. One morn a peri at the gate of Eden stood disconsolate. 9. The

oratorio of Elijah was first performed in 1836 at Dusseldorf. 10. Habit is a cable; every day we weave a thread. 11. The longest syllable in English is the word strength. 12. The examiner asked the candidate few questions. 13. The army being disbanded, Washington proceeded to Annapolis. 14. Beautiful for situation, the joy of the whole earth, is Mount Zion, the city of the great King.

15. Her voice was ever soft,
Gentle and low, an excellent thing in woman.

16. And so make life, death, and that vast forever
One grand sweet song.

17. Farewell, thou ever changing moon,
Pale empress of the night.

18. Peace! Independence! Truth! Go forth
Earth's compass round;
And your high priesthood shall make earth
All hallowed ground.

19. Five times outlawed had he been
By England's king and Scotland's queen.

20. In a valley centuries ago,
Grew a little fern-leaf, green and tender.

21. Now came still evening on, and twilight gray
Had in her sober livery all things clad.

22. Hail Egypt! land of ancient pomp and pride,
Where Beauty walks by hoary Ruin's side;
Where plenty reigns, and still the seasons smile,
And rolls — rich gift of God! — exhaustless Nile.

23. O Painter of the fruits and flowers!
We thank thee for thy wise design
Whereby these human hands of ours
In Nature's garden work with Thine.

24. I hold it truth, with him who sings
To one clear harp in divers tones,
That men may rise on stepping stones
Of their dead selves to higher things.

NOUNS: SUMMARY

249. About *Nouns* we have learned to distinguish the following:

1. Kinds: { Common, Proper, Collective, Abstract } Concrete.

2. Forms:

- Number: { Singular. Plural.
- Gender: { Masculine. Feminine. Neuter.
- Case: { Common. Possessive.

3. Uses or Constructions.

1. **Subject** of the verb ——.
2. **Subjective complement** of the verb ——.
3. **Object** of the *verb* ——.
4. **Object** of the *preposition* ——.
5. An **Appositive** explaining the noun (or pronoun) ——.
6. **Possessive form** modifying the noun ——.
7. **Indirect object** of the verb ——.
8. Used **adverbially** to modify the { verb ——. adjective ——. adverb ——. }
9. Used **independently** in address (or exclamation).
10. Used **with the participle** —— to make an adverbial modifier of the verb ——.
11. **Objective complement** of the verb ——, referring to the object ——.
12. **Subject** of the infinitive ——.

250. CONCORD HYMN

Sung at the Completion of the Battle Monument, April 19, 1836.

By the rude bridge that arched the flood,
Their flag to April's breeze unfurled,
Here once the embattled farmers stood,
And fired the shot heard round the world.

The foe long since in silence slept;
Alike the conqueror silent sleeps;
And Time the ruined bridge has swept
Down the dark stream which seaward creeps.

On this green bank, by this soft stream,
We set to-day a votive stone;
That memory may their deed redeem,
When, like our sires, our sons are gone.

Spirit, that made those heroes dare
To die, and leave their children free,
Bid Time and Nature gently spare
The shaft we raise to them and Thee.

— *R. W. Emerson.*

Exercise 137. — 1. Point out the nouns in the selection and classify them. 2. Account for the use of capitals. 3. What examples of personification do you find? 4. Six of the twelve uses of the noun are here illustrated. Which are they? 5. Parse the nouns.

CHAPTER VII

PRONOUNS

251. Although the pronouns are few in number, they are divided into several classes, and the most of them have much to do besides merely taking the place of nouns.

A. KINDS

1. Personal Pronouns

Exercise 138. — 1. Which of the following pronouns refer to **the person speaking?**

2. Which refer to **the person spoken to?**

3. Which to **the person or thing spoken of?**

1. Did *you* bring *me* a letter?
2. *Your* father sent *it* to *my* care.
3. *I* asked *him* for *his* address.
4. *He* wanted *yours* and *mine*.
5. Does *your* sister know *them?*
6. *We* must inform *our* friends.
7. *They* will forget *us*.
8. *She* knows *their* plans.
9. Tell *her* what *ours* are.
10. *Hers* depend on *theirs*.
11. Know *ye its* meaning?
12. *He* telleth *thee* that *thou* mayst keep for *thy* share only what is *thine* own.

4. If only one person is speaking, to whom must the pronoun *we, our, ours,* and *us* refer?

5. Do any of the preceding pronouns show *what kind* of person is meant — as a noun would?

252. Pronouns that of themselves show whether we mean the person speaking, the person spoken to, or some person or thing spoken of, are called **Personal** pronouns.

253. (1) Pronouns of the **first person** always represent *the speaker,* either alone or with others.

They are I and its variations — *my, mine, me: we, our, ours, us.*

(2) Pronouns of the **second person** always stand for *the person or persons spoken to.*

They are **thou** and its variations — *thy, thine, thee; ye, you, your, yours.*

(3) Pronouns of the **third person** generally refer to *what has been spoken of.*

They are **he, she, it,** and their variations, — *his, him; her, hers; its, they, their, theirs, them.* Any pronoun not referring to the speaker or to the person addressed is of the third person in *meaning.*

254. A Personal pronoun is one that denotes the speaker, the person spoken to, or the person or thing spoken of.

255. *Myself, thyself, yourself, himself, herself, itself,* and their plurals, are called **Compound personal** pronouns. They have two uses. In the sentence — He caught all the fish *himself* — *himself* emphasizes or intensifies the meaning of the pronoun *he.* This is said to be the **emphatic** use.

In the sentence — He has injured *himself* — *himself* is the direct object of the transitive verb, *injured,* and refers back as it were to the subject, *he.* This is said to be the **reflexive** use.

2. Interrogative Pronouns

Exercise 139. — 1. Of what kind are the following sentences? 2. For what does **who** stand? **which? what?** 3. To what part of speech do these words belong? 4. For what purpose are they used? 5. What kind of sentence is made by putting the answers in place of the pronouns?

1. **Who** discovered the Mississippi? — De Soto. By **whom** was the St. Lawrence discovered? — Cartier. **Whose** discovery was made first? — Cartier's.

2. **Which** is the longer of the two rivers? — The Mississippi.

3. **What** is the meaning of "Mississippi"? — "Father of Waters."

256. An Interrogative pronoun is one used to ask a question.

The three interrogative pronouns are **who, which,** and **what.** The last two are sometimes used as adjectives. [§ 321].

257. The word for which an interrogative pronoun stands is unknown until it appears in the answer to the question.

3. — I. Conjunctive Pronouns in Adjective Clauses

Review p. 62.

Exercise 140. — 1. What is a clause? 2. A dependent clause? 3. An adjective clause? 4. In the sentence, "Trustworthy boys are boys that may be trusted," what two expressions are alike in meaning? 5. What is the use of each? 6. What is the antecedent of *that?*

258. We have learned that a noun may be modified not only by an *adjective word*, but also by an *adjective clause* or group of words that contains a subject and a predicate.

Thus in the sentence —

Regions **that have no vegetation** are called deserts,

the expression **that have no vegetation** is used like an *adjective* to show which regions are meant — as if we had said "regions *without vegetation*" or "*barren* regions."

259. In the sentence "Read books *which make you better*," it is evident that the word *which* has a double use. As a pronoun representing the noun *book* it is the subject of the verb *make*, and at the same time it connects the dependent clause in which it stands to the word *book* in the principal clause. Pronouns that connect clauses as well as take the place of nouns are called *conjunctive* pronouns.

260. A Conjunctive pronoun is one that introduces a dependent clause and generally connects it to the rest of the sentence.

261. We shall find in our study of noun clauses that the antecedent of a conjunctive pronoun is often omitted or understood. When it is expressed the pronoun is called a **relative** pronoun.

262. A relative pronoun is a conjunctive pronoun whose antecedent is expressed.

Exercise 141. — 1. Select the **adjective clauses**, and tell what each one modifies or describes.

2. Point out the **relative pronoun** and its antecedent in each clause.

1. I have read the book **which** *you lent me.* 2. The story **that** *it tells* is interesting. 3. The author, **who** *is a woman,* lives in Texas. 4. Help those **that** *are weak.* 5. Invite the gentleman *of* **whom** *you spoke.* 6. He gave all **that** *he had.* 7. Those **that** *are rich* should help those **that** *are poor.* 8. A man **who** *cannot govern himself* is a slave. 9. Our journey, **which** *was very tiresome,* ended at last. 10. The friends **whom** *we visited* have come. 11. Remember those **whose** *hearts are sad.* 12. Read such books **as** *will be helpful.*

263. The four relative pronouns are *who, which, that,* and *as.*

Who (*whose, whom*) represents *persons* only; *which* represents *things;* and *that* and *as* represent either *persons or things.*

264. The **antecedent** of a relative pronoun is generally a noun or another pronoun. It may, however, be a clause. As — I said nothing, which made him angry. Here the antecedent of *which* is "I said nothing."

(*a*) Since **which** and **that** have no possessive form, **whose** is frequently used to represent something besides persons. It is generally better, however, to use *of which* instead.

(*b*) When **as** is a relative pronoun, it follows *as many, such,* or *same,* as in — "I give thee such as I have"; "As many as wish may go"; "Mine is the same as yours (is)."

(*c*) The relative when used as the object of a verb is often omitted in the adjective clause. It may easily be supplied. As — This is the man I saw yesterday. The watch he repaired loses time.

Exercise 142. — 1. Which of the relative pronouns would you use to represent each of the following words?

Book; city; cousin; horse; flowers; soldiers; rivers; kings; tea; winter; Bismarck; tribes; armies; conquerors.

2. Write sentences containing the preceding words **modified by adjective clauses.**

3. — II. Conjunctive Pronouns in Noun Clauses

Exercise 143. —

{ *Poor people* may need help.
{ **The poor** may need help.

{ I saw *the things which he gave.*
{ I saw **what he gave.**

{ Cloth is *the stuff that he sells.*
{ Cloth is **what he sells.**

{ *That which you tell* is true.
{ **What you tell** is true.

1. Read the expressions that are alike in meaning, but different in form. 2. Compare the subjects in the first pair of sentences, and show how the second subject is made from the first. 3. Find the adjective clauses, and tell what each modifies. 4. Do the antecedents *stuff, things, that,* add much to the meaning? Give your reason. 5. Read the sentences in which there are no antecedents. 6. Why is not an antecedent expressed? 7. What pronoun is used in the clause when the antecedent is omitted?

265. We know that an *adjective* may be used without its noun when the meaning is perfectly clear; as in, The **ignorant** should be taught.

From the preceding exercise we learn that an *adjective clause* may also be used without the modified word, when the meaning of that word would be indefinite. Used alone in this way it becomes a *Noun clause.* Thus in —

I saw { *that* or / *the thing* } which he brought,

the word *that* or *thing* has of itself so little meaning that we may as well omit it; for it will convey the whole idea to say —

I saw **what he brought.**

So, too, the sentence "Employ **whoever applies,**" is equivalent to "Employ **anyone who applies.**

266. In noun clauses we generally use *what, whoever, whichever*, etc., for the connecting or *conjunctive* pronouns. But we do not call them "relative," for they only *imply* another pronoun or a noun which is really the omitted antecedent. They are generally called *indefinite* conjunctive pronouns.

267. An **indefinite conjunctive pronoun** is one whose antecedent is not expressed.

268. Noun clauses may be subjects, objects, or subjective complements, etc., like the antecedents which they replace.

Exercise 144. — 1. In these sentences **explain the use** of the italicized words and clauses:

1. I saw his *gifts*. I saw *what he gave*. 2. Milk was her only *sustenance*. Milk was *what sustained her*. 3. I hear your *remarks*. I hear *what you say*. 4. You tell the *truth*. You tell *what is true*. 5. Your *work* is excellent. *What you do* is excellent. 6. *Idlers* will fail. *Whoever is idle* will fail. 7. He will sell all his *possessions*. He will sell *whatever he owns*. 8. Take your *choice*. Take *whichever you choose*. 9. He will fulfill his *promise*. He will do *whatever he promises*. 10. Think about your *lessons*. Think about *what you study*. 11. *Whoever confesses* will be forgiven. 12. *Whatsoever you ask* shall be done. 13. *Whosoever will* may come. 14. *Who steals my purse* steals trash.

2. Read each sentence with the **noun clause changed** to a noun or a pronoun modified by an adjective clause.

269. A noun clause is a clause having the use of a noun.

270. (*a*) The indefinite conjunctive pronouns *what, whatever, whatsoever, who, whoever, whosoever, whichever*, and *whichsoever* are used in noun clauses.

(*b*) The interrogative pronouns are also used in noun clauses as connectives when a question is repeated indirectly as part of the reply to it. Thus: "Who wrote the book?" — I do not know "**who** *wrote the book*." "**Who** *did it*," is a secret. Ask again "**which** *he took*." I will not tell "**what** *it is*."

Exercise 145. — 1. **Classify the clauses** in these sentences, and tell how each is used:

1. He remembers *what he learns.*
2. Have you ascertained *who wrote the letter?*
3. Man can do *what man has done.*
4. The fur *which warms a monarch* warmed a bear.
5. Reputation is *what we seem,* but character is *what we are.*
6. Beauty is the mark that God sets on virtue.
7. We shall never know who wrote the book.
8. Whoever trusts him makes a mistake.
9. Whatever he does shall prosper.
10. The man who feels truly noble will become so.
11. Who can tell what the proverb means?
12. We find in life exactly what we put into it.
13. Here lies one whose name was writ in water.

2. Point out the **conjunctive pronouns,** and tell which are relative and which indefinite. Which two are interrogative?

4. Adjective Pronouns

1. *All* men are mortal.
2. *Both* stories are false.
3. *Each* hour is precious.
4. *Many* books are worthless.
5. *Much* time is wasted.
6. *One* man's meat is another man's poison.
7. *That* clock is too slow.

1. *All* have faded.
2. *Both* were wrecked.
3. *Each* shall be rewarded.
4. *Many* were orphans.
5. *Much* remains to be used.
6. *One* was taken, and *another* was left.
7. *That* was more expensive.

Exercise 146. — 1. Compare the italicized words in the two columns; tell which are adjectives, and give your reason. 2. Do they describe, or only limit? 3. What does each one limit? 4. What noun may each of the italicized words in the second column have been used to represent?

271. In the last exercise we see words that are sometimes used as *adjectives* to limit the application of a noun, and some-

times as *pronouns* to replace that noun. Thus, in the sentence —

One can do only **one** thing at a time,

the second *one* is a limiting *adjective* modifying "thing"; but the first *one* having no noun expressed, is an adjective used as a pronoun; that is, it is an *adjective pronoun.*

Exercise 147. — Select the **adjective pronouns**, and tell for what each one is used.

1. Few shall part where many meet. 2. All that breathe will share thy destiny. 3. None are so deaf as those who will not hear. 4. This was the bravest warrior that ever buckled sword. 5. She had no fortune, and I had none; but that of my father was ample. 6. Some are happy, whereas others are miserable. 7. One ought to rely on one's self. 8. Such as I have, give I unto thee. 9. Both went to the war, but neither returned. 10. Both of these are good, and I will take either. 11. An hour or so had passed.

272. The principal words used as adjective pronouns are:

All, another, any, both, each, either, few, former, latter, many, more, most, much, neither, none, one, other, own, same, several, some, such, this, that, these, those.

273. *Each, either,* and *neither* are called **distributives,** because they refer to a number of objects taken separately.

This, that, these, and *those* are called **demonstratives** when they point out objects definitely. *He, she, they,* etc., have a similar use in such sentences as — "He that would thrive must rise at five."

Which and *what* are **interrogatives.** As in — *Which* road did he take? *What* book have you? They may also be **conjunctive.** As in — Do you know *which* road he took or *what* friends he left?

Each other, one another, are **reciprocal** pronouns.

274. An adjective pronoun is a limiting adjective used without its noun.

Exercise 148. — Tell the **class** to which each pronoun belongs, and give your reason. Thus:

"I" is a *personal* pronoun, for it always represents the speaker. "What" is a *conjunctive* pronoun, for it connects a clause to the rest of the sentence.

1. It is I. 2. We are frail. 3. You and he are strong. 4. Few are stronger. 5. Who knocks? 6. To whom shall they go? 7. Is this the house which he built? 8. Which are they? 9. Did you call us? 10 That on the hill is his. 11. Which is yours? 12. Thou art she whom he calls. 13. Bring what he wants. 14. What is his name? 15. I cannot tell what his name is. 16. I that speak unto you am he. 17 Many are called, but few are chosen. 18. I have none to go with me. 19. We respect those that respect themselves. 20. We often deceive ourselves while trying to deceive others. 21. God helps those that help themselves.

B. INFLECTION: CHANGES OF FORM

1. Number

275. Fourteen pronouns have, like nouns, *two number-forms*. They are:

(1) The five personal pronouns:

Sing.	*I;*	*thou;*	*he, she, it.*	
Plural	*we;*	*ye, you;*	*they*	

(2) The five compound personal pronouns:

Sing. *myself; thyself, yourself; himself, herself, itself.*

Plural *ourselves; yourselves; themselves.*

(3) Four adjective pronouns:

Sing.	*this;*	*that;*	*one;*	*other.*
Plural	*these;*	*those;*	*ones;*	*others.*

276. All other pronouns have but *one form*, which is used either with a singular or with a plural meaning.

Another, each, either, neither, are **always singular** in meaning; and *both, few, many, several,* are **always plural** in meaning.

Exercise 149. — 1. Tell whether these pronouns have a **singular** or a **plural** meaning:

This; we; you; few; she; them; who; myself; both; us; they; each; these; such; which; he; that; many; ourselves; either; whoever; themselves; several; all; those; who; it; any; some; another; neither.

2. Give the **other number form** of such of these words as have two forms.

2. Case

Exercise 150. — 1. **I** left **my** trunk behind **me.**

2. **Thou** art the Creator, and **thy** works praise **thee.**

3. **He** sent **his** army on before **him.**

4. **They** obey **their** parents, and honor **them.**

1. Whom do the pronouns in the first sentence represent? 2. Give the use of each one. 3. How does the form change with the use? 4. In No. 2 mention the pronoun used as subject; as possessive; as object. 5. Do they represent the same person? 6. Why do they differ in form? 7. In Nos. 3 and 4 how are the forms of the pronouns changed? 8. How do you account for these changes?

277. We see from the preceding exercise that besides a possessive form some pronouns have still another special form, which is required whenever they are used as **objects.**

Thus, besides *who*, we have the possessive form *whose*, and the object, or **objective** form *whom*, which is used when the pronoun is the object of a verb or of a preposition; as in —

Whom *did* you *mention? For* **whom** is it?

278. Eight pronouns —

I, thou, he, she, it, who, whoever, whosoever —

have three case-forms or cases in one number or both:

(1) The **possessive,** to show ownership;

(2) The **objective,** required when the pronoun is used as an object; and —

(3) The **subjective** or **nominative** form for all other uses.

"Nominative" means merely *naming.*

279. Cases are the different forms of nouns and pronouns required by their relation to other words in a sentence.

280. The **Nominative** case is the form of a pronoun required for use as a subject or a subjective complement.

The **Possessive** case is the form of a noun or pronoun required to show possession.

The **Objective** case is the form of a pronoun required for use as the object of a verb or a preposition.

281. To give all the singular and plural case-forms of a pronoun is to **decline** it. Thus:

		Nominative	Possessive	Objective
First Person	*Singular.*	I	my [mine]	me
	Plural.	we	our [ours]	us
Second Person	*Singular.*	(thou)	(thy) [thine]	(thee)
	Plural.	(ye) you	your [yours]	you
Third Person	*Sing. Masc.*	he	his	him
	Sing. Fem.	she	her [hers]	her
	Sing. Neut.	it	its	it
	Plural.	they	their [theirs]	them

	Nominative	Possessive	Objective
Singular or *Plural* in meaning.	who	whose	whom
	whoever	whosever	whomever
	whosoever	whosesoever	whomsoever

(*a*) *Thou, thee,* etc., are now used chiefly in solemn address, or in poetry. The plural *you* commonly takes the place of *thou,* and may denote *one* person only.

Exercise 151. — 1. Name the case of these pronouns. Which are plural forms?

Her; him; thine; them; who; ours; its; I; their; ye; whose; thee; whom; us; hers; thy; our; you; me; my; it.

2. Learn the ten **nominative** forms; the nine **objective** forms. Which two forms are either nominative or objective? Which one is either possessive or objective?

282. Three pronouns — *one, other, another* — like nouns, have a special form only for the possessive use. Thus:

Singular:	one, **one's;**	other, **other's;**	another, **another's.**
Plural:	ones, **ones';**	others, **others';**	

283. Most pronouns, however, are not used as possessives, and have but a single form for all their constructions.

Either's and *neither's* are sometimes used; but the phrases *of either, of neither,* would be better.

3. Gender

284. *He, she,* and *it* denote sex. *He* represents a male, and is of the masculine gender; *she* represents a female, and is of the feminine gender; *it* generally represents sexless things, and hence is said to be of the neuter gender.

(*a*) **He** is often used to represent an antecedent that applies to both males and females. As in —

Has any *person* lost **his** gloves?

(*b*) In sentences like "The child cries for **its** mother," "Shoot the crow if you see **it**," we use **it**, because the sex is either unknown or unimportant.

285. Personification. We sometimes speak of things *as if* they were persons, and use masculine or feminine pronouns in referring to them. Such objects are said to be **personified.** Thus: The sun **his** ceaseless course doth run. Nature in **her** robes of green.

C. Uses, or Construction

286. Pronouns have all the *constructions,* or uses in sentences, that nouns have. Three or four of these uses, however, are rare; and relative and interrogative pronouns are mostly used in one of the first four ways. [See p. 104.]

287. An Interrogative pronoun generally precedes the verb, and there is sometimes a doubt whether it is used as subject or as subjective complement. We can always decide, however, by noticing the construction of the word that takes its place in the expected reply. For example: —

Who is it?	It is your **mother.**
Which is mine?	**The small one** is yours.
What was he?	He was a **clergyman.**

Here **who** and **what** must be *subjective complements*, for so are **mother** and **clergyman**, the words they represent. For a similar reason, **which** is a *subject.*

Exercise 152. — Tell the use of each pronoun in these sentences:

1. He liveth long who liveth well. 2. Who is it? — It is I. 3. We have found them. What is it that you have found? 4. In what did you travel? We sent to him by her for this. 5. Whose carelessness caused this? Our defeat was their victory. One's manners show one's breeding. 6. He himself hath said it. They each and all declined to go. 7. He gave one of them permission, and she told us the secret. 8. Each stepping where his comrade stood the instant *that* he fell. [§ 237.] What is it worth? 9. "O Thou who hearest prayer!" "O happy we! thus blessed." 10. This being the case, we shall not go. 11. The will makes the house yours. You may as well call it such. [§ 122.]

288. Most personal pronouns have two possessive forms — one used like an adjective to modify a following noun, as in — "*my* hand," "*your* heart," — and the other used to take the place of a noun, as in — "*mine* is here," "this is *yours*." These second forms are sometimes called **possessive pronouns.**

(*a*) **His** is used in either way; as "*his* land," "*his* was a useful life."

(*b*) **Mine** and **thine** are sometimes used like *my* and *thy* before a word beginning with a vowel sound; as "*mine* own," "*thine* honor."

289. The second of the possessive forms may be used in any construction, and with singular or plural meaning. Thus:

That tongue of **hers** will make trouble.
Thine is the glory. Bring **theirs**, but leave **ours**.
"Wealth is not **his** that has it, but **his** that enjoys **it**."

Do not use the apostrophe in writing *ours, yours, theirs*.

290. **It** is frequently used as the temporary or anticipative subject of a verb, the real subject of which is a word or an expression that comes after it [§ 466]. As in —

It is always best (*to try*). **It** is true (*that health makes wealth*).

291. **It, they,** and **one** are sometimes used indefinitely without an antecedent. As in —

It rains. **It** will freeze tonight. Who is **it**? **It** is I. **It** is the king. **It** is the queen.

They say that honesty is the best policy.
One should take **care** of **one's** health.

Analysis of Complex Sentences

292. Sentences containing conjunctive pronouns are always complex.

293. **A Complex Compound sentence is a compound sentence that contains one or more dependent clauses.**

294. In analyzing complex sentences the directions given on pages 72, 73, may generally be followed.

In marking the analysis *adjective clauses* (and adverb clauses) may be inclosed like other modifiers, and the use of *noun clauses* may be shown by underlining them entire. The essentials of a clause may be marked by lines drawn *over* subject, verb, and complement. The word that introduces the clause may be marked with a + *over* it.

Examples. — I. (The) past is ⟨a⟩ ⟨shadowy⟩ page ⟨which keeps [forever] ⟨the⟩ record ⟨of our lives⟩.

1. This is a **complex assertive** sentence.
2. Formed of the **principal clause** and an **adjective clause.**
3. The **essentials** of the principal clause are *past is page.*
4. The **subject** *past* is modified by the adjective *the.*
5. The **subjective complement** *page* is modified by the adjectives *a* and *shadowy,* and by the adjective clause *which keeps forever the record of our lives.*
6. The **essentials** of the adjective clause are *which keeps record,* and so on.

II. Nothing is troublesome (that we do [willingly]).

NOTE.— Conjunctive pronouns used as complements always *precede* their verbs, as in the sentence above.

III. Whoever does ⟨a⟩ ⟨good⟩ deed is [instantly] ennobled.

1. This is a **complex assertive** sentence.
2. Formed of a **principal clause** having a **noun clause** for its subject.
3. The **essentials** of the assertion are — and so on as before.

IV. (The) lecturer told [us] what he had seen [during his journey].

Exercise 153. — Analyze the following sentences:

1. Who owned the farm that was sold? 2. Tell me what you have learned. 3. The gentleman who called is a physician. 4. He is a man that I esteem highly. 5. Show me those that you have finished. 6. We shall send him whatever he demands. 7. Do you know for whom the gift is meant? 8. Have you heard what caused the fire? 9. I know what you want. 10. Ask her who he is. 11. We prize that which we obtain by effort. 12. This is the book from which he read the story. 13. My lord, I know not what the matter is. 14. People almost never do anything in anger of which they do not repent. 15. He who was taught only by himself had a fool for a master. 16. Nature is loved by what is best in us. 17. There is no secret of the heart which our actions do not disclose. 18. Reputation is what we seem, but character is what we are. 19. Beauty is the mark that God sets on

virtue. 20. What man has done man can do. 21. Such as I have give I unto thee. 22. The block of granite which was an obstacle in the pathway of the weak, becomes a stepping-stone in the pathway of the strong.

23. That which was sown an earthly seed
Shall rise a heavenly flower.
24. What's hallowed ground? 'Tis what gives birth
To sacred thoughts in souls of worth.
25. It is thinking that makes what we read ours.
26. Who gives himself with his alms feeds three,
Himself, his hungering neighbor, and me.
27. Each, after all, learns only what he can;
Who grasps the moment as it flies,
He is the real man.

295. How to Parse a Pronoun. — A pronoun is parsed by giving its 1. *kind;* 2. *antecedent;* (3. *person;*) (4. *number;*) (5. *case;*) 6. *use;* and (7. *declension*).

The following forms may be used:

(My) mind ⟨to me⟩ ⟨a⟩ kingdom is.

My is a *personal* pronoun; represents the speaker; first *person;* singular *number;* possessive *case; used* to modify the noun **mind.**

Or more briefly —

My is the first singular personal pronoun, and is used to modify **mind.**

Those (that waste ⟨their⟩ youth) lose what they can [never] regain.

Those is an *adjective* pronoun; represents "those persons"; plural *number; used* as subject of the verb **lose.**

That is a *relative* pronoun; *antecedent,* **those**; *used* as the subject of the verb **waste.**

What is a *conjunctive* pronoun; antecedent omitted; *used* as the object of the verb **can regain.**

Exercise 154. — Parse the *pronouns* in Exercises 153 and 148.

SUMMARY: PRONOUNS

296. 1. Kinds.

Personal: *Simple.* / *Compound:* (*a*) emphatic, (*b*) reflexive. / *Possessive.*

Interrogative.

Conjunctive: *Relative.* / *Indefinite.*

Adjective: *Distributive.* / *Demonstrative.* / *Interrogative.* / *Conjunctive.*

Reciprocal.

2. Forms: *Person:* First, Second, Third. / *Number:* Singular, Plural. / *Gender:* Masculine, Feminine, Neuter. / *Case:* Nominative, Possessive, Objective

3. Construction. See "Summary of Nouns," page 104.

DIRECTIONS FOR THE USE OF PRONOUNS

1. Number Forms

Exercise 155. — 1. A tree is known by —— fruit.
2. Deciduous trees shed —— leaves annually.
3. Neither of the ships lowered —— colors.
4. Let each person do —— best.
5. Even a child is known by —— doings.
6. Both the regiments laid down —— arms.
7. Each pupil must provide —— own books.
8. No faithful girl will forget —— duties.

1. What is meant by the antecedent of a pronoun? 2. In the first two sentences, would you fill the blanks with "their" or "its"? 3. Give your reason, and explain the number of both pronoun and antecedent. 4. In the third sentence, does the subject "neither" mean one

or more than one? 5. Will "their" correctly represent it? Give your reason. 6. In the next two sentences, why may we not use "their" to represent *person* and *child?* 7. Fill the blanks in the remaining sentences with "their," "her," "its," or "his," as you may think best. 8. When is the singular form of a pronoun to be used? 9. The plural? 10. The feminine.

297. We must be careful always to use a singular pronoun to represent a singular antecedent, and a plural pronoun to represent a plural antecedent.

It is incorrect to say —

Every man of you must polish *their* own armor,

for the plural pronoun "*their*" does not correctly represent the singular antecedent "man." We should say —

Every man of you must polish *his* own armor.

298. Agreement. — *A pronoun must agree with its antecedent in number, gender, and person.*

Exercise 156. — Fill the blanks with suitable pronouns, giving the reason for your choice. Thus:

"Neither had discovered *his* mistake." The singular antecedent "neither" must be represented by the singular pronoun *his*. A pronoun must agree in number with its antecedent.

1. Neither had discovered —— mistake. 2. Each contributed what —— could. 3. Every one stoutly maintained —— innocence. 4. The beaver shows great skill in constructing —— dwellings. 5. Everybody must look out for ——. 6. A person should control —— wrath. 7. When one is ill, —— will call a physician. 8. If you find "Little Women" send —— to me. 9. This is such bad news that I cannot believe ——. 10. England expects every man to do —— duty. 11. Each workman must provide —— own tools.

12. Sharpen my shears so that —— will cut. 13. Which of the two finished —— work first? 14. Let each esteem others better than ——. 15. A person may make —— happy without wealth. 16. Let each of

the girls take —— place. 17. A person's manners frequently show —— morals. 18. After you have read "My Girls," return —— to me. 19. If thine enemy hunger, feed ——. 20. If anybody knows, —— must not tell. 21. Many a man will sacrifice —— reputation for a trifle. 22. If anybody calls, tell —— to wait.

299. Antecedents joined by AND. — *Singular antecedents connected by "and" must be represented by a plural pronoun when they denote different things, but by a singular pronoun when*

(1) *they denote the same thing, or*

(2) *when they are kept separate by the use of "each," "every," "many a," or "no."* Thus:

Martha and Mary (two persons) wept for **their** brother.
The secretary and treasurer (one person) has resigned **his** office.
Each leaf and each flower can speak **its** Maker's praise.
Every maple and every elm will have shed **its** leaves.
Many a flower and many a gem may have **its** beauty hidden.
No friend and no acquaintance gave me **his** aid.

Exercise 157. — **Supply a suitable pronoun** in each of these sentences, giving the reason for your choice:

1. Joseph and Benjamin rejoiced to see —— father. 2. Cultivate good temper and kind feeling: —— presence will make all about you happy. 3. Envy and hatred make —— possessor unhappy. 4. Poverty and wealth have each —— own temptations. 5. Each officer and each soldier will be permitted to retain —— arms. 6. My classmate and companion had completed —— studies. 7. Every steamer and every train had —— complement of passengers. 8. Every lady and every gentleman must register —— names. [See § 301.] 9. The husband and father cannot support —— family. 10. Every city and village and farm furnished —— quota of soldiers.

300. Antecedents joined by OR or NOR. — *Use a singular pronoun to represent singular antecedents connected by "or" or "nor." Thus:*

Either the president or the cashier must add **his** signature.
Neither Harrison, Taylor, nor Garfield completed **his** term of office.

301. In referring to singular nouns of different gender we may (1) use pronouns of different gender, (2) use a pronoun of the masculine gender, or else (3) change the form of the sentence. Thus, we may say —

Every boy or girl may keep **his** or **her** books, or
Every boy or girl may keep **his** books, or
All the boys and girls may keep **their** books.

It is wrong, of course, to say, — Every boy or girl may keep **their** books. If there were a singular pronoun that could refer to either males or females, we might not be tempted so often to use "they" incorrectly.

Exercise 158. — Read these sentences, **supplying a suitable pronoun,** and giving a reason for your choice, according to § 300. Thus:

Neither Henry nor Thomas had paid *his* fare.

The singular pronoun *his* must be used to represent the singular nouns "Henry" and "Thomas" which are connected by "nor," and hence are to be taken separately.

1. Neither the lawyer nor the physician will give —— services. 2. If thy hand or thy foot offend thee, cut —— off. 3. Where can I buy a good horse or farm, if I want ——? 4. Neither Alfred nor Ellen recited —— lesson perfectly. 5. No man nor woman ever hurt —— health in this way.

302. Collective nouns while singular in form are either singular or plural in **meaning,** and hence are represented sometimes by a singular and sometimes by a plural pronoun. When we say —

The *committee* has made *its* report,

we speak of the action of one body. In —

The jury *were* divided in *their* opinion;

we are thinking of the action of the *individuals* that form the body.

The name of our country, the United States, though plural in form, is now more generally treated as a singular collective noun. We speak of *its* government, *its* army, *its* navy. Usage, however, is divided.

303. Collective antecedents. — *Represent a collective noun by a singular pronoun when you refer to the collection as a whole, and by a plural pronoun when you refer to the individuals of the collection separately.*

Exercise 159. — Fill each blank with a suitable pronoun, giving the reason for your choice.

1. The audience kept —— seats till the close. 2. The jury had not brought in —— verdict. 3. The House will elect —— speaker next Monday. 4. The Board of Aldermen will be divided in —— opinion. 5. Our club will hold —— meeting tomorrow. 6. The Post will install —— officers next week.

2. Case-Forms

304. When we use the pronouns that have three case-forms, we must be careful to use only the **nominative** forms as *subjects* and *subjective complements*, and only the **objective** forms as *objects* of verbs or prepositions.

305. The **nominative forms** for subjects and subjective complements are —

I, we, thou, he, she, they, who, whoever, whosoever.

The **objective forms** for objects of any kind are —

me, us, thee, him, her, them, whom, whomever, whomsoever.

306. Rule for subjects, etc. — 1. *Never use an objective case-form as a subject or as a subjective complement; or* —

2. *The subject of a verb should be in the nominative case.*

Exercise 160. — Select the proper form of the pronoun, giving the reason for your choice. Thus:

"It wasn't (me, I) that did it." The nominative *I*, and not the objective *me*, should be used as the subjective complement of *was* according to the rule, "Never use an objective case-form as a subject or a subjective complement." We should say, "It wasn't *I* that did it."

1. You and (me, I) will go together. 2. Why shouldn't (us, we) girls form a club? 3. Thy father says (thou, thee) must obey. 4. I should go if I were (he, him). 5. You said it was (her, she) that called. 6. (Them, they) that have want more. 7. I do not know (who, whom) it will be. 8. Reward (whomever, whoever) is deserving. 9. (Whom, who) do you think it is? 10. It is not (us, we) who are to blame.

11. Was it (she, her) that came last? 12. Few can entertain an audience better than (him, he). 13. I do not think it could have been (they, them). 14. She knows better than you or (me, I). 15. (They, them) that do well should be rewarded. 16. How much older are you than (her, she)? 17. Where are you and (he, him) to stay? 18. Who will ask for it, you or (I, me)?

307. Rule for objects. — 1. *Never use the nominative of a pronoun with three case-forms as the object of a verb or a preposition; or —*

2. *The object of a verb or a preposition should be in the objective case.*

Exercise 161. — Choose the proper form of the pronoun, and justify your selection. Thus:

"He has invited you and (I, me)." The use of the nominative I instead of the objective *me* as the object of the verb *has invited* would be a violation of the rule, "Never use the nominative of a pronoun with three case-forms as the object of a verb"; hence we should say, "He has invited you and *me*."

1. Let this be a secret between you and (I, me). 2. (Who, whom) did they choose? 3. I want you and (he, him) to go. 4. Nothing is too good for you nor (she, her) either. 5. (Who, whom) did you see?

6. Tell me (whom, who) you mean. 7. There was no one to go except (she, her) and her mother. 8. I wanted you and (him, he) to come again. 9. (Whom, who) is this package for? 10. (Them, they) that honor me I will honor. 11. Send (whoever, whomever) you choose. 12. I will give it to (whosoever, whomsoever) you select. 13. (Who, whom) did he appoint as executor? 14. This is for you and (I, me). 15. Let's you and (I, me) bring the sleigh.

308. An appositive pronoun requires the objective case-form only when in apposition with an object. Thus:

Honor thy *mother*, **her** who loves thee well.
We will write to each other, **you** and **I.**

309. A pronoun used independently or with a participle should generally have the nominative case-form. Thus:

O **Thou** who hearest prayer! **He** failing, who shall succeed?

310. The subject and the complement of the indirect predicate "to be" must both have the objective case-form. Thus:

I knew **it** to be **him.** He thought **them** to be **us.** **Whom** did he suppose **me** to be?

Exercise 162. — Read each of these sentences several times, **using different pronouns** to fill the blanks, when possible. Thus:

It is *I.* It is *you.* It is *we.* It is *he.* It is *she.* It is *they.*

1. It is ——. It wasn't ——.
2. Is it ——? No, it is ——.
3. It is not —— nor ——.
4. —— and —— will go.
5. Neither —— nor —— went.
6. Those are for —— and ——.
7. He mistook —— for ——.
8. Do you know —— it is?
9. It can't be ——. It must be ——
10. Was it ——? No, it was ——.
11. They saw —— and ——.
12. Between —— and ——.
13. Do you know —— he sent?
14. He knows —— it is for.
15. —— knew it was ——.
16. —— knew it to be ——.

Exercise 163. — **Read the sentences,** using that form of the pronoun which you think is correct. Give the reason for your choice.

1. Was it you or (I, me) that made the mistake? 2. It was intended for either you or (him, he). 3. (Who, whom) did he send with you? 4. Was it (him, he) (that, who, whom) you met at my uncle's? 5. Be careful (who, whom) you admit to your friendship. 6. No matter (who, whom) the poor fellow is, help him. 7. All (which, that) I have told you is between you and (I, me). 8. (Who, whom) shall we send in his place? 9. The committee did not agree in (its, their) opinion. 10. We saw the procession with (their, its) banner.

11. There are few better men than (he, him). 12. Each of them must answer for (themselves, himself). 13. (Whom, who) besides him do you think was rewarded? 14. Nobody should praise (themselves, himself). 15. Can you forgive (we, us) girls for our folly? 16. Every man and boy took off (their, his) hat. 17. Please explain the phenomena: I do not understand (it, them). 18. That distinguished orator and statesman will give (their, his) lecture tonight. 19. Neither the king nor the queen wore (his, her, their, the) royal robes.

3. Choice of Pronouns

311. *Of the relative pronouns,* **who** *stands for persons only,* **which** *for things, and* **that** *for either persons or things.*

312. *That,* rather than *who* or *which,* should be used —

(1) After a *superlative adjective.* Thus:

The *wisest* man **that** ever lived.

(2) After *same, all,* and the interrogative *who.* Thus:

The *same* friend **that** I visited. *All* **that** was left. *Who* **that** heard the orator can forget him?

(3) After antecedents denoting both *persons and things.* Thus:

He spoke of the *men* and the *cities* **that** he had seen.

Why not "*whom* he had seen" or "*which* he had seen?"

313. It is often better to use **that**, rather than "who" or "which," in **restrictive** clauses; that is, in clauses that limit the application of the antecedent by showing *which ones* or *how many*, etc., are meant.

Other adjective clauses state an additional fact about the antecedent, and may be called **coördinate, explanatory,** or appositive clauses. For example:

RESTRICTIVE. Franklin was the commissioner *that negotiated the treaty.*

COÖRDINATE. Congress appointed a commissioner, *who negotiated the treaty.*

314. It is better to *use* **each other** *in speaking of two objects;* **one another,** *of more than two.* As in —

David and Jonathan loved (each) other.

[How] do (the) months compare [with (one) another]?

Each and **one** are generally in apposition with the subject of the verb; **other** and **another** are objects.

Exercise 164. 1. **Fill the blanks** with *who, which,* or *that,* and give the reason for your choice.

1. He was deceived by the friend in —— he trusted. 2. A new party arose, —— opposed the National Bank. 3. These are the same persons —— assisted us before. 4. Who are those —— were introduced to us? 5. All —— I said did not influence him. 6. They have not forgotten the friends and the home —— they have left. 7. Is that the regiment of —— you are a member? 8. He was the first —— reached the New World. 9. The surgeon, —— was a very skillful man, saved my friend's life. 10. The family —— I visited cannot be the one to —— you refer. 11. We saw the prisoners and the flags —— were captured.

2. **Select the proper expression** as you read these sentences :

1. The tribes of Southern Africa resemble (each other, one another).
2. (Either, any one) of the five will help you.
3. The two nations are suspicious of (one another, each other).
4. We saw a ship (that its, whose) masts were cut away.

Exercise 165. — 1. Name four classes of pronouns. 2. Name those that are always of the same "person." 3. What two uses have conjunctive pronouns? 4. What is a clause? 5. An adjective clause? 6. A noun clause? 7. Of what kind are pronouns that introduce adjective clauses? 8. What is a complex sentence? 9. Which pronouns have two number-forms? 10. Name the eight pronouns that have three case-forms. 11. Give the nine objective case-forms. 12. Use *who* in five different constructions. 13. Mention three rare uses of the personal pronouns. 14. What determines the number-form of a pronoun? 15. In what constructions must the nominative case-form be used? 16. The objective? 17. When must a singular pronoun represent a collective noun? 18. What is the rule for the number of a pronoun that represents two singular nouns?

19. Parse the pronouns in the following selection. 20. Quote the two adjective clauses and tell what each modifies. 21. How is the noun clause used? 22. What clause modifies *buy* like an adverb? 23. What phrases may you substitute for *above* and *below?*

He liveth long who liveth well;
  All else is life but flung away;
He liveth longest who can tell
  Of true things truly done each day.
Then fill each hour with what will last;
  Buy up the moments as they go;
The life above, when this is past,
  Is the ripe fruit of life below.

CHAPTER VIII

ADJECTIVES

[Review pages 24–27].

Exercise 166.

1. Any bright, intelligent child.
2. Some poor anthracite coal.
3. Which planet is brightest?
4. Chasms, dark and dreadful.
5. Six tall Russian soldiers.
6. That road looks cheerless.
7. Several large Asiatic lions.
8. What plants are poisonous?
9. Those three decaying trees.
10. Every tenth man was lame.
11. All the written evidence.
12. This water tastes salt.

1. What is an adjective? 2. Which of the preceding adjectives *describe* what is mentioned? 3. Which show *how many* are meant? 4. Mention those that merely show *which ones* are referred to without describing them. 5. What is a predicate adjective? 6. Mention those used above. 7. Name the adjectives used to ask questions. 8. The two derived from proper nouns. 9. Those that are made from verbs. 10. Those that show quantity. 11. Which besides the predicate adjectives follow the nouns that they modify?

A. KINDS

316. Most adjectives are words that may be used with a noun *to describe* the object named by showing that it is of a certain kind or quality, or that it is in a certain state or condition. As —

white roses; **skillful** surgeons; **wounded** men; **daily** walks.

Such adjectives besides describing what is named also often *limit* the application of the noun, as in the last three examples just given.

317. Other adjectives do nothing else but *determine* or *limit* the application of a noun by showing *which ones, how many,* or *what quantity.* As —

this brook; **the fourth** day; **six** perch; **few** trout; **much** rain.

318. A Descriptive adjective is one that describes what is mentioned.

319. Descriptive adjectives derived from proper nouns are called **proper** adjectives. Those that are forms of verbs are called **participial** adjectives. Those that denote qualities are called **qualitative** adjectives. Thus:

Brazilian diamonds; **fatiguing** journeys; **wise** men.

Exercise 167. — From the following nouns **form proper adjectives** to fill the blanks in the sentences:

Genoa, France, America, Spain, Persia, Venice, Italy, China, Japan, Turkey, Greece, Mexico, Africa, Shakespeare, Malta, Brazil.

1. —— navigators sailed under the —— flag. 2. The —— flag and the —— flag have three colors each. 3. —— carpets and —— rugs are imported. 4. —— lanterns and —— fans are sold here. 5. The windows have —— blinds. 6. He is an excellent —— reader. 7. Which are more valuable, —— or —— diamonds? 8. He played several —— airs. 9. Draw a —— cross and a —— cross. 10. We met two ——, a ——, and several ——. 11. Cochineal is a —— product.

320. A Limiting adjective is one that merely shows which ones, how many, and so on, without describing.

321. Limiting adjectives include the following:

I. The two **Articles — the; an,** or **a.**

(*a*) **The** is the **definite** article, used with either singular or plural nouns to point out some particular thing or things.

(*b*) **An** or **a** is the **indefinite** article, used with singular nouns to show that we mean either *one* only or *any* one.

II. **Numeral** adjectives, — showing *how many* or *which one* of a series, *how large a part*, etc. As —

March contains **thirty-one** days, or **four** weeks and **three** days. Pronounce the **third** word on the **ninety-first** page. A **tenth** part is smaller than a **sixth** part.

III. The **Interrogative** adjectives — **which** and **what.** As —

Which road leads to Rome? **What** cities were destroyed?

IV. The **Conjunctive** adjectives — **which** and **what**, with their compounds, used to introduce a noun-clause, or to connect it to the rest of the sentence. As —

Do you know **what** presidents died in office?
Whatever facts you may obtain will be valuable.
We have not heard **which** army was victorious.

Some conjunctive adjectives are relatives, and some interrogatives.

V. **Demonstrative** adjectives — *this, that, these, those,* and *yonder,* which point out objects definitely.

VI. **Distributive** adjectives — *each, every, either, neither,* and *many a,* which refer to objects singly.

VII. **Quantitative** adjectives — *much, more, most, little, less, least.*

Distributive and **quantitative** adjectives are called **Indefinite** adjectives.

The **interrogative, conjunctive, demonstrative,** and **indefinite** (except *every*) adjectives, may also be used as pronouns. (See Adjective Pronouns.)

Exercise 168. — 1. **Classify** the adjectives in Exercise 106.

2. **Construct ten sentences,** each containing a limiting and a descriptive adjective.

B. INFLECTION: CHANGES OF FORM

Comparison

Exercise 169. — 1. Lake Erie is a large lake.
2. Lake Michigan is larger than Lake Erie.
3. Lake Superior is the largest lake in the world.

1. Mention the descriptive adjectives in these sentences. 2. What two lakes are compared? 3. With reference to what quality are they compared? 4. Which of the two has that quality in the greater degree? 5. What change in the form of the adjective is made to show this? 6. With what is Lake Superior compared? 7. What lake is of greater size than Lake Superior? 8. What lake has the quality of size in the highest degree? 9. In these comparisons what changes do you notice in the form of the adjective?

322. Some adjectives are inflected to show that one object has *more of the quality* than others with which it is compared.

Thus, without making a comparison, we say —

This is a **high** mountain;

but, to show that another mountain with which we compare it has the quality of height in a *greater* degree, we add **er** to the adjective, and say —

Mt. Lafayette is a **higher** mountain.

And if we wish to show that one mountain among all those we are considering has the quality of height in the *greatest* degree, we add **est** to the adjective, and say —

Mt. Washington is the **highest** mountain in the state.

323. To add *er* and *est* to an adjective so that it may denote different degrees of a quality is to *compare* it.

324. Comparison is a change in an adjective to denote different degrees of the quality.

325. The *positive* degree of an adjective denotes the *simple* quality. As — *tall, heavy, sad.*

The *comparative* degree denotes a *higher* degree of the quality. As — *taller, heavier, sadder.*

The *superlative* degree denotes the *highest* degree of the quality. As — *tallest, heaviest, saddest.*

Exercise 170. — 1. Tell **which degree** of these adjectives is given:

Happier; nobler; musty; clearer; slower; nearest; hot; proper; bright; slender; small; politer; fairest; luckiest; surest.

2. **Compare** the following adjectives [see § 380]:

Thin; feeble; strong; merry; lofty; brave; short; jolly; pretty; red; coy; gloomy; keen; shy; rough; great; mighty; lovely; idle; profound.

3. Which change **y** to **i**? Which really add only **r** and **st**? Which double the last consonant?

326. Irregular comparison. — The following adjectives are compared in an irregular way — sometimes by *quite different words:*

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Good, Well	better	best
Bad, Ill	worse	worst
Little	less	least
Many, Much	more	most
[Forth]	further	furthest
Far	farther	farthest
Fore	former	first, foremost

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Late	later, latter	latest, last
Near	nearer	nearest, next
Old	older, elder	oldest, eldest
[In]	inner	inmost, innermost
[Out]	outer	outmost, outermost
[Up]	upper	uppermost

Note. — The words in brackets are adverbs. Several other superlatives are made by adding **-most** instead of **-est.** As —

northern, northernmost; southern, southernmost.

327. Many adjectives cannot be compared by inflection, since the addition of *er* and *est* would make awkward or ill-sounding words.

Hence a second method is employed by which *more* and *most*

are used with the positive form to make the comparative and superlative. Thus:

beautiful, *more* beautiful, *most* beautiful.

Or we may use *less* and *least* to show degrees below the positive. Thus:

remarkable, *less* remarkable, *least* remarkable.

328. The adjectives to which **er** and **est** may be added are words of one syllable and a few words of two syllables, chiefly those ending in **y** or **le.** As —

Happy, hearty, ready; noble, able; polite, mellow, etc.

329. A few adjectives denote qualities that cannot exist in different degrees, and hence they can neither be compared nor modified by *more* and *most.* As —

Dead, chief, square, equal, principal, spherical, etc.

NOTE. — Such forms as *rounder, straighter, truest,* are sometimes used as if they meant *more nearly round* or *straight,* or *nearest true.*

Exercise 171. — 1. **Change the adjectives** to equivalent adjective phrases, and **change the phrases** to equivalent adjectives.

Handsomer; more shallow; most sincere; fittest; more handy; sauciest; most ample; narrowest; slenderest; more nimble; braver; gentlest.

2. Change them to phrases denoting **lower and lowest degrees.**

3. Tell which of the following adjectives are **not compared,** and give your reason:

Luscious; empty; hollow; supreme; wrong; tenth; dead; particular; false; vain; fashionable; naked; honest; lucrative; void; these; blind; equal; fatal; dry; wet; best; mean; dutiful; level.

330. Number. — Only two adjectives, *this* and *that,* change their form when used with nouns plural in meaning. Thus:

this kind; **these** varieties; **that** reason; **those** reasons.

(*a*) **A** or **an, another, each, either, neither, many a, much,** and **one** are used only with singular nouns; and **both, many, several, sundry, divers,** and **most numeral adjectives,** only with plural nouns.

C. USES, OR CONSTRUCTIONS

331. I. (*a*) An adjective may be *closely connected* with its noun as an **attribute,** or part of the name. Thus:

Those | **brave** soldiers prepared for **the** | **coming** battle.

(*b*) Or it may be used **appositively.** Thus:

The *enemy,* equally **brave,** began the conflict.
Cool and **resolute,** *they* awaited the onset.

332. II. It may be joined to a copulative verb as a **predicate** adjective, showing what is asserted of the subject. Thus:

The contest was **long** and **bloody,** and the result seemed **doubtful.**

333. III. An adjective may be joined to a transitive verb or verbal word as an **objective complement** to complete its meaning and at the same time add a quality to the object of it.

His troubles made him **insane.** We tried to make him **comfortable.**

334. How to Parse an Adjective. — To parse an adjective we have to tell only its (1) **kind,** (2) **form** — if comparative or superlative — (3) **use.** These forms may be followed:

1. ⟨Full many a⟩ gem ⟨of purest ray serene⟩

   (The) (dark), ⟨unfathomed⟩ caves (of ocean) bear.

2. Do you know (what) (American) historian was blind?

3. (Which) king (of England) had ⟨six⟩ wives?

many-a is a *limiting* adjective; used to modify **gem.**
purest is a *superlative, descriptive* adjective; used to modify **ray.**
American is a *proper, descriptive* adjective; used to modify **historian.**
what is a *conjunctive* adjective; used to modify **historian.**
blind is a *descriptive* adjective; used as subjective complement of **was,** and referring to **historian.**
which is an *interrogative* adjective; used to modify **king.**
six is a *numeral* adjective; used to modify **wives.**

Exercise 172. — Analyze these sentences, and **parse the adjectives.**

1. Gentle rains revive the thirsty fields. 2. Firm-paced and slow, a horrid front they form. 3. Calm and serene as the iron walls around him, stood Regulus the Roman. 4. Many amusements appear harmless that are really dangerous. 5. The painting looks attractive, but the artist does not seem satisfied. 6. A few critics have pronounced it perfect. 7. The government thought him competent to command. 8. Make the house where gods may dwell beautiful, entire, and clean. 9. Many try in vain to be happy. 10. The people found their new ruler to be cruel and blood-thirsty. 11. Appearing honest and being honest are very different things. 12. You must tell me about what things you see. 13. Medicine only made the patient worse. 14. To be prodigal in youth is to be needy in age. 15. Which course would you advise him to take? 16. Whatever efforts you make will be rewarded. 17. Fortune may make a man famous, but it cannot make him great.

335. Summary. — An adjective is a word that adds to the meaning of a noun or a pronoun, without asserting anything nor standing by itself as a name.

1. Kinds:

Descriptive { *Qualitative.* / *Participial.* / *Proper.*

2. Forms: { *Positive.* / *Comparative.* / *Superlative.*

Limiting { *Article:* Definite, Indefinite. / *Numeral:* Cardinal, Ordinal. / *Demonstrative.* / *Interrogative.* / *Distributive.* / *Conjunctive:* Simple, Compound.

3. Uses, or Construction:

1. **Modifies** the noun (or pronoun) ——.
2. **Subjective Complement** of the verb (infinitive or participle) ——.
   (*a*) Referring to ——. (*b*) Used abstractly.
3. **Objective Complement** of the verb (infinitive or participle) ——.

D. DIRECTIONS FOR THE USE OF ADJECTIVES

336. A *or* An. — *A should be used only before words beginning with consonant sounds, and* **an** *before words beginning with vowel sounds.* Thus:

A house, an honor; a wonder, a one, an onion, an ounce; a yew, a ewe, a ūse, a ūnit, a eulogy, an ûrchin, an ŭncle.

NOTE. — *One* begins with the consonant sound of **w**, and *long* **u** begins with the consonant sound of **y**.

337. Article repeated. — *When two or more connected adjectives describe* **different** *objects, the article is used with each; but when they describe the* **same** *object, the article is used with the first only.* Thus:

A pink and a white dahlia (two flowers).
A pink and white dahlia (one flower).
A red, a white, and a blue flag.
A red, white, and blue flag.

How many flags are mentioned.

338. Agreement. — *An adjective that implies one, or more than one, must agree in number with the noun that it limits.* Thus we should say —

"**This** kind," not "*these* kind"; "**that** sort," not "*those* sort"; "three **feet** wide," not "three *foot* wide"; six **pounds** of teá," not "six *pound.*"

339. Such expressions as *a few, a dozen, a great many, a hundred, ten thousand, three hundred sixty-five, two and a half,* may be considered adjective phrases when they modify nouns.

340. Them. — *Never use "them" as an adjective.*

Expressions like "them books," "them things," are among the worst errors.

Exercise 173. — 1. **Fill the blanks** with *a*, *an*, or *the* when needed.

1. Brutus was —— honorable man. 2. This is —— universal truth. 3. He was —— kind and —— indulgent parent. 4. Omit —— first and second stanzas. 5. —— poor and —— rich have equal rights. 6. She was married to —— dignified and —— kindly man.

2. **Select the proper form**, giving your reason.

1. I prefer (these, this) kind of rugs. 2. Did they use (that, those) hose at the fire? 3. You must avoid (those, that) sort of people. 4. I haven't seen him for (these, this) two weeks. 5. We must catch (them, those) horses.

341. Adjectives not compared. — *Do not compare adjectives so as to make ill-sounding or meaningless forms.*

Say the *most impertinent* fellow, not the *impertinentest;* and *more nearly square*, rather than *squarer.*

342. Double Comparison. — *Do not modify comparatives by "more" nor superlatives by "most."*

For "They could not find a *more worthier* man," say, "a *worthier man,*" or "a *more worthy* man." In — "This is the most unwisest course," omit either *most* or *st.*

343. Forms Confused. — *Use the comparative form in comparing two objects, the superlative in comparing more than two.* Thus:

Which is **better** — health or wealth?
Which is **best** — health, wealth, or learning?

344. "Other" misused. — *Do not spoil a comparison by wrongly inserting or omitting the word "other."* Thus:

"New York is larger than any city in America," should of course be "than any *other* city in America"; and Rhode Island is the smallest of all the other States," should be "of all the States."

345. Adjectives for Adverbs. — *Do not use an adjective where an adverb is needed.*

Not "speak *proper,*" but "**speak properly**"; not "*real* good," but "**really** or **very** good."

Exercise 174. — Correct the following sentences, giving your reason:

1. Go very quick. 2. I never heard a more truer remark. 3. Which is largest — the numerator or the denominator? 4. Which is the best writer — James or Henry? 5. Speak loud and distinct. 6. This is the most quietest part of the city. 7. Let such an one rise, if present. 8. I never saw anything neater done. 9. Which is nearest the north pole — Europe or Asia? 10. This copy is very perfect. 11. Were you weighed on that scales? 12. He is the awkwardest skater on the pond. 13. Of all my other friends, I like him best. 14. Brother Charles is taller than any member of our family.

TO A WATER FOWL

346.

Whither, midst falling dew,
While glow the heavens with the last steps of day,
Far, through their rosy depths, dost thou pursue
Thy solitary way?

Vainly the fowler's eye
Might mark thy distant flight to do thee wrong,
As, darkly seen against the crimson sky,
Thy figure floats along.

Seek'st thou the plashy brink
Of weedy lake, or marge of river wide,
Or where the rocking billows rise and sink
On the chafed ocean-side?

There is a Power whose care
Teaches thy way along that pathless coast –
The desert and illimitable air —
Lone wandering, but not lost.

All day thy wings have fanned,
At that far height, the cold, thin atmosphere,
Yet stoop not, weary, to the welcome land,
Though the dark night is near.

And soon that toil shall end;
Soon shalt thou find a summer home, and rest,
And scream among thy fellows; reeds shall bend,
Soon, o'er thy sheltered nest.

Thou'rt gone! The abyss of heaven
Hath swallowed up thy form; yet, on my heart
Deeply hath sunk the lesson thou hast given,
And shall not soon depart.

He who, from zone to zone,
Guides through the boundless sky thy certain flight,
In the long way that I must tread alone,
Will lead my steps aright.

— *William Cullen Bryant.*

1. Make a list of the descriptive adjectives. 2. Of the limiting adjectives. 3. Of the adjective phrases. 4. Of the adjective clauses. 5. This selection gives excellent opportunity for a review in analysis and parsing.

TEST QUESTIONS

1. Explain the difference between descriptive and limiting adjectives. 2. Name three classes of limiting adjectives. 3. Use *which* as a conjunctive adjective. 4. Why is *what* sometimes called a conjunctive adjective? 5. How and why are adjectives compared? 6. What substitute is there for the comparative degree? 7. When is the superlative degree used? 8. What adjectives are not compared? 9. How do you discriminate in the use of *a* and *an?* 10. Mention three errors to be avoided in the use of adjectives. 11. Parse the adjectives in the following selection:

The curfew tolls the knell of parting day;
The lowing herd winds slowly o'er the lea;
The plowman homeward plods his weary way,
And leaves the world to darkness and to me.

Now fades the glimmering landscape on the sight,
And all the air a solemn stillness holds;
Save where the beetle wheels his droning flight,
And drowsy tinklings lull the distant folds;

Save that from yonder ivy-mantled tower,
The moping owl does to the moon complain
Of such as, wandering near her secret bower,
Molest her ancient solitary reign.

— *Thomas Gray.*

CHAPTER IX

VERBS

A. KINDS

347. The life of a sentence is the **verb** that it contains; for without a verb we cannot *assert* or *question* or *command* or *wish*.

348. In our study of the structure of sentences we have already learned that —

1. Most verbs express **action,** as — *go, come, work.*

2. Some verbs denote a **state** or **condition,** as — *be, dwell, seem.*

3. All verbs belong to one of two classes, (1) verbs of complete predication, or briefly, **complete** verbs, and (2) verbs of incomplete predication, or **incomplete** verbs. As —

(1) The sun *rises.* (2) The sun *gives* light.

4. A **Complete** verb is one that may be used alone to make a predicate. As — The earth *revolves.*

5. An **Incomplete** verb is one that needs another word to complete the predicate. As — The earth *is* a sphere.

This part that completes the predicate is called the *complement* of the verb.

6. Incomplete verbs are of two kinds, copulative and transitive.

7. A **Copulative** verb is one that requires a complement that describes or limits its subject.

As — Life *is short.* The Muses *were nine* in number.

8. A **Transitive** verb is one that has a complement which shows who or what receives the action expressed by the verb. As — The fox *caught* the *rabbit*. The hunter *shot* the fox.

9. The **Complement** of a copulative verb is either a predicate noun or a predicate adjective, or else some phrase or clause used as its equivalent. As — Edward is *king*. The people are *loyal*. Lost time is *beyond recall*. Life is *what we make it*.

10. The complement of a **transitive** verb is a noun or pronoun or its equivalent, and is called an *object*.

As — Receive *him* kindly. Bring *flowers*. Try *to do right*. Tell *why the birds sing*.

We sometimes speak of this object as the **direct** object, to distinguish it from the indirect.

11. Some transitive verbs, besides the direct object, take also an **indirect** object which shows *to* or *for whom* or *what* the action is performed.

As — Give *me* time to think. Give the *lawn* a sprinkling.

12. A few transitive verbs, in addition to the direct object, may have a second complement referring to it. As — Make the path *smooth*. This is called the **objective** complement.

Such verbs are sometimes called **factitive** verbs, that is, verbs of *making*.

349. Sometimes verbs are classified as **transitive** and **intransitive**, complete and copulative verbs forming the latter class. It is often convenient to use the term, intransitive.

350. Certain verbs are used without any real subject, the meaningless word *it* serving as an expletive. As —

It *rains*. It *has snowed* all night. *May* it *please* the court.

Such verbs are called **impersonal** verbs.

Exercise 175. — 1. Supply subjects to these verbs, and **complements** where they seem to be needed:

Screamed; stays; fly; ate; cut; punished; grew; drink; seek; depart; talked; tears; looks; seemed; saw; were; became; found; arm; wore; feels; had; spoke; are; was.

2. Explain the **difference between the two kinds** of complements that you have added.

351. The same verb may belong to different classes, according to the different senses in which it is used. Thus, in the sentence, The trees **grow**, the verb **grow** is *complete* and cannot take an object; in, Stones **grow** old, the verb is incomplete and *copulative*, for it needs the complement "old" to describe the subject; and in, The florists **grow** cuttings under glass, **grow** is still incomplete, but it is *transitive*, since its complement, instead of describing the subject, is an object, showing what the action affects.

352. The number of **copulative** verbs is small; one of them, however, is extremely common, namely, *be*, which — with its various forms, *am*, *is*, *was*, *were*, etc. — helps to make many verb phrases; as in —

We **are waiting**, for We **wait**.

(*a*) **Be** is sometimes used like "exist" as a *complete* verb with more of its original meaning; as in —

The time **was**, when no one lived here; There **has been** a frost;

but generally it seems only to connect the subject to what is asserted of it. [See § 125.]

(*b*) **Be** enters into the meaning of all other copulative verbs. Thus:

He **appeared** wise = **was** wise *in appearance.*
The clouds **look** distant = **are** distant *to the sight.*
The water **tastes** bitter = **is** bitter *to the taste.*

So with **feel, sound, smell, become, seem,** etc.

Exercise 176. — Point out the verbs the meaning of which is completed by some expression that is **descriptive of what the subject names.**

1. The case seems more hopeful. 2. Man became a living soul. 3. The man has turned fool. 4. He looks well and feels much stronger. 5. Why stand ye here idle? 6. All bloodless lay the untrodden snow. 7. He had been called wise. 8. The English forces proved irresistible. 9. The shutters blew open. 10. The buds smell sweet, but they taste bitter. 11. Some men are born great.

353. Verbs that are usually transitive may also be used **intransitively**; *i.e.*, they may signify merely that something is done, nothing being said about what is affected by the action. So we say —

"He sees his friends" or "He sees distinctly."
"He writes English" or "He writes slowly."

354. Even verbs that are usually intransitive may sometimes take an object. Thus:

Sit *thee* down. She **worked** *herself* to death. They **live** a dreary *life*, and **are running** a hopeless *race*. **Walk** your *horses* up hill.

Exercise 177. — Make short sentences showing how each verb may be used either **transitively or intransitively**:

Answer; boils; dissolve; returned; smells; survive; break; fell; slipped; believes; becomes; shakes; rained; pulls; struck; drives; gnaw; sing; worries; felt; sounds; followed; rattled; tasted; fear; stay.

B. INFLECTION: CHANGES IN FORM

355. As with nouns and pronouns, so with verbs, each has several forms made by inflection to correspond to changes in the use or in the meaning.

The phrases that are used instead of inflected forms we shall study later. [See page 160.]

1. Tense Forms

Exercise 178. — 1. Tell whether the time referred to is **present** or **past**. If in doubt, add "now" or "yesterday."

He thinks.	She rides.	It stood.	They fall.
I thought.	They caught.	We found.	Waves dash.
He catches.	I walked.	I lose.	Water freezes.
We study.	You wrote.	It grows.	Ice breaks.

2. **Change each verb** so that it will refer to some other time.

356. Nearly every verb has one **change of form** that affects the meaning as much as if it were modified by an adverb. Thus, speaking of the **present** time, we say —

I come; I wait; I stay;

but if the coming, waiting, or staying took place at some time in the **past**, we say —

I came; I waited; I stayed.

357. Tenses are the forms of a verb that distinguish time.

Exercise 179. — Tell whether the form of the verb denotes **present** or **past** time:

I have.	Thou mayest.	He was.	Thou canst.	He shall.
He does.	You may.	I will.	You can.	Thou art.
I did.	He might.	They had.	They could.	He hath.
We were.	I am.	She has.	It is.	You should.

358. The present tense of a verb is the form that generally refers to present time.

359. About twenty verbs cannot be changed in this way, and the time is, therefore, shown by something besides the form; as —

Now we **spread** our tents. We **spread** them *yesterday.*

In such cases we may *call* the form present or past according to its *use.*

360. The present tense is sometimes used of what is *past* or *future* to make it seem present or distinct; as —

In the fifteenth century a new era **begins.**
We **leave** the city tomorrow.

361. In *form* the present tense is like the *simple infinitive*, or *root*, from which all other forms are derived.

362. The past tense of a verb is the form that generally refers to past time.

363. The common or regular way of changing the present to the past form is by *adding* **ed.** Thus:

I called; **I borrowed;** **I waited.**

But in a number of the oldest verbs the change appears in the middle of the word, whether anything is added or not. Thus:

stand, stood; **fall, fell;** **see, saw.**

Exercise 180. — Write the **present tense** of —

Patted; played; began; could; caught; worked; stood; walked; chose; came; waited; bit; tried; crept; struck; blew; broke; flew; gazed; brought; burnt; whipped; did; bled; dug.

Write the **past tense** of as many of these as you can:

Work; write; make; wear; think; till; love; take; strike; see; pour; steal; speak; sit; sell; run; ride; guess; smoke; give; part; drive; dream; ask; try.

2. Number and Person

364. Other differences in the forms of a verb depend on what its subject is. Thus, in the *present* tense we say —

I We You They The men	**go** **stay**	He She It The man	**goes** **stays**

using a *special form* made by adding *s* or *es* whenever the subject is a third-singular pronoun or a singular noun.

365. As this special form is never used except with a subject denoting the *third person* and the *singular number*, it is called the **third-singular** form. It is also called the **s-form,** because it always ends in *s*.

Exercise 181. — Use every one of these words in succession to fill each blank, and spell the **third-singular form** of the verb:

I, you, he, we, you, she, they, we, it, the *men,* the *man.*

— go,	— find,	— perch,	— deny,	— smash,
— wish,	— ply,	— crouch,	— watch,	— cry,
— have,	— do,	— row,	— lie,	— lay.

366. Changes to suit the person and number of the subject were once much more common than now, and two old-style forms, such as we see in the Bible, are still used, especially in prayer and in poetry. Thus:

(*a*) With **thou** as subject the verb takes the ending **st** or **est** in both the present and past indicative tenses. For example:

Thou **waitest.** Thou **waitedst.** Thou **goest.** Thou **stoodst;**

and (*b*) instead of the customary third-singular form in **s**, a form ending in **th** or **eth** may be used in the present tense. Thus:

She **giveth.** He **goeth.** The wind **bloweth.**

Exceptions. — The verb **be** keeps many of its old changes of form, as shown in § 415.

Dare (meaning *venture*), and **need**, sometimes take no added **s** with a third-singular subject. Thus:

He **dare** not go. He **dares** you to do it.
He **need** not stay. He **needs** a coat.

367. Since the changes in the form of the verb are made according to the meaning of the subject, the verb is said "to agree with its subject."

3. Verbal Nouns and Verbal Adjectives

368. By inflecting a verb in these different ways, we change the *form*, the *application*, and sometimes the *use* of it; but so long as it can form the predicate of a sentence, it still remains a verb.

We now come to certain other *verbal forms* that cannot be used as a predicate, and therefore are *not* verbs like the rest.

Exercise 182. — 1. Which of these verbal words and expressions **cannot by themselves form the predicate** of a sentence?

grow	took	broken	flying	give
running	goes	flew	fallen	grown
come	worked	playing	to take	to wait

2. Which may be **nouns**, and which **adjectives**?

369. From almost every verb are formed two special kinds of verbal words having the *use* of *other parts of speech.*

Thus, besides the true *verbs* **drives, drove,** we have two *nouns,* **driving** and **(to) drive,** that name the action expressed by the verb; as in —

Driving is pleasant; I like to **drive;**

and two *adjectives,* **driving** and **driven,** that describe either the actor or the receiver of the action; as in —

A man **driving;** Snow **driven** by the wind.

370. Such nouns and adjectives as these differ from all others that are derived from verbs, since they may be formed from almost *any verb;* and, what is still more important to notice, they may have the *same modifiers* that verbs have. Thus:

(1) The **nouns,** if derived from transitive verbs, may take an object. As in —

Driving *fast horses* is pleasant;

and they always may be modified by an adverb. As in —

I like **to drive** *slowly.*

Here **driving** and **to drive** are used as subject and object, respectively; but, like verbs, they express action as passing over to something else, or as going on in different ways.

(2) So with **adjectives**, we may say —

a man **beating** *a dog*, or a dog **cruelly beaten.**

Here **beating** and **beaten** describe the man and the dog like adjectives, and are modified like verbs. There is no assertion in either expression, yet we think of the man as acting and of the dog as acted upon, as much as if a verb were used.

Exercise 183. — Find all the **verbal nouns** and **verbal adjectives.**

1. Horses drawing stone.
2. Stone drawn by horses.
3. To draw well requires skill.
4. A good teacher of drawing.
5. Ducks swimming in the lake.
6. Ducks shot by a hunter.
7. To work is to win.
8. Telling lies hardens the heart.
9. The house standing back from the road.
10. Fields plowed in the early fall.
11. An empty boat carried over the falls.
12. A long-boat carrying several shipwrecked passengers.
13. The habit of smoking tobacco or of playing with fire.
14. To waste in youth is to want in age.

371. 1. The *first* of the two nouns is the root or simplest form of the verb, either with or without the sign *to* before it, as —

(to) drive, (to) spin, (to) sleep, (to) walk.

This is called the **root infinitive**, or simply the **infinitive.**

2. The *second* verbal noun is formed with the ending *ing*, as —

driving, spinning, sleeping, walking.

This is called the **infinitive in -ing**, or **Gerund.** It is often treated in all respects like a noun (§185), having similar uses and modifiers. Thus:

(Rapid) **driving** (in crowded streets) is dangerous.

Exercise 184. — 1. Select the **infinitives**, and, if possible, tell how they are used.

1. These are wagons for carrying corn. 2. Writing letters is making signs. 3. Have you ever tried writing with your left hand? 4. We ran to the rescue. 5. We ran to rescue them. 6. To write letters easily is an accomplishment. 7. He came to stay here for his health. 8. He has tried to walk without his crutches. 9. His physician forbade him to run after eating. 10. I desire to go. I wish to go. I will go.

2. When possible, **substitute the other infinitive** for the one given in these sentences.

3. **Form the infinitive** of any ten verbs.

372. An Infinitive is a verbal noun. It names the action or condition expressed by the verb, and takes the same complements and modifiers.

NOTE. — The word "infinitive" means *infinite, unlimited.* It is applied to these forms because in them the idea of the verb is not limited as to person and number.

373. The two *adjectives* found among the inflected forms of verbs are called **Participles.**

374. One participle describes a person or thing as *continuing* an action. It is called the *active* or *present participle,* and always ends in *ing;* as —

driving, spinning, sleeping, walking.

375. The other **participle is** called the *passive* or *past participle,* because what it describes is regarded either (*a*) as *having received the action* expressed by the verb; as in —

Threads are **spun;** Cattle are **driven;**

or else (*b*) as *having completed* some action; as in —

One who has **walked** or **slept.**

This participle usually ends in *t, d,* or *n.*

NOTE. — The names **imperfect** and **perfect** are also used.

Exercise 185. — Select the **participles.** Tell from what verb each is derived, what each describes, and what its modifiers are.

A fisherman leaving the shore pulled out to the sunken reef in a boat kept for his use. Hearing a ship pounding on the rocks, he rowed till he could see the crew bound or clinging half-frozen to the shattered masts. They were partly hidden by the fog, and partly by patches of torn sails.

376. A participle is a verbal adjective. It shares or participates in the nature of a verb and of an adjective.

377. These verbal nouns and adjectives are given along with other verb forms, because —

(1) They are made from almost every verb;

(2) Most verb phrases are formed by help of them; and —

(3) They take the same kind of complements and modifiers that verbs take.

Conjugation

378. The Conjugation of a verb is the orderly arrangement of its forms.

"Conjugation" means *yoking* or *joining together.*

379. We shall find that there are commonly but *seven* or *eight* changes made in the verb by inflection. Thus, the common inflected forms of *wait* and *give* are —

Root	S-Form	Past Tense	Present Part.	Perf. Part.
wait,	**waits,**	**waited,**	**waiting,**	**(waited).**
give,	**gives,**	**gave,**	**giving,**	**given.**

Besides these common forms we have the solemn forms —

waitest, waitedst, waiteth: givest, gavest, giveth.

380. Rules for Spelling. — I. *The third-singular form of the present indicative is made by adding* **s** *to the root-form, or* **es**, *when needed for the sound. If the verb ends in* **y** *after a consonant,* **y** *is changed to* **i**, *and* **es** *is added.* [See § 201.] As —

Make, makes; go, goes; wish, wishes; defy, defies.

Exception. **Have** becomes **has.**

II. *Silent* **e** *is dropped before the suffixes* **er, ed, ing,** *etc.* As —

Hope, hoped, hoping, hopest, hopeth.

EXCEPTIONS. *Hoe, shoe, toe, dye, singe,* and *tinge* retain the **e** before **ing.** **Die** becomes **dying; have** becomes **had.**

III. *Monosyllables,* and *dissyllables accented on the second syllable, if they end in a single consonant after a single vowel, double the final consonant before* **er, ed, ing,** *etc.* As —

Sad, sadder, saddest; hop, hopped, hopping; refer, referred.

IV. *To verbs ending in* **ic, k** *is added before all endings but* **s.** As —

Traffic, trafficked, trafficking.

Exercise 186. — Write in columns the **five common forms** of these verbs. Thus:

ROOT	S-FORM	PAST TENSE	IMPERF. PART.	PERF. PART.
try,	tries,	tried,	trying,	tried.
rob,	robs,	robbed,	robbing,	robbed.

[See Appendix I for forms that you do not know.]

Omit; do; carpet; dry; defer; wrap; befit; submit; behave; echo; differ; bar; benefit; live; merit; ship; glorify; have; equip; regret; save; slap; concur; gaze; search; quit; compel; gossip; sing; singe.

381. Regular and Irregular Verbs. — We see that the two verbs *wait* and *give* are changed in different ways. The past tense and the perfect participle of *wait* are formed *alike,* that is by adding *ed.* Thus:

wait, waited, waited.

But in *give* these two parts are *unlike,* being formed without the use of *ed.* Thus:

give, gave, given.

Elsewhere the changes are the same, and in order to conjugate any verb we commonly need to know only how these two forms are made.

382. Most verbs * form the past tense and the perfect participle by adding *ed* to the root, and are called **Regular Verbs.** All other verbs are called **Irregular.** For example:

	Root-Inf.	Past Tense	Perf. Part.		Root-Inf.	Past Tense	Perf. Part.
Regular	wait,	wait**ed,**	wait**ed.**	*Irregular*	give,	gave,	giv**en.**
	call,	call**ed,**	call**ed.**		fall,	fell,	fall**en.**

383. These three forms, the **infinitive,** the **past tense,** and the **past participle,** are called the **Principal Parts** of the verb, because when they are known, the whole conjugation of the verb can be given.

384. Double Forms. — Some verbs have *both regular and irregular forms* for the past tense, or for the perfect participle, or for both. Sometimes these forms differ in meaning, and frequently in use, but generally either may be used.

Such verbs are called **redundant.**

A few verbs like *must* and *ought* lack one or more of their principal parts. They are called **defective** verbs.

[For a list of irregular verbs, see Appendix I.]

Exercise 187. — 1. I —— it now. 2. I —— it yesterday. 3. I have —— it today.

Fill the blanks with the **principal parts** of the following verbs:

Bear; beat; begin; bite; blow; break; bring; buy; catch; choose; do; draw; drink; drive; eat; find; forget; forsake; freeze; give; have; hide; know; lay; leave; make; mean; rend; ride; ring; see; seek; set; shake; show; slay; smite; sow; speak; spin; spring; strike; take; throw; weave; wear; wring; write.

Exercise 188. — 1. They may ——. 2. They ——yesterday. 3. They had already ——.

* All but about two hundred of the thousands of verbs in the language.

Use the **principal parts** of the following verbs to fill the blanks:

Become; bid; come; crow; fall; flee; fly; grow; lie; rise; raise; shine; shrink; sing; sit; slide; stand; steal; stride; strive; swear; swim; think; tread.

4. Mode

385. If we study verbs in sentences we find them used to predicate in several ways or modes. Thus, they may be used —

1. **To command**; As, **Be** ready; **Wish** with me.
2. (*a*) **To question**; As, **Is** he ready? Who **wishes** this?
   (*b*) **To assert positively**; As, I **am** ready; She **wishes** it.
3. **To say something doubtfully, as if only thought of**; As —

   If it **be** there I will bring it; If I **were** ready I would go.

386. It was once the custom to use in such cases quite different forms of the verb called **Modes,** to show the manner or mode in which a person spoke. Comparatively few of these forms remain; and hardly any of them, or even the phrases that have replaced them, are now invariably used in any one way. Still it is customary to say that verbs are in the **indicative, imperative,** or **subjunctive** modes, according as they represent *facts, commands,* or only *thoughts.*

387. Indicative Mode. — The most common of these modes is the indicative; for generally our statements are presented as *facts,* or at least we *assume* them to be facts.

388. A verb is in the **Indicative Mode** when used —

1. *To state something as a fact.*
2. *To ask a simple question.*

The verbs in the following sentences are all in the indicative mode. Try to tell why.

He *goes* quickly. *Does* she *wish* it? Fish *can live* only in the water. We *shall rise* at daybreak. You *may go* now. *Can* you *analyze* the

sentence? If she *was* there I *failed* to see her. If he *comes* — as he probably will — I *shall meet* him. If he *was* poor he *was* honest. I *could have gone* yesterday. Perhaps it *is* true.

389. Imperative Mode. — A verb is in the **imperative** mode when it expresses *a command, a request,* or *an entreaty.* As in —

Go quickly. **Come** with me. **Do be** honest.

390. A command, etc., is generally given to some person or persons addressed by name, or who are so well known as not to need mention, and so the subject of the imperative is commonly omitted. It is always of the second person, and may be singular or plural. It is sometimes expressed for the sake of emphasis. As —

Hear me, my friends. **Go** thou and **do** likewise.

In *form* the imperative is always the simple root of the verb, and it is always of the present tense.

In such expressions as Thou *shalt* not *steal,* You *will go* now, You *must pass* out at once, the indicative mode is used instead of the imperative for much the same purpose.

391. Subjunctive Mode. — The subjunctive mode expresses not what is real and actual, but rather what is only *thought of* as a possibility.

The distinctive forms that characterize it are giving way to indicative forms, and are little used now-a-days in spoken language. They abound, however, in literature, and are still carefully used by discriminating writers. It is well to practice the use of some of them.

392. A verb in the *Subjunctive Mode* * is used to express —

1. *What is uncertain, and to be decided in the future;*
2. *A supposition that is contrary to fact;*
3. *A wish.*

* For a fuller discussion of the Subjunctive, see Appendix I.

Some verbs in the following sentences are in the subjunctive mode. Tell which and why.

1. Though he **be** dead we shall find him.
   Even if he **fail** he will not despair.
   If the wind **be** fair, the ship may sail.

2. If he **were** willing I would help him.
   If he **were** rich, he would give liberally.
   Were she able she would come to me.

3. I wish I **were** well. O that he **were** here!
   Thy kingdom **come**. Long **live** the King!

393. The subjunctive is generally found in *subjoined* or subordinate clauses introduced by *if, though, unless, except, lest,* etc. Not all clauses thus introduced, however, contain subjunctives.

394. Subjunctive forms differ from the indicative in dropping all *personal* endings.* Thus:

Indicative:	goes,	stays,	risest,	sawest,	keepeth,	lovedst.
Subjunctive:	go,	stay,	rise,	saw,	keep,	loved.

This becomes more apparent when some of the forms of *be* are placed in contrast. Thus:

Present Indicative:	I am, / We are,	Thou art, / You are,	He is, / They are.
Present Subjunctive:	I be, / We be,	Thou be, / You be,	He be, / They be.
Past Indicative:	I was, / We were,	Thou wast, / You were,	He was, / They were.
Past Subjunctive:	I were, / We were,	Thou wert,* / You were,	He were, / They were.

395. Modes are inflected or phrase forms of verbs which show the manner of asserting.

* The form *wert* (with *thou*) in the past tense of the verb *be* is the o[illegible] auxi[illegible]ption of the futu[illegible]

Exercise 189. — Select from the following sentences **five** verbs that express a command; **three** that express a wish or a supposition contrary to the fact; **three** that state something as uncertain and to be decided in the future; **three** that assert a condition assumed to be a fact; **five** that state facts positively:

1. Clouds bring rain. 2. Dare to do right. 3. I wish my father were here. 4. The eclipse was total. 5. A robin built its nest in our elm. 6. If I am not paid, I work hard. 7. Speak kindly to the erring. 8. He would be a spendthrift if he were rich. 9. If he was severe, he was not unjust. 10. The crew furled the sails. 11. Be just, and fear not. 12. Improve your opportunity before it be lost. 13. I should go even if the danger were greater. 14. If the truth be known, no harm can result. 15. Though she was there, I did not see her. 16. If it be fair, we shall go.

D. VERB PHRASES

Substitutes for Inflected Forms

396. English verbs have no changes *in form* other than those already mentioned. In some languages the number of forms is much greater; but in English all other variations in time, mode, and so on, must be expressed in a round-about way by what are called **Verb phrases.**

397. *Verb phrases* are made by using some root infinitive or participle as the complement of another verb. As —

He | will **go.** They | have **waited.** She | may **write.**
It | is **coming.** It | was **built.**

398. The verbs that are used with infinitives and participles merely to make verb phrases, are called **Auxiliary** (i.e., *helping*) verbs.

399. The Principal Parts of the Auxiliary verbs are —

Present	Past	Perf. Part.	Present	Past	Perf. Part.
shall	should	——	must	——	——
will	would	——	do	did	done
may	might	——	be	was	been
can	could	——	have	had	had

The indicative forms used in the solemn or poetic style, with **thou** as subject, are —

Present	Past	Present	Past
shalt	shouldst	canst	couldst
wilt	wouldst	dost, doest	didst
mayest, mayst	mightest	art	wast, wert
		hast	hadst

1. Future Tense

Phrases made with Shall and Will

400. When we wish to predict that anything is to happen in time to come, we say —

I shall *take*; **He will** *take*; *

using the present tense of *shall* and of *will* to help us in expressing the idea of *taking* as *future*.

401. Future Tense phrases are formed with *shall* or *will* and a root infinitive, and denote future time.

For other uses of *shall* and *will* see §§ 440-443.

402. The parts of any verb phrase may be separated by other words; as in —

He **will** not **go**.	We **shall**, in all probability, **fail**.
Will she not **sing**?	**Shall** you and your friends **remain**?

* *Shall* or *will* is the verb here, and the infinitive *take* is the object of it. The phrase that they together make is called the *future tense of the indicative*; for the auxiliaries have lost much of their original meaning, and are now little more than *signs* of the future tense.

Exercise 190. — Make sentences, using the **future tense** of each of these forms:

Went; caught; drove; blown; hid; trod; rejoiced; sang; sprung; said; lied; lain; came; flew; flow.

2. Perfect Tenses

Have as an Auxiliary

403. I. **Present Perfect.** — Whenever we wish to speak of an action as *completed at the present* time, we do not say —

I buy it today, but **I have bought** it today —

using the present tense of the auxiliary *have*, and the *perfect participle* of some verb. So, too —

The town **has grown** this year. It **has occurred** twice this century.

404. II. **Past Perfect.** — In speaking of an action as **completed** at some definite **past** time, we use the past form *had* with the *perfect participle*. Thus:

They **had gone** before I arrived.

405. III. **Future Perfect.** — If we wish to speak of an action as **completed** at some **future** time, we use the future tense, *shall* or *will have*, with the *perfect participle*, and say —

The sun **will have risen** before our arrival.

406. Phrases that denote completed or perfected actions are called Perfect Tenses. They are formed by combining the perfect participle of any verb with the various tenses of "have."

407. We see then that by inflection and by the use of auxiliaries we form *six* tenses; namely —

Present:	I hear.	*Present Perfect:*	I have heard.
Past:	I heard.	*Past Perfect:*	I had heard.
Future:	I shall hear.	*Future Perfect:*	I shall have heard.

Exercise 191. — Tell whether the verb shows present, past, or future time, and give the corresponding **perfect** form of that tense; *i.e.*, the **perfect tense phrase:**

1. He sings well. 2. He wrote yesterday. 3. They will go tomorrow. 4. They could not wait. 5. They should obey their parents. 6. She had an instructor. 7. We shall set out on his return. 8. Can it be true? 9. What could he answer? 10. Would he welcome you?

3. Potential Forms

May, can, and *must* used as Auxiliaries

408. *May, can,* and *must* are used with root infinitives to make what are called **Potential** phrases, that express what is *possible, conditional,* or *obligatory.*

May implies *permission, can* implies *ability* or *power, must* implies *obligation* or *necessity;* but, as they often lose their proper meaning and become mere auxiliaries, they are given as parts of the conjugation of the verb that they help.

409. The present forms, *may, can,* and *must* generally give a *present* meaning. Thus:

You **may** go; *i.e.*, you have *permission* to go.
We **can** give; *i.e.*, we *are able* to give.
The engine **can** draw the train; *i.e.*, it *has the power* to draw it.
I **must** go; *i.e.*, I am *obliged* to go.
It **must** be sold; *i.e.*, the sale of it is *necessary.*

410. **May** and **can** sometimes have a *future* or *subjunctive* meaning: as in —

You **may** slip; *i.e.*, perhaps you *will* slip.
I shall come if I **can**; *i.e.*, if it *be* possible.

411. The past forms *might* and *could* may give a *past* meaning to the phrase; as in —

He **could** not wait; *i.e.*, he *was* not able to wait;

or they may give a *subjunctive* meaning, as of something merely thought of. Thus:

Even if he were here, he **could** not wait.
He **might** be useful, though hard to manage.

412. **Should**, the past tense of *shall*, is sometimes used with a present meaning to denote a duty or obligation; as in —

You **should** do as you are bidden. [See § 445.]

413. **Potential phrases denote permission, power, obligation, or necessity. They are formed by using the auxiliaries may, can, must, might, could, would, or should, with the root infinitive.**

Exercise 192. — Using the infinitive of each of the following words, **make sentences containing potential phrases**, and tell whether they denote *permission, power, obligation*, etc. :

Speak; borne; broken; chid; drew; feel; sat; froze; slain; shod; smote; swung; swept; thrust; raised; rose.

Conjugation of the Irregular Verb *Give*

414. Below will be found the common inflected and phrase forms of the verb *give* in the various modes and tenses.

The first column contains the singular, and the second column the plural forms. The figures 1, 2, 3, indicate the person. The solemn forms with *Thou* as subject will be found elsewhere.

Principal Parts. — *Present*, give; *Past*, gave; *Perfect Participle*, given.

Indicative Mode

Present:	1. I 2. You 3. He	give gives	1. We 2. You 3. They	give
Past:	1. I 2. You 3. He	gave	1. We 2. You 3. They	gave
Future:	1. I 2. You 3. He	shall give will give	1. We 2. You 3. They	shall give will give

Present Perfect:	1. I 2. You 3. He	have given has given	1. We 2. You 3. They	have given
Past Perfect:	1. I 2. You 3. He	had given	1. We 2. You 3. They	had given
Future Perfect:	1. I shall have given 2. You 3. He	will have given	1. We shall have given 2. You 3. They	will have given

Subjunctive Mode

Present:	1. (If) I 2. (If) thou 3. (If) he	give	1. (If) we 2. (If) you 3. (If) they	give
Past:	1. (If) I 2. (If) thou 3. (If) he	gave	1. (If) we 2. (If) you 3. (If) they	gave

Imperative Mode

Present give, give

Infinitive: *Present*, (to) give; *Perfect*, to have given

Gerund: *Present*, giving; *Perfect*, having given

Participles: *Perfect*, given; *Present Perfect*, having given.

In a similar way conjugate the verbs *drive, make, write, drink, lay, lie, find.*

Conjugation of the Irregular Verb *Be*

415. The verb *be* not only keeps many of the old forms, but is really made up of three different verbs — the infinitives and participles *be, being, been,* from one root; the present tense, *am, are,* etc., from another; and the past *was, were,* from a third. Its inflected and phrase forms are as follows:

Indicative Mode

Principal Parts: *Present,* be. *Past,* was. *Perfect Participle,* been.

Present:	I am You are He is	We You They } are
Past:	I was You were He was	We You They } were
Future:	I shall be You He } will be	We shall be You They } will be
Present Perfect:	I You He has } have been	We You They } have been
Past Perfect:	I You He } had been	We You They } had been
Future Perfect:	I shall You He will } have been	We shall You They will } have been

Subjunctive Mode

Present:	(If) I (If) **you** (If) **he** } be	(If) we (If) you (If) they } be
Past:	(If) I (If) **you** (If) **he** } were	(If) we (If) you (If) they } were

Imperative Mode: *Present:* be (thou or you), be (ye or you)

Infinitives: *Present,* (to) be; *Perfect,* to have been

Gerunds: *Present,* being; *Perfect,* having been

Participles:

Present: being
Past: been
Present Perfect: having been

Exercise 193. — 1. Fill the blanks with the proper *present* indicative forms of **be.**

I —— well.	We —— well.	She —— well.
Thou —— well.	You —— well.	One —— well.
He —— well.	They —— well.	Some —— well.

2. Fill the blanks with the proper *past* indicative forms of **be.**

I —— absent.	We —— absent.	The king —— present.
You —— absent.	They —— absent.	The princes —— present.
She —— absent.	Roy —— present.	Many —— present.
She —— absent.	Boys —— present.	Thou —— present.

3. Fill the blanks with present and past *subjunctive* forms of *be.* Use *if.*

4. Emphatic Verb Phrases

416. *Do* **as an Auxiliary.** — Instead of the simple present or past *He tries, I tried, Try,* we may say more emphatically —

He **does** try,	I **did** try,	**Do** try,
They **do** try,	You **did** try,	

using the verb *do,* and the infinitive *try* as the object of *do.*

Here *do* seems to have lost its ordinary meaning, *perform,* and serves only as an auxiliary to make an *emphatic* form of the verb *try.*

417. When we ask or deny, as in **interrogative** or **negative** sentences, these phrases are almost always used instead of the simple forms. Thus, we usually say —

Does he try? **Did** I try? He **does** not try. I **did** not try. (Not *Tries he? Tried I? He tried not,* etc.)

Exercise 194. — Change the following expressions to the **emphatic,** the **negative,** and the **interrogative** forms:

1. They learn. 2. We make hats. 3. They settled the country. 4. The plan works well. 5. Their journey ended. 6. He had courage. 7. Time brings changes. 8. We drew the sword.

5. Progressive Verb Phrases

418. *Be* as an Auxiliary. — To express what is customary or habitual, we use the simpler forms of the verb; as —

She **paints,** He **studied** law, They **will preach;**

but to represent an action as *continuing* or actually *in progress*, we use still another form of phrase. Thus:

She **is painting.** He **was studying** law. They **will be preaching.**

Here the verb *be* has for its complement not an ordinary adjective, but the imperfect or active participle of the verb, and the two together make what is called a **Progressive** phrase.

419. A Progressive verb phrase represents an action as continuing or in progress.

It is formed by using the active participle with the proper tense of the verb *be*.

Exercise 195. — Change these verbs to **progressive** verb phrases:

Goes; went; has gone; will go; had gone; will have gone; dye; must go; may rise; lies; lays; can sit; will wait; walked; could see; drew; shall fix; fought; had done; may have seen.

6. Passive Verb Phrases, or Verbs in the Passive Voice

Exercise 196. — 1. In each sentence tell the word that shows who or what *performs* the action. 2. Tell the word that shows who or what *receives* the action, or is affected by it. 3. Select each subject that represents the *actor*. 4. Select those subjects that name the *receiver* of the action. 5. What difference do you notice in the *meaning* of each two sentences? 6. In their *form?*

1. { The breeze *fills* the sails.
   { The sails **are filled** by the breeze.

2. { We *celebrated* the victory.
   { The victory **was celebrated** by us.

3. { Messengers *will carry* the news.
   { The news **will be carried** by messengers.
4. { The government *should protect* the Indians.
   { The Indians **should be protected** by the government.
5. { Congress *has enacted* a new tariff law.
   { A new tariff law **has been enacted** by Congress.

420. In our study of transitive verbs we have found that they represent some person or thing as **acting upon** some other person or thing. As —

The **sergeant** *carries* the **flag.**
Dewey *captured* **Manila.**
The **angler** *has caught* the **trout.**

In these sentences the subject names the *actor*, and the object names the thing *acted* upon.

421. Without changing the *meaning* of such sentences at all we may change their *form* by making the *receiver* of the action the *subject* of the verb, while the *actor* appears in a prepositional phrase. Thus:

The **flag** *was carried* [by the sergeant].
Manila *was captured* [by Dewey].
The **trout** *has been caught* [by the angler].

422: When the subject of a transitive verb names the actor, the verb is said to be **active** or in the **active voice**, but when the subject names the *one acted upon* the verb is said to be **passive** or in the **passive voice.**

Let us see how a verb in the passive voice differs from one in the active voice.

423. We know that the perfect participle of transitive verbs may have a passive meaning; as —

driven, spoken, hired;

and if we use this participle as an adjective complement with different tenses of the verb *be*, as in —

I am driven, It **was spoken,** You **will be hired** —

we form verb phrases which represent the subject not as *acting*, but as *acted upon*, and which are, therefore, called **passive** verb phrases, and the verbs are in the **passive voice.**

424. A transitive verb in the passive voice — or a passive verb phrase — is one that represents its subject as receiving the action.

It is formed by using a passive participle with any tense of the verb *be*.

The active form brings the *actor* into prominence; the passive, the *receiver* of the action. The passive form is generally used when the actor cannot or need not be named. As —

The watch was stolen. Lost opportunities cannot be regained.

425. In this way any kind of verb phrases may be made passive. Thus:

I may see, or **I may be seen.**
They might have stopped, or They might have **been stopped.**

Even progressive phrases are sometimes found in the passive form. As in —

The prisoner **was being tried** for theft.
The question **is being** very thoroughly **discussed.**

"The house *is being built*," may be awkward, but it is allowable and exact, and surely better than "in process of construction."

426. Complements of Passive Phrases. — Some transitive verbs, as we know, take both an object and an objective complement. When such verbs are used in the passive voice the object of the active form becomes the subject, while the objective complement remains and becomes the **subjective** complement of the passive verb phrase. Thus:

Love makes labor ⟨light⟩ = Labor is made light [by love].
The porter found the safe ⟨open⟩ = The safe was found open [by the porter].
They chose him ⟨captain⟩ = He was chosen captain [by them].

427. When transitive verbs that take both a direct and an indirect object are made passive, either object may become the subject of the passive verb phrase, while the other is retained as an object. It is called the **retained** object, either direct or indirect. Thus:

He gave [me] money = { Money was given [me] [by him]. / I was given money [by him]. }

I forgave [him] his fault = { His fault was forgiven [him] [by me]. / He was forgiven his fault [by me]. }

428. A few intransitive verbs, that, in the active form, are followed by *a preposition and its object*, are sometimes made passive. In such cases the preposition, as an adverbial modifier, becomes almost a part of the verb, and its former object becomes the subject of the passive phrase. [See § 521]. Thus:

No one **had thought of** this.	This **had** not **been thought of.**
Our friends **laughed at** us.	We **were laughed at** by them.

Exercise 197. — Change each verb in these sentences into either the passive or the active form, without changing the meaning:

1. The engine draws the train. 2. The story has been told by several writers. 3. England taxed the colonies unjustly. 4. Louisiana was sold by France in 1803. 5. Marco Polo tells us strange stories. 6. The Mississippi was discovered by De Soto in 1541. 7. The prudent never waste time nor money. 8. The mortgage will be foreclosed by the executor. 9. Fire has destroyed the poor man's house. 10. Gold is purchased for coinage by the government. 11. Every patriot will defend the flag. 12. Friendship should be strengthened by adversity. 13. Would he believe the truth? 14. Paris had been besieged by the Prussians in 1871. 15. Heaven is not mounted to on wings of dreams. 16. Somebody will probably attend to the matter. 17. Will any one interfere with his rights? 18. The sentinel was found asleep at his post.

Conjugation of Progressive and Passive Verb Phrases

429. We have seen that **progressive** verb phrases are formed by adding *active* participles — *driving, doing, fighting* — to the various tenses of *be*, and that **passive** phrases are formed by adding *passive* participles — *driven, done, fought* — to the same forms of *be*. Since the full conjugation of *be* has been given on page 166, progressive and passive phrases can easily be formed by adding the proper participle, as in the following:

Principal Parts: *Present,* drive. *Past,* drove. *Perfect Part.,* driven.

Indicative Mode

Present: *am, is, are* driving — driven.
Past: *was, were,* driving — driven.
Future: *shall,* or *will be* driving — driven.
Present Perfect: *has* or *have been* driving — driven.
Past Perfect: *had been* driving — driven.
Future Perfect: *shall,* or *will have been* driving — driven.

Potential Phrases:

Present: *may, can, must be* driving — driven.
Past: *might, could, would, should be* driving — driven.
Present Perfect: *may, can, must have been* driving — driven.
Past Perfect: *might, could, would, should have been* driving — driven.

Subjunctive Mode

Present: *be* driving — driven.
Past: *were* driving — driven.

Infinitives

Simple: (to) *be* driving — driven.
Perfect: to *have been* driving — driven.

Gerunds

Simple: *being* driving — driven.
Perfect: *having been* driving — driven.

Participles

Pres. Perf. Passive: *having been* driven.
Prog. Active: *having been* driving.
Prog. Passive: *being* driven.

430. Conjugation of Solemn Forms. — These forms are used in sacred writings and in prayer with the subject *Thou*. In a verb phrase the first auxiliary only has the personal ending. Forms in *eth* are used with a third-singular subject in the indicative present only.

The verb *be,* *Indicative.* Thou art, wast or wert, hast been, hadst been, shalt or wilt be, mayst or mayest, or canst be, mightest, couldst, wouldst, or shouldst be. *Subjunctive.* If thou wert.

Other verbs. Thou dost know. Thou doest well. Thou knowest, knewest, hast known. Thou lovest, lovedst, hast loved, etc.

He doth ask. He doeth. He knoweth, loveth.

Exercise 198. — 1. Arrange in columns (1) **potential phrases**; (2) **progressive phrases**; (3) **passive phrases**; (4) **emphatic phrases**; (5) **s-forms**; (6) **present perfect phrases**; (7) **past perfect phrases.**

Go; goes; went; have gone; has gone; will go; do go; did go; does go; are lost; are losing; was; were; were he; may be; may be seen; can be singing; must sew; could sew; sews; has done; has been done; have been doing; might be; could be heard.

Might be hearing; should write; should be written; should have been writing; is growing; was growing; can have been growing; would sign; had been; had brought; had been brought.

Stands; stood; stand; did stand; was standing; will come; shall be coming; will have lost; will be lost; has been lost; to be; is written; to be made; making; having made; being worn; to have been wearing; has had; had had; did do; does do; would have had.

2. Give the **composition** of each phrase; *i.e.*, tell of what verb forms it is composed. Thus:

"Would have been broken" is made up of the past *would*, the infinitive *have*, the perfect participle *been*, and the passive participle *broken*.

Exercise 199. — **Write** the following-named forms of *bring, lay, tread, wear, obey, come, write, do, buy, have:*

1. Present indicative progressive, third-singular. 2. Past indicative passive. 3. Future indicative. 4. Future indicative passive. 5. Pres-

ent perfect indicative progressive, third-singular. 6. Past perfect potential passive. 7. Present indicative emphatic. 8. Past potential passive. 9. Present perfect indicative passive. 10. Present indicative (with subject "he"). 11. Present subjunctive (with "he" for subject).

431. How to Parse a Verb. — A verb or verb phrase is parsed by telling its 1. *tense;* 2. *mode;* (3. *phrase-form*); 4. *kind;* 5. *principal parts;* (6. *number-form*, if peculiar); and 7. *subject.*

NOTE. — This order of statement, though not material, is a convenient one, since it presents the facts as they appear in the successive elements of a verb phrase.

432. Forms for Parsing. — [*To be varied at the option of the teacher.*]

1. [[When] (my) ship comes [in]] I shall be rich.
2. He spoke [loud] [that they might hear him].
3. [After we had been drifting [three days]] (a) sail was seen.

comes is the *present indicative* of the *complete* verb "come, came, come"; *s-form* with the third-singular *subject* **ship.**

shall be is the *future indicative* of the *copulative* verb "be, was, been"; its *subject* is **I.**

spoke is the *past indicative* of the *complete* verb "speak, spoke, spoken"; its *subject* is **he.**

might hear is a *past potential* * of the *transitive* verb "hear, heard, heard"; its *subject* is **they.**

had been drifting is the *past perfect indicative progressive* of the *complete* verb "drift, drifted, drifted"; its *subject* is **we.**

was seen is a *past indicative passive* verb phrase formed from the *transitive* verb "see, saw, seen"; **was** is used with the *third-singular* subject **sail.**

* Potential phrases have sometimes a subjunctive and sometimes an indicative meaning; but it is not expected that all learners will discriminate between the two uses. See Appendix I.

Exercise 200. — Parse the verbs in these sentences.

1. Where shall you be?
2. It cannot be found.
3. How busy you are.
4. Go quickly to the rear.
5. Be careful how you speak.
6. The sun might have risen.
7. No one has yet seen it.
8. Would he go if he were I?
9. Were not the drums beating?
10. You should have gone at once.
11. The mill can never grind again with the water that is past.
12. We might have been called.
13. Nothing must be assumed.
14. The train will have gone before he arrives.
15. Could he have fled alone?
16. Is it rising now?
17. Did he write at your bidding?
18. Do not be discouraged by trifles.
19. Come ye in peace, or come ye in war?
20. Ask, and it shall be given you.
21. Could it not have been found sooner?
22. I wish I were sailing the seas.
23. Have you had enough?
24. How do you do this morning?
25. He had had the money for a week.
26. I am expecting to see him soon.
27. Take heed lest he fall.
28. If he were going he would take it.
29. When he next doth ride abroad, May I be there to see.
30. You could not have been listening, or you would have heard me.
31. There never has been another such man.
32. Might it not have been done?

Exercise 201. — If additional exercise is needed the verbs found on pages 41 and 71 may be parsed.

433. VERBS: SUMMARY

Kinds

Complete:
- Intransitive (not copulative).
- Most Passive Phrases.

Incomplete:
- Copulative.
- Transitive in Active Voice.
- Passive Phrases with Subjective Complement (§ 426).
- Passive Phrases with retained object (§ 427).

Forms

Tenses		Modes	Phrase-Forms	Prin. Parts
Present	Present Perfect	Indicative	Potential	Present
Past	Past Perfect	Subjunctive	Emphatic	Past
Future	Future Perfect	Imperative	Progressive	Perf. Part
			Passive	

Construction

Form for Subject { (Common form) has for its subject ——. / s-form / solemn (**eth**) form } with third-singular subject ——. / solemn (**est**) form with second-singular subject **thou.**

E. DIRECTIONS FOR THE USE OF VERB FORMS

434. Wrong forms of the verb are very common. It is a prominent word, inflected more than any other part of speech, and hence leads one who is careless to make many conspicuous blunders.

435. Some of the worst mistakes are made by substituting one of the principal parts for another.

For example: Having as principal parts, *pres.* **do**, *past* **did**, *perf. part.* **done**, we should say in stating a past fact, "He **did** the work," not "He **done** the work"; but in making a present perfect phrase we should say, "He has **done** the work," not "He has **did** the work."

436. Principal Parts Confused. — I. *Do not use the perfect participle as a substitute for the past tense.*

II. *Never use the past tense instead of a perfect participle in making a verb phrase.*

Exercise 202. — Select the proper form of the verbs, and give the reason for your choice.

1. Who (did, done) it? 2. Soon it had (sank, sunk) to rise no more. 3. The pears were all (shook, shaken) off by the wind. 4. This lace was

(wove, woven) in France. 5. He (ran, run) all the way. 6. They (come, came) in late yesterday. 7. He soon (begun, began) to be weary. 8. Charles Jones (swum, swam) across the river. 9. I (saw, seen) that yours was wrong. 10. He has (risen, rose) from poverty to wealth. 11. Our club was never (beat, beaten) before. 12. If I had been (showed, shown) I should know how to do it. 13. She had (tore, torn) it off.

14. I (seen, saw) him yesterday. 15. You might have (chose, chosen) something better. 16. Our friends (come, came) last week. 17. You must do as you are (bid, bade, bidden). 18. Some (drank, drunk) too much. 19. What evil has (befallen, befell) them? 20. She may have (went, gone) to Europe. 21. Have you ever (sang, sung) this tune? 22. Have they (drank, drunk) it all? 23. Have they (broke, broken) out the roads yet?

Exercise 203. — Give the **principal parts** of the verb; tell which should be used, and why.

1. Have you never (*shrink*) from your duty? 2. She may have been (*smite*) down. 3. His signature was (*write*) indistinctly. 4. It cannot have been (*steal*). 5. You might have (*take*) more pains. 6. David (*sling*) the stone, and (*smite*) him on the forehead. 7. They have (*strive*) to do their best. 8. Intemperance has (*slay*) its thousands. 9. My directions were (*forget*). 10. The pond was (*freeze*) over. 11. Some one has (*break*) my pen.

437. Some verbs have somewhat similar forms that are liable to be confounded. Especial care must be taken in using them.

438. Verbs Confused. — *Do not use one verb for another of similar form but of different meaning.*

Exercise 204. — 1. **Learn the principal parts** of these verbs, and their meaning:

Present	Past	Active Part.	Perfect Part.
lie (rest)	**lay** (rested)	**lying** (resting)	**lain** (rested)
lay (place)	**laid** (placed)	**laying** (placing)	**laid** (placed)
sit (rest)	**sat** (rested)	**sitting** (resting)	**sat** (rested)
set (place)	**set** (placed)	**setting** (placing)	**set** (placed)

2. Fill the blanks with the appropriate form of **lie** or **lay,** and its meaning. Thus:

"I *laid* (or placed) it on the table, and there it *lies* (or rests).

1. Where did you —— it? 2. How long has it —— there? 3. At what wharf does your yacht ——? 4. It —— on the grass yesterday. 5. It has —— there for years. 6. They have —— the corner-stone. 7. He —— in bed till nine o'clock. 8. She has been —— there all day. 9. The ship —— to during the storm. 10. A thousand miles of pipe have been ——.

11. She now —— sleeping quietly. 12. We —— over two days in Montreal. 13. —— down, Bruno! 14. He —— it carefully away in his safe, and there it has —— ever since. 15. —— it on the table, and let it —— there. 16. They have been —— new tracks. 17. Has it been —— there long? 18. He was —— by the brook. 19. The body —— in state three days. 20. The city —— on the left bank.

3. Fill the following blanks with the appropriate form of **sit** or **set,** and its meaning:

1. Come into the —— -room. 2. The mother-bird is —— in her nest. 3. We —— out twelve elms last arbor-day. 4. Where did he ——? 5. I —— it on the shelf, and there it —— now. 6. Won't you —— here? 7. He —— motionless for an hour. 8. I have been —— in the arbor while you have been —— out your plants. 9. The court will —— in June. 10. Was he —— there then?

439. Improper Forms. — *Watch your speech and writing for improper verb forms;* as, " drawed " for " drew."

Exercise 205. — 1. **Select the proper form of the verb** for each of these sentences:

1. He has (*overdraw*) his account. 2. He (*throw*) his adversary yesterday. 3. His will had been (*break*). 4. Have you (*heat*) the water? 5. Has the brook ever (*overflow*) its banks? 6. I (*know*) you would (*lay, lie*) down. 7. When was the horse (*shoe*) last? 8. He (*ain't, isn't*) as wise as he appears. 9. The moon has (*light*) us on our way. 10. Your coat doesn't (*set, sit, fit*) well.

2. Distinguish between (1) **born** and **borne**, (2) **durst** and **dared**, (3) **hung** and **hanged**, (4) **may** and **can**, (5) **learn** and **teach**, and use the correct form in the following blanks:

1. He was —— in Ohio. He was —— to his grave by his friends. 2. The king —— not sign the warrant. We —— them to leap the brook. 3. Nathan Hale was —— as a spy. Have the pictures been securely ——? 4. —— I shut the window. —— you discover the reason? 5. —— me to sew. My mother —— me long ago.

440. Shall or will. — In the conjugation of the future tenses in § 400, *shall* is used in the first person, and *will* in the second and third persons simply as auxiliaries to **predict** future action or condition. Thus we say —

I **shall** return Monday.
I **shall** grow old, of course.
You **will** lose your train.
You **will** succeed in time.
He **will** find the journey long.
My friend **will** be disappointed.
We **shall** fail.
We **shall** all die.
You **will** injure yourselves.
You **will** lose your way.
They **will** be tired.
Carriages **will** be furnished.

441. I. *Simply* to **foretell** *that something is going to happen use* **shall** *with* **I,** *or* **we,** *and* **will** *with other subjects.*

442. *Will* is used with *I* or *we,* and *shall* with other subjects, to **promise,** or to show the **intention** or **determination** of the speaker, who controls the action whoever may perform it. Thus:

I **will** pay the bill promptly.
I **will** be obeyed.
You **shall** go.
He **shall** be detained.
We **will** help you.
We **will** refund the money.
You **shall** vacate the house at once.
They **shall** not escape.

The oft-quoted remark of the drowning Frenchman, "I *will* drown! I *will* drown! Nobody *shall* help me!" illustrates the distinction in the use of *shall* and *will.* The poor fellow unwittingly expressed his determination to drown, and warned off his rescuers, instead of saying that he was about to drown and that no one was about to help him.

443. II. *To* **promise,** *or to* **express a determination** *of the speaker, use* **will** *with* I *or* we, *and* **shall** *with other subjects.*

Exercise 206. — Tell whether the auxiliary is used **to promise, to show determination,** or simply **to foretell:**

1. I shall enter college next year. 2. I will have an education. 3. My friends will help me. 4. Nothing shall stand in my way. 5. I shall answer his letter tomorrow. 6. The letter shall be answered at once. 7. I will walk; no one shall carry me. 8. I shall walk; no one will carry me. 9. You shall go with me if you wish. 10. We will assist you at any time. 11. I shall be punished. He shall be punished. 12. Shall you attend the fair? Will you go with me? 13. I will call on you today, and I shall then say good-bye. 14. Though he slay me, yet will I trust in him. 15. It shall be as you will.

444. III. **In questions** *use the same auxiliary that would be correctly used in the reply.* Thus:

If we wish to exact a *promise*, like "I *will* wait" or "We *will* go, " we ask "**Will** you wait or go?" But if we wish one to predict a *future action* by saying, "I *shall* go," we must ask, "**Shall** you go?"

EXCEPTION. — **Will** *is never used in a question with* I *or* we *as subject.* Thus we say —

"**Shall** I find you there?" not "**Will** I," etc.
"**Shall** we come early?" not "**Will** we," etc.

445. **Should** and **would** *follow the same rules as* shall *and* will. Thus:

I **should** not need your help, and, if I did, I **would** not ask it.

I asked him whether he **should** go or stay ("*Shall* you go or stay?"), and he said he **should** stay ("I *shall* stay").

He said that he **would** go ("I *will* go").

He feared lest he **should** fall ("I *shall* fall").

Exercise 207. — Fill each blank with a form of **shall** or **will**, giving the rule that guides you.

1. We —— expect to hear from you. 2. If I do not study, I —— grow up in ignorance. 3. They —— receive the money tomorrow. 4. I was afraid that I —— lose my position. 5. We —— be pleased to hear that he —— soon return. 6. If you telegraph, we —— come at once. 7. When —— we call? When —— you go with me? 8. I fear that we —— have unpleasant weather. 9. Where —— you be next week? 10. I —— like to go to town, and —— go if I could. 11. I —— be delighted if you —— call. 12. I —— have been ill if I had gone. 13. —— you do as he bids you? —— you do what I ask? 14. —— you have sold it for that price? 15. I —— have asked for more time.

446. Subjunctive forms are peculiar only —

(1) In always omitting the endings *s, st, eth,* of the corresponding indicative;

(2) In that **be** is used in place of *am, art, is,* or *are,* and **were** in place of *was.**

447. Present Subjunctive forms are now used chiefly in clauses expressing a supposition or a condition to be decided in the future As —

If he **ask** a pardon, shall you grant it?
If he **go,** he will not be missed.

In such clauses, indicative forms are also used by good writers and speakers. [See Appendix I.]

448. Past Subjunctive *forms must be used in clauses expressing a supposition or a wish which is contrary to the fact.* As in —

If he **were** ready (but he is not), he could go.
I wish I **were** well (but I am not).

* *Wert* takes the place of *wast* in the solemn form.

Indicative forms must be used to express what is *assumed as a fact.* As in—

If he **intends** to go, he should go now.
Though he **is** far from well, he is industrious.
If he **was poor,** he was honest.

Exercise 208. — Fill the blank with what seems **the appropriate form of the verb "be,"** and give the reason for your choice.

1. What would she say if she —— asked? 2. I wish I —— ten years younger. 3. If the book —— in the library, you may take it. 4. If the book —— in the library, you might take it. 5. O that it —— possible! 6. If he —— needy, we should help him. 7. Though he —— needy, he will get no help. 8. If he —— insane, his actions do not show it. 9. If I —— to be defeated, I should still persevere. 10. It would be a great disgrace if he —— to fail. 11. I will come tomorrow if the weather —— fine. 12. I will call upon him if he —— now at home. 13. Take care lest it —— injured.

DIRECTIONS FOR THE USE OF THE S-FORM OF VERBS

449. We have learned that the **s-form** of verbs is never used except in the present tenses of the indicative mode, with subjects that in meaning are of the third person and of the singular number.

450. General Rule. — *A third-singular subject, and no other, requires the* **s-form** *of the verb.*

It will be understood that this rule can apply only to the present indicative tenses.

451. Was. — *Use* was *with* I *or a third-singular subject, but never with* you *or any plural subject.*

Exercise 209. — **Choose the correct form** in the following sentences, and justify your choice. Thus:

"He (don't, doesn't) try." The third-singular subject "he" requires *does,* the s-form of the verb *do.* Say "He *doesn't* try."

"There (has, have) never been many of that kind." "Many" is not a third-singular subject, hence the s-form *has* would be improper. The sentence should read, "There never *have* been many," etc. Rule: A third-singular subject, and *no other*, requires the s-form of the verb.

1. Neither of them (were, was) correct. 2. From that source (comes, come) all our troubles. 3. It (don't, doesn't) take long to cross the ocean. 4. (Was, were) you at the concert last night? 5. My scissors (needs, need) sharpening. 6. The memoranda (is, are) lost. 7. There (has, have) been many disappointments on this trip. 8. The fragrance of roses (fill, fills) the air. 9. Each of the states (have, has) two senators. 10. Either of those reasons (are, is) sufficient. 11. Harder times never (were, was) seen.

12. The six days' work (was, were) ended. 13. What (has, have) become of your friends? 14. The meaning of these words (are, is) easily found. 15. Which of these fractions (are, is) the larger? 16. Everybody (have, has) offered us congratulations. 17. There (is, are) a few more to be had. 18. There (has, have) been several lost on these rocks.

452. It is the meaning rather than the form of a subject that affects the form of the verb. For example, in the sentence —

The Three Clerks was written by Anthony Trollope,

the subject is singular in meaning, for it names a single book.

453. 1. Collective nouns are generally singular in meaning. Thus:

The **jury** renders its verdict. Our **regiment** loses its colonel.

Here we refer to the collection as a *whole* or *unit*, and the s-form of the verb is required.

2. Sometimes, however, we refer to actions of the *individuals* in the collection. Thus:

The jury **have** returned to **their** homes.
The regiment **hold** different opinions of him.

Here the meaning is plural, and the s-form of the verb would be wrong.

454. Collective Subjects *require the* s-*form of the verb only in referring to the collection as a unit.*

Exercise 210. — Tell which form of the verb should be used here, and give your reason:

1. The army (was, were) nearly annihilated. 2. The band (has, have) brought (its, their) instruments. 3. (Is, are) your family well? 4. The committee (was, were) unanimous in the choice. 5. The fleet (was, were) separated. 6. The whole herd ran into the sea and (was, were) drowned. 7. Our club (hold, holds) (its, their) meetings every month. 8. (Have, has) the company broken up? 9. A large number (was, were) dissatisfied. 10. The number present (were, was) large. 11. The United States (is, are) a powerful nation.

CONNECTED SUBJECTS

455. Singular expressions joined by **and** are generally taken together as a plural subject. Thus:

He and I **are** going. *Industry and perseverance* **win** success.
Making laws and enforcing them **are** very different.

456. Subjects joined by *and.* — *Use the* s-*form of the verb with singular subjects connected by* **and** — *only*

(1) *When they name the same person or thing; or*
(2) *When they are preceded by* **each, every, many a,** *or* **no.**

For example —

(1) My *friend and helper* **has** deserted me.
(1) A *wheel and axle* **transmits** the power.
(2) *Each* lady and gentleman **has** received a copy.
(2) *Every* city and town **was** visited.

457. Subjects joined by *or* **or** *nor. Use the* s-*form of the verb with third-singular subjects connected by* **or** *or* **nor.** *Thus:*

One *or* the other **visits** London annually.
Neither money *nor* influence **was** needed.

Exercise 211. — Select the proper form of the verb, and justify your selection. Thus:

"Neither hope nor courage *remains.*" The s-form is here required, for the subject consists of two singular nouns, *hope* and *courage*, which are joined by *nor*, and hence are to be taken separately.

"Both hope and courage *are* needed." The s-form of the verb would be wrong, for the two nouns *hope* and *courage* joined by *and* make a plural subject.

"Every boy and girl *has* recited." The connected nouns *boy* and *girl* make a third-singular subject, for they are preceded by the adjective *every*, and so are to be taken separately. Hence the s-form of the verb is required.

1. In every muscle there (is, are) strength and vigor. 2. Every beggar and spendthrift (receive, receives) his aid. 3. Neither father nor mother (was, were) living. 4. Every word and even every thought (is, are) known. 5. Each day and hour (bring, brings) (its, their) duties. 6. The rise and fall of the tide (are, is) to be explained. 7. The butcher and the baker (has, have) sent in (his, their) (bill or bills). 8. There (is, are) fighting and bloodshed on the frontier. 9. A thousand dollars (are, is) too much to pay. 10. There (were, was) neither anger nor impatience in his tone. 11. To seem and to be (is, are) not always the same. 12. A beautiful poem or picture (has, have) a refining influence. 13. Whether to advance or to retreat (were, was) the question. 14. No pains and no expense (have, has) been spared. 15. Each hour, dark fraud or open rapine or protected murder (cry, cries) out against them. 16. Every leaf and flower (has, have) faded. 17. His subject and mine (was, were) the same. 18. There (sleeps, sleep) the soldier, statesman, and martyr. 19. Wave after wave (come, comes) rolling in. 20. Neither oil nor alcohol (are, is) as heavy as water.

458. *When subjects connected by* **or** *or* **nor** *differ in person or number, the one nearest the verb generally controls its form.* Thus:

Neither she nor **I am** invited. Either you or **he knows** it.
Are you or he going? Neither he nor his **children were** saved.

Expressions like these are awkward, and should generally be avoided. Thus:

She is not invited, nor am I.

459. *Of two subjects connected by* **as well as** *the first one controls the form of the verb that is expressed, and the second that of a verb understood.* Thus:

The **captain**, as well as the crew, **was** lost.
The **crew**, as well as the captain, **were** sick.

460. *Of two subjects, one affirmative and the other negative, the* **affirmative** *one controls the form of the verb expressed, and the* **negative** *one that of a verb understood.* Thus:

Not I but **he** is the one to go. Not he but **I am** going. The **warriors**, but not the chief, **were** present. Not only this habit, but all similar **ones, are** pernicious.

461. *As a* **relative pronoun** *has no form for number or person, the sense of the antecedent controls the form of the verb.* Thus:

I *that* **speak** unto you am he. O **Thou** *who* **changest not!**

Our **Father** *who* **art** in heaven.

Exercise 212. — **Select the proper form** of the verb, and give the rule that guides you.

1. Equity, as well as justice, (demand, demands) it.
2. One or more persons (was, were) injured.
3. His painting was one of the best that (was, were) exhibited.
4. Not the causes, but the result, (were, was) stated.
5. You or he (are, is) to go.
6. Either he or I (is, am) to go.
7. No sound but that of their own voices (were, was) heard.
8. The army (were, was) led into the defile.
9. Each plant and tree (produce, produces) others of (its, their) kind.
10. This man with his sons (were, was) founders of a nation.
11. He is one of the wisest men that (has, have) ever lived.
12. He comes; nor want nor cold his course (delay, delays).
13. His wealth and not his talents (attract, attracts) attention.
14. I (would, should) like to know whose book this is.

CHAPTER X

Infinitives and Participles

I. Infinitives

462. **Infinitives** are in their nature partly nouns and partly verbs. First, being names (of actions, etc.), they are *nouns*, and they have the uses of nouns. Secondly, though they cannot assert, they are like verbs in meaning, and they take the same modifiers or complements. Thus in —

I wish **to drive** my horse slowly,

to drive, like a noun, is the object of "wish"; and, like a verb, it expresses action, has an object, "horse," and is modified by an adverb, "slowly."

463. Nearly every verb has two simple infinitives; as —

(to) drive, driving; (to) run, running;

named from their forms the **Root infinitive** and the **Infinitive in** *ing*.

We shall speak of the root-infinitive briefly as the **infinitive**, and in speaking of the infinitive in **ing** we shall use the briefer word, **gerund**.

464. As verb phrases are used instead of inflected forms, so too, **infinitive phrases** are used instead of the simple forms to express certain changes of meaning.

Thus, like the infinitive, we have:

	Simple Forms	Perfect Forms
	to drive	**to have driven**
Progressive:	**to be driving**	**to have been driving**
Passive:	**to be driven**	**to have been driven**

and like the gerund we have:

	Simple Forms	Perfect Forms
	driving	**having driven**
Progressive:	**(being driving)** *	**having been driving**
Passive:	**(being driven)** †	**having been driven**

[For the use of all these forms as nouns, see § 470.]

465. **To** was formerly used with the infinitive to express various relations, but it has lost its prepositional character, and now generally means nothing of itself, and serves only as a *sign* that the following word is an infinitive.

USES OR CONSTRUCTIONS

466. 1. Either the infinitive or the gerund may be used as (1) **Subject** or (2) **Subjective Complement**; as —

To hesitate now is **to be lost.** **Making** promises is not **keeping** them. **To have given** freely is **to be asked** for more. His **having** once **been crowned** will make him noble.

(*a*) An infinitive may be used as the **real subject** of a verb to explain the anticipative subject *it* (§ 290); as —

It is dangerous **to trifle** with temptation.

467. 2. Either the infinitive or the gerund may be the **Object of a verb**; as —

I enjoy **swimming.** I like **to swim.** I will **swim.**
She prefers **sitting** quietly. She prefers **to sit** quietly.

468. Sometimes the infinitive or the gerund is used as the object of a verb that has also an **indirect** object. Thus:

He taught [all his pupils] to sing, like —

He taught singing [to all his pupils];

* A rare form, as in "punished for *being* out *driving*."
† Also a rare form. [See § 425.]

in which one object names the *persons* who were taught, and the other the *thing* that was taught to them. Either object may be used as subject in the passive form [§ 427]; as —

All his pupils were taught to sing, or —

To sing was taught [to all his pupils].

469. After some verbs the infinitive is used as complement without the *to*. [Compare § 474.]

(1) Sometimes after **dare** and **need**. Thus:

She dared **to meet** them all. They dared not **look** up.
It needs **to be repaired**. You need not **go**.

(2) After **had** (a subjunctive of **have**) with the adjective expressions **as lief, rather, better, best**. Thus, in the sentences —

I had as lief **die**, I had rather **go**,

the meaning is, "I should hold it as desirable or more desirable *to die*, *to go*."

470. 3. Either the infinitive or the gerund may be the **Object of a preposition.** Thus:

We are weary *with* **watching** those men. *From* **having been** king he came at last *to* **being supported** by charity. They were rewarded *for* never **having been captured**. The receiver was accused *of* **having been taking** bribes. We missed the performance *by* **being** out **walking**.

(*a*) The infinitive with *to* is now used only after the prepositions **about, but, except,** and **save**. Thus:

The leader was *about* **to drive off** = *about* **driving off**.
I am *about* **to go** = *about* **going**.
He could do anything *but* **make** money; that is —
He understood everything *but* **making** money.
They will do anything for religion *except* **live** for it.

Exercise 213. — Analyze these sentences, and **parse the infinitives and gerunds.**

1. To be good is to be happy. 2. It is impossible not to grow old. 3. Reading by twilight may injure the sight. 4. It is always best to

tell the truth. 5. It was discouraging not to have been kindly received. 6. Seeming good is not being good. 7. Who would wish to be forgotten? 8. They refused to release the prisoner. 9. I have tried to do justice to everybody. 10. He dislikes being falsely accused. 11. The firm expects to be moving out tomorrow. 12. Do you regret having done no more? 13. We can improve by imitating good examples. 14. They know nothing about its having been written. 15. The dog did everything but speak to him. 16. He promised me to go at once. 17. They dare not accuse him of dishonesty. 18. You need not tell that story again.

471. 4. The infinitive with *to* may be used **Adjectively** like a prepositional phrase. Thus:

Wood **to burn** (for burning). Horses **to let** (for letting).

(The) question (to be decided) is ⟨very⟩ difficult.

(*a*) It is also often used as a predicate adjective; as in —

Such conduct is **to be despised** (is *despicable*).
He appears **to have lost his mind** (appears *insane*).

472. 5. The infinitive with *to*, like a prepositional phrase, may be used **Adverbially** to modify the meaning of a verb, an adjective, or an adverb, by showing the *purpose, cause, respect in which*, etc. Thus:

We *need* the money **to pay** (for paying) the help.
They are *slow* **to depart** (in departing).
It is ripe *enough* **to eat** (for eating).

NOTE. — When used adjectively or adverbially the *infinitive* may generally be replaced by *for* (*in, at, of*, etc.) and *the gerund*. As in —

good **to drink** (*for drinking*); forced **to go** (*into going*);
regret **to hear** (*at hearing*); failed **to come** (*of coming*).

473. 6. The infinitive, of course, cannot be used to make a direct assertion. It is used, however, as an **Indirect Predicate** in

expressions that are nearly equivalent to objective noun clauses. Thus in —

I believed the story to be false

the object of "believed" is obviously not *story*, but the whole expression, *the story to be false*, as if I had said, *I believed that the story was false*. *Story*, the apparent object of the transitive verb, is treated as the subject of the infinitive *to be*, used as an *indirect predicate*. [See § 241.] Other examples are —

We believed *it* **to be true**	= We believed *that it was true.*
I expected *him* **to come**	= I expected *that he would come.*
He asked *me* **to stay**	= He asked *that I should stay.*
Permit *us* **to go**	= Permit *that we should go.*
I thought *him* **to be rich**	= I thought *that he was rich.*

[For "I thought him rich," "I thought him a man of means," see § 333. For "I knew it to be him," see § 310.]

The application of the word *clause* is sometimes extended to include these expressions. They may be called *infinitive* clauses.

NOTE. — This construction is most common after verbs meaning *think perceive, declare, command, permit*, and the like, taking the place of an indirect quotation. But the infinitive after these verbs may sometimes be explained in other ways.

474. After **bid, let, make, see, hear, feel**, and **have** an infinitive is used as indirect predicate without **to** (compare § 469). As in —

Bid { him **remain.** / *that he should remain.*

Let { us **go.** / *that we should go.*

He made { the top **spin.** / *that the top should spin.*

I saw { her **go.** / *that she went.*

We felt { the house **shake.** / *that the house shook.*

Hear the bells **ring.**

Have him **copy** this.

475. The infinitive as indirect predicate is sometimes used with the **object of a preposition.** Thus:

He gave orders *for me* **to go.** It is time *for the work* **to be done.**

476. The infinitive is sometimes used in elliptical constructions. Thus:

> **To tell the truth,** I had quite forgotten you; instead of —
> I must say, in order to tell the truth, etc.

Exercise 214. — **Analyze** the following sentences, and **parse** the infinitives. Suggest an equivalent clause when possible.

1. They declared the child to be dying. 2. I imagined him to be listening. 3. I wished him to succeed. 4. We felt the ground sink. 5. Allow the goods to be sent at once. 6. He has known them to remain until fall. 7. The law requires them to work but ten hours. 8. The jury thought him to be guilty of the crime. 9. I found my friend to have been dead a month. 10. All men consider Washington to have been a patriot. 11. I expected him to go at once. 12. No one believed him to be so cruel. 13. To speak plainly, we held it to be an outrage. 14. I supposed it to have been him. 15. We have ordered the house to be vacated immediately. 16. They forbade us to enter. 17. We shall have them go at once. 18. They made the welkin ring with their hurrahs.

477. The Gerund sometimes loses all its verbal uses, takes adjectives instead of adverbs as modifiers, and becomes merely *an abstract noun* [§ 185]. Thus:

Gerund.	**Taking** human life	} is homicide.
Abstract Noun.	The **taking** of human life	
Gerund.	**Walking** rapidly	} is healthful exercise.
Abstract Noun.	Rapid **walking**	

478. SUMMARY: FORMS FOR PARSING

Forms or Kinds

—— is a { **Simple** / Simple { Pro. / Pass. } / **Perfect** / Perfect { Pro. / Pass. } } Infinitive; of (or from) the Gerund { Com. / Tran. / Cop. } Verb { —— / —— / —— }

Constructions

1. **Subject** of the verb ——.

   (*a*) Explanatory of the anticipative subject **it.**

2. **Subjective complement** of the verb ——.

3. **Object** of the *verb* ——.

4. **Object** of the *preposition* ——.

5. Used **adjectively** { to modify the noun ——. / as subjective complement of the verb ——.

6. Used **adverbially** to modify the { verb ——. / adjective ——. / adverb ——.

7. Used as **indirect predicate** with its subject ——.

Exercise 215. — **Analyze** the following sentences, **parse** the infinitives and gerunds, and explain how each is modified:

1. Strive to keep your appointments. 2. I have but a few more words to say. 3. Cease to do evil; learn to do well. 4. The mere fact of his father's paying the debt is no proof of its being a proper expenditure. 5. It was no easy task to bridge the chasm. 6. To profess and to possess are very different. 7. A grove near by seemed to invite us to rest. 8. Let us prevent his anger by sacrificing ourselves. 9. The law is made to protect the innocent by punishing the guilty. 10. By observing truth we shall secure the respect of others. 11. He saw a star fall from heaven and vanish in utter darkness.

12. Shall you have time to come to bid us farewell? 13. Those only are fit to rule who have learned to obey. 14. Men love to be adored, but hate to be reproved. 15. I have an engagement which prevents my staying longer with you. 16. Their gratitude made them proclaim his goodness. 17. The atrocious crime of being a young man, I shall attempt neither to palliate nor deny. 18. Never leave it to do tomorow if it ought to be done today. 19. I love to note the break of spring that is to clothe the ground. 20. Buying goods on credit has caused him to fail. 21. I saw them come, but did not hear them go. 22. To live soberly and righteously is to be his motto.

23. I dare do all that may become a man;
Who dares do more is none.
24. None knew thee but to love thee.
25. Let not Ambition mock their useful toil.
26. He, glad to hide his tell-tale cheek,
Hied back that glove of mail to seek.
27. Look in his face to meet thy neighbor's soul;
Not on his garments to detect a hole.
28. Sir Launfal flashed forth in his unscarred mail
To seek in all lands for the holy grail.
29. Oft has it been my lot to mark
A proud, conceited, talking spark.
30. There is never a blade or a leaf too mean
To be some happy creature's palace.
31. And fools who came to scoff remained to pray.
32. The very leaves seem to sing on the trees.

33. To be graduated with a college diploma without having entered into the true spirit of college life by bearing an active part in its manifold and stimulating experiences, is to have failed of securing the best results of the course.

DIRECTIONS FOR THE USE OF INFINITIVES

479. *A modifier should not be used between* to *and the rest of the infinitive.*

Say "They meant never *to return*," not "They meant *to* never *return*."

480. This construction, called the "split infinitive," is used to some extent by reputable writers and speakers, but only when there appears to be a decided gain in clearness or force.

481. *Avoid using* to *alone in place of an infinitive.*

Say "He has broken his word and is likely *to break* it again," or "is likely to do so again," not "—— and is likely *to* again." "Do as I told you," not "Do as I told you *to*."

Such expressions, however, as "I do not wish to," "He did not mean to," are used even by careful speakers, and may be regarded as allowable in colloquial speech.

482. *Avoid the use of* **and** *for* **to.**

Say "Come *to* see me," "Try *to* do your best," are better English than "Come *and* see me," "Try *and* do your best;" though they sound rather stiff and formal in ordinary conversation.

483. *Do not use a perfect infinitive after a past tense when the simple form would express the meaning.*

Say "I intended *to go*," not "*to have gone.*"
"We hoped *to be present*," not "*to have been present.*"

Exercise 216. — How should the following sentences be written?

1. We ought to carefully avoid errors.
2. I have done everything that you told me to.
3. We shall try and call upon you next week.
4. He was not obliged to have gone with me.
5. I ought to at least apologize, but I do not mean to.

II. PARTICIPLES

484. Participles are in part *adjectives*, for they modify nouns and pronouns; and they are in part *verbs*, for they take the same modifiers or complements. They do not assert that a thing does or is so and so, but they describe it so as to imply as much.

Thus, in the sentence —

I met a man **driving** his sheep to market,

driving, like an adjective, modifies *man*, and, like a verb, takes an object, *sheep*. It describes the man as acting, without asserting anything of him.

485. Nearly every verb has two simple participles, named from their meaning —

(1) The Present, Imperfect, or **Active** participle; as —

driving, spinning, seeing, walking, sleeping; and —

(2) The Past, Perfect, or **Passive** participle; as —

driven, spun, seen, walked, slept.

486. In place of inflected forms we have four **participle phrases** — one formed with the *imperfect* participle, and three with the *perfect*. Thus:

Active	Passive
Imperfect: **driving.**	*Perfect:* **driven.**
Pres. Perf.: **having driven.**	*Pres. Perf.:* **having been driven.**
Progressive: **having been driving.**	*Progressive:* **being driven.**

487. The **Present** participle always ends in **ing.** It commonly represents an action or a condition as continuing or *imperfect*, and it is almost always *active;* that is, it refers to the *actor*. Thus:

Vessels **carrying** coal are constantly **arriving.**

488. The **Past** participle commonly ends in *en, ed, d,* or *t* (§ 375), and is generally *perfect*, representing an action or a condition as completed. When used alone it is almost always *passive;* that is, it refers, not to the actor, but to *what is acted upon*. Thus:

The army, **beaten** but not **vanquished,** slowly fell back.

USES, OR CONSTRUCTIONS

489. I. The simple participles may be used as **Subjective Complements.** Thus:

The flowers are **gone.** It seems **bewildering.** Night came **stealing on.** The place lay **deserted** for years.

(*a*) Used in this way, the participle often has some adverbial meaning, as in the last two examples.

(*b*) A participle may be used as an **objective complement.** Thus:

Send the ball **rolling.** We shall keep you **occupied.**

490. II. Any participle may be added to a noun or a pronoun **appositively.** In such cases the idea would be more fully expressed —

(1) *By an adjective-clause*; (2) *By an adverb-clause*; (3) *By an independent statement: as* —

1. The books { **bought** for the library / that were bought for the library } are burned.
2. The dog went home { **having lost** his master. / because he had lost his master. }
3. { **Reaching** for the bell-rope, / I reached for the bell-rope, and } I pulled it vigorously.

491. III. Any participle may be used with a noun or a pronoun in the **Absolute construction** (§ 239), the two together having the force of an adverb-clause. Thus:

[*Quiet* **having been restored**], (the) speaker continued.
[When quiet had been restored], (the) speaker continued.

492. SUMMARY: FORMS FOR PARSING

Kinds or Forms

— is an { **Imperfect** / Present Perf. / Progressive. } (Active) / { **Perfect** / Present Perf. / Progressive. } (Passive) } Part.; (or from) of the { Com. / Tran. / Cop. } Verb { — / — / — }

Constructions

1. **Modifies** the noun (or pronoun) ——.
2. **Complement** of the verb —— referring to ——.
3. Used **absolutely** with the noun (or pronoun) ——.

Exercise 217. — **Analyze** these sentences, and **parse** the participles. Change each participle-phrase to a clause when possible.

1. The melancholy days are come. 2. I kept him working. 3. This noise is very confusing. 4. The mountain streams went babbling by. 5. Is not the breeze from the hills refreshing? 6. The fire was set burning by sparks from the engine. 7. The news set all the bells ringing. 8. We found some old planks badly rotted by the weather. 9. The sun goes down, lengthening the shadows.

10. What wonder is it that the girl, lost in such dreamy fancies, did not hear you? 11. Even the special train dispatched at two did not arrive till four. 12. Having often seen him passing, I reasoned that the nest was near. 13. She brought some images stolen from the tombs by Arabs. 14. Once possessed of that fortune, he would wish it to be greater. 15. Punished or unpunished, he will never be conquered. 16. Ten times conquered, still you may be victor.

17. The rain having ceased to fall, we look for a rainbow. 18. The weather permitting, we shall set out tomorrow. 19. And the rocks now slipping from beneath their feet, they still refused to flee. 20. He had everything to fear from poisonous plants, the very sight of dogwood being dangerous. 21. She sat by the window, the sash raised, and the wind blowing a gale. 22. The army was in Belgium, the fleet being in the Channel, as we have said.

Exercise 218. — **Analyze** the following sentences, and **parse** the participles and infinitives. Expand participle phrases to clauses, and tell how the clauses affect the meaning of the main statement.

1. Strive to keep your appointments. 2. I have but a few more words to say. 3. Cease to do evil; learn to do well. 4. The mere fact of his father's paying the debt is no proof of its being a proper expenditure. 5. It was no easy task to bridge the chasm. 6. To profess and to possess are very different. 7. Evil falls on him who goes to seek it. 8. Gone are the birds that were our summer guests.

9. His great work having been well done, he rests at last. 10. He that is good at making excuses is seldom good for anything else. Let him learn the luxury of doing good. 11. Let us prevent his anger by sacrificing ourselves. 12. The law is made to protect the innocent by punishing the guilty. 13. By observing truth we shall secure the re-

spect of others. 14. He saw a star fall from heaven and vanish in utter darkness. 15. It is well to think well; it is divine to act well.

16. England owes her liberties to her having been conquered by the Norman. 17. Eyes raised towards heaven are always beautiful, whatever they may be. 18. Selfishness is making one's self the most important personage in the world. Happiness shared is perfected. 19. Silently to persevere in one's duty is the best answer to calumny. 20. You find yourself refreshed by the presence of cheerful people. Why not make an earnest effort to confer that pleasure on others?

21. Freedom's battle, once begun,
Bequeathed from bleeding sire to son,
Though baffled oft, is ever won.

22. Rest is not quitting the busy career;
Rest is the fitting of self to its sphere.
'Tis loving and serving the highest and best;
'Tis onward! unswerving, and that is true rest.

23. Flashed all their sabres bare,
Flashed as they turned in air,
Sabring the gunners there,
Charging an army, while
All the world wondered.
Plunged in the battery smoke,
Right through the line they broke;
Cossack and Russian
Reeled from the sabre-stroke —
Shattered and sundered.
Then they rode back, but not —
Not the six hundred.

CHAPTER XI

ADVERBS

A. KINDS

493. As to Meaning. — There are many adverbs, and they modify in many different ways; yet they may all be divided, according to their *meaning*, into six principal classes:

1. **Adverbs of Time.** As — *now, then, always, never, next, last.*
2. **Adverbs of Place.** As — *here, there, down, hence, above.*
3. **Adverbs of Manner.** As — *well, ill, thus, so, slowly, wisely, freely.*
4. **Adverbs of Degree.** As — *much, very, almost, too, scarcely, quite.*
5. **Adverbs of Cause.** As — *accordingly, hence, therefore, wherefore.*
6. **Adverbs of Number.** As — *first, next, once, thirdly.*

494. As to Use. — With respect to their *use*, adverbs may be classified as **Simple** when they merely modify, and as **Conjunctive** when they also connect.

Exercise 219. — 1. What is a clause? 2. What kinds of clauses have you studied? 3. What is an adjective clause? 4. What is a noun clause? 5. What is a conjunctive pronoun? 6. A relative pronoun? 7. Give the meaning of *when, where, whence, whither, why, how*, in the form of a phrase.

8. Point out the adjective clauses in the following expressions, and tell what each modifies:

The place on which they stood ——
The time at which they started ——
The town from which they came ——
The land to which they went ——
The reason for which they fled ——

9. What does each prepositional phrase modify? 10. Substitute a single word for each phrase. 11. What does the substituted word modify? 12. To what part of speech does it therefore belong?

495. From the preceding Exercise we see that in **adjective clauses** certain adverbs may be used as the equivalent of a phrase made with a conjunctive pronoun and a preposition. Thus:

This is the house **where** (in which) I was born.

Here, as we know, *which* would connect the clause to *house*, and *in which* would modify *was born* like an adverb; so its equivalent **where** does this double duty of modifying and connecting.

496. Adverbs like *when, where, whence, whither, why, how,* that both modify a verb and at the same time connect a clause, are called **conjunctive** adverbs.

So with *wherewith, whereon, whereby,* and other compounds of *where* and a preposition.

Conjunctive adverbs used in adjective clauses may be called **relative** adverbs.

Exercise 220.

Do you know who it is?	Tell me what he wants.
Do you know where it is?	Tell me when he came.
Do you know why he went?	Tell me whence he came.

1. In the first three sentences, what is the object of "do know"? 2. In the last three sentences, what is the object of "tell"? 3. What kind of clauses may be used as objects? 4. Parse "who" and "what." 5. What two uses has each? 6. How are the other noun clauses connected to the rest of the sentence? 7. To what part of speech do *where, why, when, whence,* belong? 8. What do they modify? 9. What have you learned to call such words when they also serve to connect?

497. From the foregoing illustrations we see that **noun clauses** also may be joined to the rest of the sentence by conjunctive adverbs. Thus:

Show me **how** (= in what way) *the problem is solved.*

Here **how** is a conjunctive adverb; for it takes the place both of the **conjunctive** adjective "what" and of the phrase "in what way," which modifies *is solved* like an **adverb.**

Exercise 221.

1. { Go early. / Go at dawn. / Go [when] day breaks.

2. { He died here. / He died at his birthplace. / He died [where] he was born.

1. In the first group of sentences what tells *when* one is "to go"? 2. What kind of modifiers answer the question "when"? 3. Which of the adverb modifiers in the first group is a clause? Why? 4. In the second group what answers the question "*Where* did he die?" 5. What kind of modifiers tells *where?* 6. Which modifier in the second group is a clause? Analyze it. 7. Like what part of speech is it used? 8. What then will you call it?

498. The preceding Exercise shows us that a clause may do the work of an **adverb** as well as that of an adjective or a noun, by showing *when, where, why,* and so on. Thus:

Go **whenever** (= at whatever time) *he calls.*
Stand still **wherever** (= in whatever place) *you are.*
Fight **as** (= in what way) *a hero fights.*

These clauses, like adverbs, show *when, where,* and *how* one is "to go," "to stand," or "to fight," and are, therefore, called **Adverb clauses.**

They are joined to the verb of the sentence either by conjunctive adverbs or simply by conjunctions.

499. An Adverb clause is one used like an adverb.

500. A Conjunctive adverb is one that modifies some word in a dependent clause and connects the clause to the rest of the sentence.

501. A Simple Adverb is one that modifies without connecting.

Exercise 222. — 1. Select the **clauses**, and tell their kind.

2. Point out the **adverbs**, tell their **kind** and **what they modify.**

1. When does the moon change? 2. Can you tell wherein they differ? 3. Who knows whence he came? 4. Where there is a will there is a way. 5. When the wine is in, the wit is out. 6. I know a bank where the wild thyme grows. 7. Whither I go ye know not. 8. Come as the waves come when navies are stranded. 9. Thou canst not tell whence it cometh nor whither it goeth. 10. He works where the sun never shines. 11. Can you tell why the tides rise and fall? 12. They are found in lands where frost is unknown. 13. How can the stream be turned? 14. Whither thou goest I will go, and where thou lodgest I will lodge. 15. When the pyramids were built is uncertain. 16. I must know when he goes, where he goes, and how he goes. 17. This is the place where Franklin was born.

502. Interrogative Adverbs. — The adverbs *how, when, where, why, whither, whence,* when used to introduce a question, either *direct* or *indirect,* may be called **interrogative** adverbs. As in —

How is it done? **When** did it happen? **Whence** came he?

I wonder *whether* he will come. He asked *where* he should find the book.

503. Modal Adverbs. — Certain adverbs, like **not, surely, certainly, perhaps, indeed,** etc., are sometimes used to show that a statement is made in a positive, or negative, or doubtful way. Thus:

Surely you will not leave me. **Perhaps** he knows no better.

When so used they may be called **modal** adverbs.

504. Responsives. — The words **yes, yea, no, nay,** used as responses to questions, were once used like adverbs. We may call them **responsives;** but, like interjections, they do not properly belong to the parts of speech, being used now in the place of entire sentences. Thus: "Are you coming?" "**Yes;**" (that is, "I am coming").

505. Phrase Adverbs. — Some little phrases, generally used as adverbs, cannot well be separated, and may be called **phrase adverbs.** Among them are the following:

At length; at last; at all; at once; as yet; by far; for good; at least; in general; in vain; in short; of old; of late; from below; etc.

506. There. — The adverb *there* is frequently used without much of its original meaning to introduce a sentence in which the verb comes before its subject. When so used it may be called an **expletive.** Thus:

There were a thousand there.

B. INFLECTION AND USES

507. Comparison. — Adverbs have, in general, no change of form. A few, however, are *compared* like adjectives. Thus:

soon, **sooner, soonest;** often, **oftener, oftenest.**

(*a*) The adverbs *ill, far, little, much, near, well,* are compared irregularly like the adjectives of the same form. [See p. 136.]

508. Many adverbs that are not inflected may have a comparative or superlative meaning added by the use of *more* and *most,* or *less* and *least.* As —

quickly, *more* quickly, *most* quickly; *less* quickly, *least* quickly.

509. An adverb may modify not only a verb, an adjective, or an adverb, but also an infinitive, a participle, a preposition, a phrase, a clause, or even an entire sentence, as we have seen in § 503.

510. Parsing Adverbs. — To parse an adverb we have only to tell (1) its *kind,* and (2) *what it modifies;* the *form* (3) need be mentioned only when comparative or superlative.

EXAMPLE. — We work [more cheerfully] [[when] we are [well] paid].

more is a *simple* adverb in the *comparative* degree; *used* to modify the adverb **cheerfully.**

cheerfully is a *simple* adverb modifying the verb **work.**

when is a *conjunctive* adverb modifying the verb **are paid.**

Exercise 223. — Point out the adverbs, and show exactly **what each modifies.**

1. Springing lightly into his saddle, he rode rapidly away.
2. It is lawful to do well on the sabbath day.
3. They live just beyond the mill.
4. He sailed nearly round the world.
5. How quickly night comes on!
6. Do precisely as you are bidden.
7. The paths of glory lead but to the grave.
8. Assuredly he cannot be mistaken.
9. Perhaps you will have no other opportunity.
10. The tunnel extends almost through the mountain.

SUMMARY: ADVERBS

Kinds distinguished according to —

Use
- *Simple*
  - Interrogative
    - Direct.
    - Indirect.
  - Modal.
  - Demonstrative.
  - Responsive.
- *Conjunctive* including Relative.
- Phrase.

Meaning
- Time.
- Place.
- Manner.
- Degree.
- Cause.
- Number.

Forms
- Positive.
- Comparative.
- Superlative.

Used to modify
- Verbs, Partic., Infin.
- Adjectives, Adverbs.
- Prepositions, Phrases.
- Clauses, Sentences.

C. DIRECTIONS FOR THE USE OF ADVERBS

511. Adjective for Adverb. — *Never use an adjective where an adverb is required.* Thus:

"He reads rapid but distinct" is wrong. The adjectives *rapid* and *distinct* should not be used to describe the manner of reading. The sentence should be, "He reads *rapidly* but *distinctly*."

512. Adverb for Predicate Adjective. — *Never use an adverb in place of an adjective to complete a copulative verb.*

"Miss Ward looked beautifully" is wrong. *Looked* is a copulative verb, for the meaning is, "She *was* beautiful in appearance." We should, therefore, use a predicate-adjective, and say, "Miss Ward looked beautiful."

513. Double Negatives. — *Use only one negative in making a denial.*

"He has never had nothing to do with it" should be, "He has never had *any*thing to do with it." The two negatives neutralize each other, and spoil the meaning of the sentence.

(*a*) Never use such expressions as, "I *don't scarcely* ever go," or "We do *not hardly* expect it," when the meaning is, "I scarcely ever go," or, "I hardly expect it."

(*b*) Such expressions as, "We are *not un*mindful of your kindness," "He is *never un*willing to learn," are right, and convey just the meaning intended. What is the meaning?

514. *Adverbial expressions should be so placed in the sentence as to convey just the meaning intended.* Compare —

Only the *address* can be written on this side (nothing else).
The address can **only** be *written* on this side (not printed).
The address can be written on *this* side **only** (not on the other).

Exercise 224. — (*a*) **Correct the errors** in these sentences, giving reasons for the changes:

1. A miser gives nothing to nobody. 2. I never hear from him scarcely. 3. How sweetly the music sounds! 4. He was tolerable well-informed. 5. The princess looked beautifully. 6. We reached home safely and soundly. 7. Did not the young man appear awkwardly? 8. We shall not go this week, I don't think. 9. This water tastes strongly of sulphur. 10. The fruit looks well, but it tastes badly. 11. How strangely everything seems in this light! 12. The children were very pleased with their presents. He was too confused to speak.

Very and *too* should never be used to modify a participle.

Even such expressions as, "*very* pleased," "*very* disappointed," when *pleased* and *disappointed* have the force of adjectives, are avoided by careful speakers and writers.

(*b*) **Point out errors** of any kind in these sentences:

1. Most all men are ambitious.

Never use *most* when you mean *almost*.

2. I never liked neither him nor his opinions. 3. You are too frightened to be of any use. 4. Three of the crew only reached the shore 5. He desired to be rich very much. 6. I shall be glad to see you always. 7. There only was a solitary fort where Chicago stands fifty years ago. 8. Deaf-mutes can only talk with their hands or lips or eyes. 9. Leave more space between each column.

CHAPTER XII

PREPOSITIONS

515. Prepositions are comparatively few in number; and, though they do not themselves modify other words, they are used *to show how different ideas are related to each other.* They help to make phrases that modify like adjectives and adverbs.

516. The *object* of a preposition may be —

1. **A Noun:** The farmers are **at** *work* **in** the *field,*

or some expression equivalent to a noun; as —

2. **A Pronoun:** I went **from** *you* **to** *her.*
3. **A Gerund:** Thank him **for** *doing* the errand.
4. **An Infinitive:** He did nothing **but** *sing.*
5. **A Phrase:** The Indians fired **from** *behind the trees.*
6. **A Clause:** I am surprised **at** *what you say.*

The object sometimes precedes the preposition, especially in poetry. Thus:

The heavy night hung dark the *hills* and *waters* **o'er.**

USES OF PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES

517. A prepositional phrase may be used like an **adjective** (1) *To modify a noun or a pronoun;* as in —

There is no hope **of rescue.** Which **of you** will go?

or (2) *As a* **subjective complement;** as in —

Your friend is **in good spirits.** They are **of great service.**

When used as an adjective, it may be called an *adjective phrase.*

518. A prepositional phrase may be used like an **adverb** to modify —

1.	**A Verb:**	Go **in haste** | **to the town** | **for the doctor.**
2.	**An Infinitive:**	To waste **in youth** is to want **in age.**
	A Gerund:	He succeeded after **trying** repeatedly.
3.	**A Participle:**	Bees coming **to hives** laden **with honey.**
4.	**An Adjective:**	The narrative is full **of interest.**
5.	**An Adverb:**	She did well **for a beginner.**

When used as an adverb, it may be called an **adverb phrase.**

519. A prepositional phrase may be used like a **noun,** as subject, object, etc. — especially after *from.* Thus:

They came *from* **across the seas.**
Out of sight is out of mind.

Exercise 225. — Point out the prepositional phrases in Exercise 218, and tell whether they are used as adjectives or as adverbs.

520. Phrase Prepositions. — Some little phrases are so much like single prepositions in their use, that, instead of separating them, we may call them **phrase prepositions.** Thus:

It crawled { **from** / **out of** / **from out** } a hole. { **In** / **As to** / **As for** } color, this is perfect.

The following are some of the phrases most commonly used as prepositions:

According to; as to; as for; along with; instead of; out of; in spite of; in front of; by means of; on board; etc.

521. Prepositions as Adverbs or Conjunctions. — Most of the prepositions were once adverbs, and are often used as such. Thus:

It isn't worth talking **about.** How was it disposed **of?**

Sometimes they become conjunctions [§ 534]. Thus:

Stay **till** I come. We started **before** the moon rose.

522. Parsing Prepositions. — A preposition is parsed, (1) by stating *that it is a preposition,* and (2) by showing *how it is used.* These forms may be followed:

[In his garden] grew flowers (of every hue).

in is a preposition, used with its object **garden** to make a phrase that modifies **grew.**

of is a preposition, used with its object **hue** to make a phrase modifying **flowers.**

Exercise 226. — 1. **Parse the prepositions** in the following sentences.

2. What words are here **adverbs** that are often prepositions?

1. From peak to peak the rattling crags among leaps the live thunder. 2. This is the house that he lives in. 3. Come on; let us go in. 4. Will you stay till after dinner? 5. These jewels came from across the sea. 6. As to that, men differ in opinion. 7. He ran from under the tree. 8. All excepting him have gone. 9. But one remains. 10. All but one have gone. 11. There is nothing to be done now but to retreat. 12. Quit yourselves like men. 13. Look the whole world over, and you will not find it. 14. Judging from what he says, I believe him honest.

3. Parse the prepositions in any of the Exercises in this book.

523. Directions for the Use of Prepositions. — *Care must be taken to use appropriate prepositions.* Thus:

Between refers to *two* objects; Divide the money *between* the two claimants.

Among refers to *more than two* objects; Divide the money *among* the crew.

Into and **to** follow verbs of *motion;* **in** and **at** verbs of *rest:* Go *into* the house and remain *in* it. He is *at* home.

Say, "I met him **in** the street," "*in* the car," "*in* the train," "*in* a steamboat," rather than "*on* the street," etc.

Say "different **from**," not "different *to*" nor "different *than;*" as, "Mine is different *from* yours."

524. *Do not use prepositions needlessly nor omit them when they are required.* Thus:

Keep off *of* the grass. Omit *of*.
The book is no use to me. Say "*of* no use."

Exercise 227. — 1. Fill the blank with a **suitable preposition if one** is needed.

1. This work is different —— any that have appeared. 2. When shall you be —— home. 3. I should have gone if I had been able ——. 4. Do smell —— these flowers. 5. The signing —— that note was a mistake. 6. Let us go —— the park. 7. His answer was very different —— yours. 8. I could prevail —— him to go. 9. Try to profit —— the failures of others. 10. There is constant rivalry —— the four roads.

11. He differed —— his friends. 12. We arrived —— a late train, and stayed —— the hotel till morning. 13. —— what street do you live? 14. Virtue and vice differ widely —— each other. 15. How do you reconcile such actions —— what he said? 16. First become reconciled —— thy brother. 17. Is he worthy —— your confidence? 18. He plays —— the organ very skillfully. 19. It is —— no use to try.

2. Make a **study** of the following selection with special reference to the construction of prepositions and prepositional phrases.

THE LOVE OF COUNTRY

Breathes there the man with soul so dead,
Who never to himself hath said,
  This is my own, my native land?
Whose heart hath ne'er within him burned,
As home his footsteps he hath turned
  From wandering on a foreign strand?

If such there breathe, go, mark him well!
For him no minstrel raptures swell;
High though his titles, proud his name,
Boundless his wealth as wish can claim, —
Despite those titles, power, and pelf,
The wretch, concentred all in self,
Living, shall forfeit fair renown,
And, doubly dying, shall go down
To the vile dust, from whence he sprung,
Unwept, unhonored, and unsung.

— *Sir Walter Scott.*

CHAPTER XIII

CONJUNCTIONS

525. Since we first defined conjunctions (p. 39) we have studied several other kinds of connective words:

(1) The **conjunctive pronouns** *who, which, that, what,* etc., which, while they connect, also do the work of nouns and pronouns;

(2) The **conjunctive adjectives** *which, whichever, what,* etc., which modify nouns and also connect clauses;

(3) The **conjunctive adverbs** *when, where, while,* etc., which, besides connecting, always modify; and

(4) The **prepositions,** which show the relation between words.

We now come to genuine **Conjunctions,** the chief use of which is to *connect* the parts of compound and complex sentences.

526. Conjunctions are divided according to their use into two classes:

(1) **co-ordinating** conjunctions, that connect the parts of a sentence so that they remain *alike in rank* or construction; and

(2) **subordinating** conjunctions, that make one of the connected parts dependent upon or *a part of* the other.

"Co-ordinate" means *of equal rank;* "subordinate," *of inferior rank.*

527. **Co-ordinating conjunctions** are used to connect, (1) *The members of a compound sentence.* Thus:

The floods came, **and** the winds blew, **but** it fell **not.**
We must overcome evil, **or** it will overcome **us.**

(2) *Words, phrases, and clauses having the same construction.* Thus:

Bright **and** happy children were running **or** playing there.
True friends are the same in prosperity **and** in adversity.
I do not know when he came **nor** whither he went.

Co-ordinating conjunctions are sometimes used at the beginning of a separate sentence to connect it in meaning with what precedes.

528. We give the name co-ordinating conjunctions *first* to *and, but, or, nor,* which do nothing but connect; *secondly,* to certain words which, though they retain their adverbial meaning, serve principally to show the connection between the members of a compound sentence. Thus:

I do not believe in the change; **however,** I shall not oppose it.

Therefore, hence, still, besides, consequently, yet, likewise, moreover, else, then, also, accordingly, nevertheless, notwithstanding, etc., are words of this kind. Try to form sentences beginning with them, and you will see that they refer to what has been said before in each case.

529. A Co-ordinating conjunction is one that joins sentences or parts of sentences having the same rank.

530. We can if we wish divide all co-ordinating conjunctions into four classes:

1. *Copulative,* or such as merely join together, like **and.**
2. *Alternative,* or such as offer a choice between two, like **or.**
3. *Adversative,* or such as imply that one part is opposed to the other, like **but.**
4. *Causal,* or such as assign a cause, a reason, a result, etc., like **for.**

531. Correlatives. — Some conjunctions, called **correlatives,** are used in pairs, one before each of the connected parts to make their connection more evident. Thus:

I have **both** seen **and** heard the orator.
They are to meet us **either** in Paris **or** in London.

Give me **neither** poverty **nor** riches.
Whether to go **or** to return is the question.

NOTE. — The first word of each pair may be parsed as an auxiliary or *assistant* conjunction helping the other to do the connecting.

Exercise 228. — Point out the conjunctions, and explain what each connects.

1. He is liberal, but he is not generous. 2. They are poor, yet they are not needy. 3. Both he and I are going. 4. I believed; therefore have I spoken. 5. That route is dangerous: besides, we have no guide. 6. The book is not perfect: still, it is very helpful. 7. Either Hamlet was insane, or he feigned insanity. 8. The sea is rough, for I hear the surf. 9. He yields neither to force nor to persuasion.

10. The fault is neither yours nor mine, but theirs. 11. I have had experience both in sickness and in health. 12. But I can never be natural enough, even when there is the most occasion. 13. As to the book you mention, I am in doubt whether to read it or not. 14. *We* cannot go, nor should *you*. 15. He is a genius, though he does not seem so.

16. Men will reap as they sow. 17. He will die some day; for all men are mortal. 18. He is very rich, yet he is not contented. 19. Wise men love truth; whereas fools shun it. 20. And now abideth faith, hope, charity, but the greatest of these is charity.

532. Subordinating Conjunctions. — If we unite the sentences —

Rain has fallen. The grass is wet —

by the co-ordinating conjunction "and"; thus —

Rain has fallen, **and** the grass is wet —

we make a compound sentence with co-ordinate members; that is, with members of equal rank. But if we unite them by the conjunction "because"; thus —

The grass is wet, **because** *rain has fallen* —

we change their relation and rank, and make one of them an **adverb clause** that gives a reason for the other, by telling *why* the grass is wet.

So, too, in the sentences —

It will dry **after** *the sun has risen.* (When?)
We must hasten **that** *we may meet our friends.* (Why?)
We shall wait **if** *they have not come.* (On what condition?) —

the conjunctions **after, that, if,** change what might be independent sentences into adverb clauses that modify verbs by showing *when, why, on what condition,* etc.

533. Conjunctions of this kind connect two sentences by changing one of them into a clause which becomes part of the other, and they are, therefore, called **subordinating.**

534. Most subordinating conjunctions are used to make **adverb clauses,** which may modify in a variety of ways. Thus, they may denote:

1. **Time:** We waited *after* { *before, since, till, until, ere,* } *you came.*
2. **Cause** or **Reason:** I will go *because* { *for, since, as, inasmuch as,* } *you ask it.*
3. **Manner:** Work *as if (as though) you were paid.*
4. **Comparison:** { The nights are longer *than the days* [*are*]. / Venus is more distant *than the moon* [*is*]. }
5. { **Condition, Concession,** etc.: } { I will go *if* { *unless, provided* } *he needs me.* / *Though (although) he is poor* he is content. }
6. **Purpose** or **Result:** { Take good care *that (lest) they escape.* / Exercise daily *that you may grow strong.* }

535. The subordinating conjunction *that* (and sometimes *whether*) is often used in making a noun clause. Thus the sentences —

He was wrong, We knew that fact —

when united by *that* become —

We knew **that** *he was wrong.*

So —

Ask **whether** *the steamer has sailed.*

536. A Subordinating conjunction is one that changes an independent into a dependent clause, and connects it to the rest of the sentence.

A subordinating conjunction often serves simply to introduce a noun clause used as subject. As in —

That you have wronged me doth appear in this.

537. Phrase Conjunctions. — Some little phrases are used to connect like single words. For example:

Corn **as well as** wheat may be raised here.
I shall go **inasmuch as** he has invited me.

The most common phrase conjunctions are, *as if, as though, as well, forasmuch as, provided that, seeing that, so that, in order that,* etc.

538. Parsing Conjunctions. — In parsing a conjunction we are to tell, (1) its *kind*, and (2) *what it connects*. The following forms may be used:

1. He spoke and acted [as if (his) life were in danger].

and is a *co-ordinating* conjunction, and connects the two verbs **spoke** and **acted.**

as if is a *subordinating* phrase conjunction, and connects the adverb clause to **spoke** and **acted,** which it modifies.

2. [After we had sailed] we found that (the) ship leaked.

after is a *subordinating* conjunction, and connects the adverb clause to **found,** which it modifies.

that is a *subordinating* conjunction, and joins the noun clause to **found,** of which it is the object.

539. SUMMARY: FORMS FOR PARSING

Kinds. —— is a { Co-ordinating / Subordinating / Correlative } Conjunction;

Uses. It connects the co-ordinate { words —— and ——; phrases —— and ——; clauses —— and ——
It connects the adverb (or noun) clause to ——
It helps —— to connect —— and ——.

Exercise 229. — 1. **Parse** the prepositions in the following sentences: 2. **Analyze** the sentences, and **parse the conjunctions.**

1. Though I admire his courage, I detest his cruelty. 2. Remain until sunset. 3. Do not go until the sun has set. 4. Think twice before you speak. 5. I have not seen my friend since he returned from Dublin. 6. If I were not Alexander, I would be Diogenes. 7. I am proud that I am an American. 8. We know that the moon is uninhabited. 9. That the moon is uninhabited is well known.

10. The fact that the moon is uninhabited is well known. 11. It is well known that the moon is not inhabited. 12. The fact is that the moon has no inhabitants. 13. As Cæsar loved me, I weep for him. 14. Come down ere my child die. 15. It is more than heart can bear. 16. Language was given us that we may say pleasant things to each other. 17. If spring is without blossoms, autumn will be without fruit. 18. It was so cold that the mercury froze. 19. He failed in business because he was dishonest.

540. Directions for the use of Conjunctions. — Observe these rules:

1. *Do not use* **or** *for* **nor** *as the correlative of* neither.

"Neither you *or* I" should be "Neither you *nor* I."

2. *Do not use* **like** *instead of* **as** *or* **as if.**

He acted *like* **(as if)** he was crazy. Sing *like* **(as)** I do.

3. *Do not use* **but** *for* **than** *after* **other** *or any comparative word.*

I have no *other* friend *but* **(than)** you; or, I have no friend *but* you.

4. *Do not use* **but what** *for* **that** *or* **but that.**

I have no doubt *but what* **(that)** he did it.

5. *Do not use* **if** *when you mean* **whether.**

See if **(whether)** he can go.

Exercise 230. — 1. Supply an **appropriate conjunction.**

1. I have no other reason —— this. 2. I did not know but —— you were busy. 3. He will neither come in —— go out. 4. Is there no one else —— he to go? 5. He no sooner sees me, —— he runs to meet me. 6. He walked —— he was lame. 7. He did not deny but —— he owed the money. 8. I can't say —— he will be here or not.

2. **Try to answer** the following questions:

1. What may the object of a preposition be? 2. Give examples. 3. What parts of speech may the phrase resemble? 4. Use one as adjective, as complement, as adverb. 5. Explain the difference between prepositions and conjunctions. 6. Between the two kinds of conjunctions. 7. Discriminate between the italicized words in — "*after* sunset," and "*after* the sun had set"; in — "I have not seen him *since* noon," and "*Since* it is true, he must go." 8. In — "Act *as* you feel"; '*As* I looked, it fell"; "She is not so tall *as* you," *as* is a conjunctive adverb. In — "*As* life is short, improve it," *as* is a conjunction; and in — "This is such *as* I want," *as* is a pronoun. Try to explain why.

3. Parse the **conjunctions** and the **prepositions** in the following selection:

How sleep the Brave who sink to rest
By all their country's wishes blest!
When Spring, with dewy fingers cold,
Returns to deck their hallowed mold,
She there shall dress a sweeter sod
Than Fancy's feet have ever trod.

By fairy hands their knell is rung,
By forms unseen their dirge is sung:
There Honor comes, a pilgrim gray,
To bless the turf that wraps their clay,
And Freedom shall awhile repair
To dwell a weeping hermit there.

— *Collins.*

CHAPTER XIV

INTERJECTIONS, ETC.

541. We call interjections one of the parts of speech because they are spoken and written as words; but they cannot enter into the construction of sentences, being only "thrown in between" them.

They are half-way between ordinary language and the language of coughing, laughing, crying, and so on, which they are made to imitate.

542. Among commonly-written interjections are included —

I. Words used instead of an assertion to express *feeling* of various kinds:

(*a*) *Surprise or wonder;* as, **oh, ah, lo, whew.**
(*b*) *Pleasure, joy, exultation;* as, **oh, ah, aha, hey, hurrah.**
(*c*) *Pain, sadness, sorrow;* as, **oh, ah, alas, alack, alack-a-day.**
(*d*) *Contempt, disgust;* as, **pshaw, fie, fudge, pooh, ugh, bah.**

II. Words used instead of a *question;* as, *eh? ah? hey?*

III. Words used instead of a *command:*

(*a*) To *call attention;* as, **O, lo, ho, hem, hello, ahoy.**
(*b*) To *silence;* as, **hist, hush, whist, 'st, mum.**
(*c*) To *direct, expel,* and so on; as, **whoa, gee, haw, scat.**

IV. Words used to *imitate* sounds made by animals, machines, and so on. As —

bow-wow, ba-a-a, pop, bang, ding-dong, rub-a-dub, whiz, whir-r, patter.

Notice the sound of such verbs and nouns as **grunt, buzz, roar, crash, hiss, puff.**

Other Exclamatory Words

543. Many ordinary words and phrases are often used independently as mere exclamations, when their real meaning is hardly thought of. So with —

(1) *Nouns* and *pronouns:* **fire, nonsense, mercy, shame, what.**

(2) *Verbs:* **help, behold, look, see, begone, hark, listen.**

(3) *Adjectives:* **hail, well, welcome, strange, good, bravo.**

(4) *Adverbs, prepositions,* and *phrases:* **out, indeed, how, why, back, forward; on, up; amen, O dear, dear me, farewell, adieu, good-by, good-day.**

544. When such an expression, even though used alone, retains its original meaning, we may supply what is omitted, and treat the word as part of a sentence. Thus:

Silence! (keep silence!) Good! (that is good!)

545. Sometimes, as when greatly excited, we abandon sentences altogether, and utter only the most important words; as —

A sail! a sail! Now for the boats! Down with it!
Steady! Lower! To your oars, men!

Exercise 231. — Write sentences, using each of these words in the right way:

O! ahoy! alas! what! ho! Oh! eh! pshaw! hark! sh!

CHAPTER XV

Sentences and Their Elements

546. For convenience in reviewing what we have learned, the following summary is presented.

SENTENCES: SUMMARY

Sentences are classified according to

- **Use:** as
  - assertive.
  - interrogative.
  - imperative.
  - [exclamatory.]
- **Form:** as
  - simple.
  - compound.
  - complex.
  - complex compound.

The **Elements** of a Sentence are

- **Words:** the eight parts of speech
- **Phrases:**
  - adjective; adverbial; verb; prepositional; possessive; **appositive**; infinitive; participle.
- **Clauses:**
  - adjec.
    - explanatory.
    - restrictive.
  - adverb [see p. 225].
  - noun
    - subject; object; complement.
    - appositive.
    - explanatory.

547. Besides the (1) *essentials*, a simple sentence may contain (2) *modifiers*, and (3) *independent* expressions.

548. The Essentials of a Sentence. — The *essential predicate* is always a verb or verb phrase. The *subject, object, subjective complement,* or *objective complement* may be —

1. **A Noun:** *Napoleon* overthrew the *government,* and became *Emperor.* He made his brothers *Kings.*

2. **A Pronoun:** *They* released *us.* Debtors are *those* in debt. The treaty made Porto Rico *ours.*

3. **An Adjective** [as subjective or objective complement only]: They are *silent*. Strike the traitor *dead*!

4. **A Phrase:**
   - *Out of sight* is *out of mind.*
   - *To be absent* is *to be forgotten.*
   - *His keeping busy* prevented *his being homesick.*
   - They will be *in search of work.*
   - His success will render further help *of no use.*

5. **A Noun Clause:**
   - *What I learn* cannot be taken from me.
   - We know *that life is uncertain.*
   - The fact is, *that she is deaf, dumb, and blind.*
   - My mother made me *what I am.*

6. **A Quotation:**
   - *"I still live,"* was the last that he said.
   - His dying words were, *"Don't give up the ship."*
   - Galileo exclaimed, *"It does move."*
   - I have made my motto, *"Without haste, without rest."*

Some of these constructions are comparatively rare.

549. Modifiers. — I. A *noun* or a *pronoun* in any construction may be modified by —

1. **An Adjective**
   - word: *All* men have *equal* rights.
   - phrase: The silence was *strangely ominous.*
   - clause: Those *that think* govern those *that toil.*
2. **A Prepositional Phrase:** There is a light *in the window for thee.*
3. **A Possessive**
   - word: Am I *my brother's* keeper?
   - phrase: It was *the rugged mountaineer's* cabin.
4. **An Appositive**
   - word: The planet *Saturn* has two rings.
   - phrase: Gen. Scott, *the commander-in-chief of the army.*
   - clause: The axiom *that the whole is greater than any part.*
5. **A Participle**
   - word: They found him *wounded and dying.*
   - phrase: Some frail memorial, *still erected nigh.*
6. **An Infinitive Phrase:** A plan *to light the streets by electricity.*
7. **An Explanatory Noun Clause:** *It* is true *that air has weight.*

550. II. *A verb, infinitive, participle, adverb,* or *adjective,* may be modified by —

1. **An Adverb** { word: *Slowly* fades the light of day.
   phrase: He is waiting *very patiently.* He will come *by and by.*
   clause: *When he comes,* go *where you choose.*
2. **A Prepositional Phrase:** Having risen *from poverty to wealth.*
3. **A Noun or Noun Phrase:** Go *Tuesday* and stay *six weeks.*
4. **An Infinitive Phrase:** { We came *to demand our rights.*
   The land is pleasant *to live in.*

551. Independent Expressions. — A sentence may contain a word or phrase that is independent of other words, used neither as one of the essentials nor as a modifier or a connective. Such are —

1. **Vocatives,** or words used in address. As —

   Ye crags and peaks, I'm with you once again.
   Life, you and I have been long together.

2. **Exclamatory expressions,** including *interjections.* As —

   Alas! poor Yorick! I knew him, Horatio.
   Hurrah! Victory! The battle has been won!

3. **Parenthetical words or phrases** introduced into the sentence for various reasons. As —

   By the way, I met your friend yesterday.
   Well, I must leave you. *Now,* come to see me soon.
   He reached the house, *it seems,* too late to be of service.

552. We sometimes find sentences that contain what are called *pleonastic* words, used for emphasis, or to call attention to what is to be spoken of. As in —

Thy *rod* and thy *staff,* they comfort me.
The *boy,* O where was he?

In parsing we call such words "independent by pleonasm."

553. Compound Elements. — Any part of a sentence, whether an element or a modifier, may be compounded of two or more simple elements, usually joined by co-ordinating conjunctions. Thus:

In Him we *live* and *move*. He is both *wise* and *good*.
Speak *firmly* but *kindly*. Learn *who he is* and *where he is*.

Exercise 232. — **Analyze** these sentences, and show which elements of each sentence are compound:

1. There health and plenty cheered the laboring swain. 2. Regular and daily exercise was the origin and secret of his health. 3. Gayly rode the hunters through the valleys or over the hills. 4. Love for study, a desire to do right, and care in the choice of friends, were traits of his character. 5. We were deeply impressed by the majesty and sublimity of the cataract and its surroundings. 6. Which would they choose, to live at peace with none, or to die at peace with all? 7. Either sooner or later temperance fortifies and purifies the heart. 8. Make the house where gods may dwell, beautiful, entire, and clean.

554. Elliptical Sentences. — We often shorten our sentences by omitting one or more words which are not needed to show our meaning, but which must be expressed when the sentence is analyzed. The ellipsis, or omission, may generally be readily supplied. The following are examples:

I did not know [*that*] he was dead.
This is the book [*which*] you gave me.
The tale is wonderful if [*it is*] true.
John is older than his sister [*is old*].
Come as soon as you can [*come*].
You speak as [*you would speak*] if you doubted me.
He treats me as [*he treats*] a friend.
He will return, but no one knows when [*he will return*].
[*It is*] no matter what you think.
Though [*he was*] poor, he was generous.

555. Clauses and Clause Connectives. — The different kinds of clauses must be carefully distinguished, and their connection with the rest of the sentence indicated clearly. The following forms may be used:

I. —— is an **Adjective clause** modifying the noun (or pronoun) ——

The *clause-connective* is:
1. The relative pronoun *who, which, that, as.*
2. The relative adverb *where, when, whence, why,* etc.

II. —— is an **Adverb clause** modifying the verb (adj. or adv.) —— by denoting *time, place, cause, manner, comparison, condition, concession, purpose,* etc.

The *clause-connective* is:
1. The conj. adv. *where, when, while, whence, as,* etc.
2. The sub. conj. *till, before, after, if, for, because, as, than, that,* etc.

III. —— is a **Noun clause**; used
1. As *subject* of the verb ——.
2. As *object* of the verb ——.
3. As *object* of the prep. ——.
4. As *subjective complement* of ——.
5. In *apposition* with the noun ——.
6. *To explain the anticipative subject* (or object) *it.*

The *clause-connective* is:
1. The conj. pro. *what, whatever, whoever,* etc.
2. The conj. adj. *which, what,* etc.
3. The conj. adv. *how, why, when, where,* etc.
4. The sub. conj. *that* or *whether.*

556. In studying selections for analysis and parsing, observe the following directions:

1. Consult the dictionary for the meaning of unfamiliar words.
2. Transpose the words into their common prose order, unless the construction seems clear to you.

3. Select the clauses, and show how each is used.
4. Classify the sentence, and analyze each part of it.

Exercise 233. — (*a*) **Classify the clauses** in these sentences, and show, according to the preceding forms, **how each is used.**

(*b*) **Parse** the clause-connectives.

1. We acquire the strength that we overcome. 2. O Solitude! where are the charms that sages have seen in thy face? 3. Life is what we make it. 4. Love not sleep, lest thou come to poverty. 5. What pleases you will please me. 6. The fact is that he has betrayed my confidence. 7. He knew not that the chieftain lay unconscious of his son. 8. It is in vain that you seek to escape.

9. While he slept the enemy came. 10. What he spake, though it lacked form a little, was not madness. 11. All that he does is to distribute what others produce. 12. He that fights and runs away may live to fight another day. 13. The best of what we do and are is poor enough. 14. I thank God that I never hated any man because he was poor or because he was ignorant. 15. A great many men, if put into the right position, would be Columbuses. 16. No wonder you are deaf to all I say. 17. He whistled as he went, for want of thought. 18. Nothing waxeth old sooner than a good turn or a favor. 19. When faith is lost, when honor dies, the man is dead. 20. Be silent, or say something better than silence. 21. Patience is so like Fortitude, that she seems either her sister or her daughter.

22. His misery was such that none of his friends could refrain from weeping. 23. What stronger breastplate than a heart untainted? 24. Thrice is he armed who hath his quarrel just; and he but naked, though locked up in steel, whose conscience with injustice is corrupted. 25. Still the wonder grew that one small head could carry all he knew. 26. When Strength and Justice are true yoke-fellows, where can be found a mightier pair than they? 27. You will gain a good reputation, if you endeavor to be what you desire to appear. 28. He made it clear that the plan was impossible. 29. He felt as though himself were he on whose sole arm hung victory.

30. Whoever thinks a faultless piece to see,
Thinks what ne'er was, nor is, nor e'er shall be.

Exercise 234. — Analyze the following sentences, **classifying the clauses,** and **parsing** the words:

1. To dare is great, but to bear is greater. 2. Write it on your heart that every day is the best day of the year. 3. Heaven is for those who think of it. 4. Live as though life were earnest, and life will be so. 5. Sweet it is to have done the thing one ought. 6 He that loveth makes his own the grandeur that he loves. 7. "Don't cross the bridge till you come to it" is a proverb old and of excellent wit. 8. There's nothing so contagious as pure openness of heart. 9. Who does the best his circumstance allows, does well, acts nobly; angels could do no more. 10. He is not worthy of the honeycomb that shuns the hives because the bees have stings.

11. Find thou always time to say some earnest word between the idle talk. 12. Duties are ours, but events are God's. 13. Brooding all day will not arm a man against misery. 14. Nothing that is shall perish utterly. 15. There's nothing but what's bearable as long as a man can work. 16. It is better to fight for the good than to rail at the ill. 17. Love all, trust a few, do wrong to none. 18. Corn growing, larks singing, garden full of flowers, fresh air on the sea — O, it is wonderful! 19. We always may be what we might have been. 20. It isn't so much what a man has that makes him happy, as it is what he doesn't want.

21. We are made happy by what we are, not by what we have. 22. A man's reach should exceed his grasp, or what's a heaven for? 23. It's very easy finding reasons why other folks should be patient. 24. Who laughs at crooked men needs walk very straight. 25. We are such stuff as dreams are made on, and our little life is rounded with a sleep. 26. He who neglects the present moment throws away all he has. 27. "One soweth and another reapeth" is a verity that applies to evil as well as good. 28. Rich gifts wax poor when givers prove unkind. 29. Said he, "All that I am, my mother made me." 30. Since my country calls me, I obey. 31. The days are made on a loom whereof the warp and woof are past and future time. 32. Let me make the songs of a people, and I care not who makes the laws.

33. Words pass as wind, but where great deeds were done
A power abides, transfused from sire to son.

557. Variety of Expression.—Among the many ways of varying our forms of expression are the following:

1. Passive forms may be used for active, and *vice versa.* Thus:

All *may make* mistakes. Mistakes *may be made* by all.

2. The introductory *there* or *it* may be used. Thus:

1. A messenger came.	1. *There* came a messenger.
2. To retreat was impossible.	2. *It* was impossible to retreat.

3. Words may be expanded to phrases, and phrases to clauses. Thus:

1. *Japanese* tea.	1. Tea *raised in Japan.*
2. The *inventor of the telephone.*	2. He *that invented the telephone.*
3. *Before sailing.*	3. *Before they had sailed.*
4. The voyage *having begun.*	4. *When* the voyage *had begun.*

4. Clauses may be contracted to phrases. Thus:

1. Gray, *who wrote the poem.*	1. Gray, *the author of the poem.*
2. Regions *that Stanley explored.*	2. Regions *explored by Stanley.*
3. *After we left Paris.*	3. *Having left Paris.*
4. I thought *that he was worthy.*	4. I thought *him worthy.*
5. Come *before the sun has risen.*	5. Come *before sunrise.*

5. Simple sentences may be combined into either compound or complex sentences. Thus:

The Americans were not contending for money. They were contending for a principle. They refused to receive the tea.

The Americans were not contending for money, but for a principle, and they refused to receive the tea. (Compound.) Or:

As the Americans were not contending for money, but for a principle, they refused to receive the tea. (Complex.)

6. Negative may be used for affirmative assertions, and interrogative for assertive sentences. Thus:

1. Such pleasures attracted him.	1. Such pleasures were not unattractive to him.
2. We have suffered enough. Let us defend our rights.	2. Have we not suffered enough? Shall we not defend our rights?

Exercise 235. — 1. **Change** the italicized expression in some of the ways mentioned in the preceding section without changing the meaning. **Describe** the change you have made.

1. The *author of the book* is in Egypt. 2. The note is payable *on demand.* 3. He *canceled his liabilities.* 4. I shall see you *on my return.* 5. They thought *me honest.* 6. I gave you the book *that you might read it.* 7. *If you call* you will see him. 8. *Morning dawning,* all fears were dispelled. 9. Intemperance *ruins* many a youth. 10. No place is like home. 11. It is by careful saving that men grow rich. 12. Shame being lost, all is lost. 13. We did not know *that our friend was ill.* 14. The miser is *unhappy.* 15. No man is perfect. 16. *As the king was dead,* a dispute arose as to the succession. 17. The light struggles dimly through the windows *which are darkened by dust.* 18. Many men who have made wonderful inventions have died poor. 19. *After passing Congress* the bill *was signed* by the President. 20. The treaty *which Jay negotiated was approved* by the Senate.

2. **Combine** the following groups of simple sentences **into compound or complex sentences.**

1. Sir Walter Raleigh received from Queen Elizabeth a charter. It gave him a large territory in America. He sent out an exploring expedition in 1584. 2. In 1607 three ships carried out a handful of people. They began the settlement of the United States. The largest one was named *Susan Constant.* 3. One of the most industrious men in the colony was John Smith. He was a young man. He had many adventures. He was fond of boasting of them. 4. The English government sent tea to Boston. A company of fifty men threw it into the sea. The men had disguised themselves as Indians. 5. Paul Revere was an active patriot. The British had started for Lexington. He was sent to tell this to Adams and Hancock. They were in that town. 6. Geoffrey Chaucer was the first great English poet. He was the author of the "Canterbury Tales." He was born in 1340. He died in 1400.

3. Paraphrase or expand some of the clauses in Exercises 233, 234.

558. Selections for Analysis and Parsing

1. Attention is the stuff that memory is made of, and memory is accumulated genius.

2. Wise sayings often fall on barren ground; but a kind word is never thrown away.

3. A great writer has said that grace is beauty in action: I say that justice is truth in action.

4. How easy it is for one benevolent being to diffuse pleasure around him; and how truly is a kind heart a fountain of gladness, making everything in its vicinity freshen into smiles.

5. If we do not plant knowledge when young, it will give us no shade when we are old.

6. To know by rote is no knowledge; it is only a retention of what is intrusted to the memory. What a man truly knows may be disposed of without regard to the author, or reference to the book whence he had it.

7. Alexander the Great, reflecting on his friends' degenerating into sloth and luxury, told them that it was a most slavish thing to luxuriate, and a most royal thing to labor.

8. Oh, what a glory doth this world put on for him who, with a fervent heart, goes forth under the bright and glorious sky!

9. Few men learn the highest use of books. After life-long study many a man discovers too late that to have had the philosopher's stone availed nothing without the philosopher to use it.

10. If the poor and humble toil that we may have food, must not the high and glorious toil for him in return, that he have light, guidance, freedom, immortality?

11. Words are the leaves of the tree of knowledge, of which, if some fall away, a new succession takes their place.

12. The busy world shoves angrily aside
The man who stands with arms akimbo set,
Until the occasion tells him what to do;
And he who waits to have his task marked out
Shall die and leave his errand unfulfilled.

13. Failure after long perseverance is much grander than never to have a striving good enough to be called a failure.

14. When the Breton sailor puts to sea, his prayer is, "Keep me, my God, for my boat is so small and Thy ocean is so wide."

15. 'Tis greatly wise to talk with our past hours,
And ask them what report they bore to heaven.

16. The happiest man is he who, being above the troubles which money brings, has his hands the fullest of work.

17. It is seldom that we find how great a man is until he dies.

18. Nine times out of ten, the best thing that can happen to a young man is to be tossed overboard and compelled to sink or swim for himself. In all my acquaintance I never knew a man to be drowned who was worth the saving.

19. If the way in which men express their thoughts is slipshod and mean, it will be very difficult for their thoughts themselves to escape being the same.

20. Learn from the earliest days to inure your principles against the perils of ridicule; you can no more exercise your reason, if you live in the constant dread of laughter, than you can enjoy your life if you are in the constant terror of death.

21. Toiling, rejoicing, sorrowing, onward through life he goes;
Each morning sees some task begun, each evening sees its close;
Something attempted, something done, has earned a night's repose.

22. For manhood is the one immortal thing
Beneath Time's changeful sky,
And, where it lightened once, from age to age,
Men come to learn, in grateful pilgrimage,
That length of days is knowing when to die.

23. Press on! surmount the rocky steeps;
Climb boldly o'er the torrent's arch:
He fails alone who feebly creeps;
He wins who dares the hero's march.

Be thou a hero! let thy might
Tramp on eternal snows its way,
And through the ebon walls of night,
Hew down a passage unto day.

24. Young men who spend many years at school and college are too apt to forget the great end of life, which is to be and to do, not to read and brood over what other men have been and done.

25. A hundred years hence what difference will it make whether you were rich or poor, a peer or a peasant? But what difference may it not make whether you did what was right or what was wrong?

26. Books are yours,
Within whose silent chambers treasure lies
Preserved from age to age; more precious far
Than that accumulated store of gold
And orient gems which, for a day of need,
The sultan hides deep in ancestral tombs.
These hoards of truth you can unlock at will.
— *Wordsworth.*

27. Daughters of Time, the hypocritic Days,
Muffled and dumb like barefoot dervishes,
And marching single in an endless file,
Bring diadems and fagots in their hands.
To each they offer gifts after his will,
Bread, kingdoms, stars, and sky that holds them all.
I, in my pleachéd garden, watched the pomp,
Forgot my morning wishes, hastily
Took a few herbs and apples, and the Day
Turned and departed silent. I, too late,
Under her solemn fillet saw the scorn.
— *R. W. Emerson.*

28. To go into solitude, a man needs to retire as much from his chamber as from society. I am not solitary whilst I read and write, though nobody is with me. But if a man would be alone, let him look at the stars. The rays that come from those heavenly worlds will separate between him and what he touches. One might think the atmosphere was made transparent with this design, to give man, in the heavenly bodies, the perpetual presence of the sublime. Seen in the streets of cities, how great they are! If the stars should appear one night in a thousand years, how would men believe and adore, and preserve for many generations the remembrance of the city of God which had been shown. — *R. W. Emerson.*

29. . . . . .
Beneath those rugged elms, that yew tree's shade,
Where heaves the turf in many a moldering heap,
Each in his narrow cell forever laid,
The rude forefathers of the hamlet sleep.

The breezy call of incense-breathing morn,
The swallow twittering from the straw-built shed,
The cock's shrill clarion, or the echoing horn,
No more shall rouse them from their lowly bed.

For them no more the blazing hearth shall burn,
Or busy housewife ply her evening care;
No children run to lisp their sire's return,
Or climb his knees the envied kiss to share.

Oft did the harvest to their sickle yield,
Their furrow oft the stubborn glebe has broke;
How jocund did they drive their team afield!
How bowed the woods beneath their sturdy stroke!

Let not ambition mock their useful toil,
Their homely joys, and destiny obscure;
Nor grandeur hear with a disdainful smile
The short and simple annals of the poor.

The boast of heraldry, the pomp of power,
And all that beauty, all that wealth e'er gave,
Await alike the inevitable hour —
The paths of glory lead but to the grave.

Nor you, ye proud, impute to these the fault,
If Memory o'er their tomb no trophies raise,
Where, through the long-drawn aisle and fretted vault,
The pealing anthem swells the note of praise.

Can storied urn or animated bust
Back to its mansion call the fleeting breath?
Can Honor's voice provoke the silent dust,
Or Flattery soothe the dull cold ear of death?

Perhaps in this neglected spot is laid
Some heart once pregnant with celestial fire;
Hands that the rod of empire might have swayed,
Or waked to ecstasy the living lyre.

. . . . . .

From Gray's Elegy in a Country Churchyard.

APPENDIX I

I. CASE AS A RELATION

1. It has seemed to the authors more consistent with the present condition of the English tongue, and less confusing to the learner, to treat case as a *form*, since the relation is nearly always marked in other ways — by position in the sentence, or by the use of prepositions. Moreover, to say that a noun is in the nominative or objective case is only to say that it has one of five, or one of seven, uses in the sentence. Just what the special use is, must be told in other language.

However, case is here presented as a relation that teachers may use the method they prefer.

2. In many languages nouns and pronouns have *several case-forms* to denote their different uses, or relations, in a sentence. In English, nouns, long ago, had five case-forms to suit the different uses, but at present nouns have only *two* such forms. Eight pronouns, however, have *three* case-forms.

3. By some grammarians the *case* of a noun or pronoun in English is understood to denote the *relation* in which it stands to other words in the sentence rather than to denote the *form* that marks those relations.

4. When *case* is treated as a *relation* rather than a form, it is customary to say that nouns in English have *three* cases.

These are named *Nominative*, *Possessive*, and *Objective*, from the principal relations that a noun may sustain to other words.

5. The **Nominative** Case is (primarily) the subject of a verb. As — *Victoria* died in 1901.

The **Possessive** Case generally shows possession or ownership. As —*Victoria's* reign ended in 1901.

The **Objective** Case denotes the relation of the object to the verb or preposition. As — The nation honored *Victoria.* The people mourned for *Victoria.*

6. These four are the most common relations or uses of the noun in a sentence. There are, however, eight other relations or uses that nouns may sometimes have in sentences. Nouns used in three of these eight ways are said to be in the **nominative** case because in these relations the nominative *case-form* of pronouns is required. Nouns having four other uses are said to be in the **objective** case because the objective *case-form* of the pronoun is generally required in these relations. A noun in the remaining relation — the appositive — is said to be in the same case as the noun it explains; that is, in any one of the three cases.

7. Case as a relation will, perhaps, be best understood from the following:

SUMMARY

A Noun is in the **Nominative** Case when used

1. as the **subject** of a verb. As — The *hour* has come.
2. as the **subjective complement** of a verb. As — This is the *hour.*
3. **independently** by address or exclamation. As — O fatal *hour!*
4. **absolutely** with a participle. As — The *hour* having come —
5. in **apposition** with another word in the nominative case. As — Noon, the *hour* of twelve, has come.

A Noun is in the **Possessive** Case when used

1. to denote **ownership** or possession. As — An *hour's* pleasure.
2. in **apposition** with another noun in the possessive case. As — His brother *John's* wife —

A Noun is in the **Objective** Case when used

1. as the **object** of a verb. As — Waste not an *hour.*
2. as the **indirect object** of a verb. As — He gave the *hour* no thought.
3. as the **object** of a preposition. As — Come at an early *hour.*
4. **adverbially** to modify a verb, adjective, or adverb. As — He waited an *hour.*
5. as the **objective complement** of a verb. As — Call midnight the *hour.*
6. as the **subject of an infinitive.** As — Hear the *hour* strike.
7. in **apposition** with another word in the objective case. As — Spend sixty minutes, a full *hour.*

II. LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS

Forms now out of use or rare are as a rule omitted. Otherwise the list contains all verb-forms of the old conjugation printed in *bold-faced* type, and all irregular forms of the new conjugation printed in *plain* type. Where only part of the forms are irregular, the regular forms are given too.

Present	Past	Perf. Part.
Abide	**abode**	**abode**
Awake	**awoke** awaked	awaked
Be (pres. **am**)	**was**	**been**
Bear	**bore** **bare**	**borne** [*carried*] **born** [*brought forth*]
Beat	**beat**	**beaten**
Begin	**began**	**begun**
Bend	bent	bent
Bereave	bereft bereaved	bereft bereaved
Beseech	besought	besought
Bet	betted bet	betted bet
Bid	**bade** **bid**	**bidden** **bid**
Bind	**bound**	**bound**
Bite	**bit**	**bitten** **bit**
Bleed	bled	bled
Blend	blended blent	blended blent
Bless	blessed	blessed blest
Blow	**blew**	**blown**
Break	**broke**	**broken**
Breed	bred	bred
Bring	brought	brought
Build	built builded	built builded
Burn	burned burnt	burned burnt
Burst	**burst**	**burst**
Buy	bought	bought
Can	could	——
Cast	cast	cast
Catch	caught	caught
Chide	**chid**	**chidden** **chid**
Choose	**chose**	**chosen**
Cleave * [*split*]	**clove** cleft	**cloven** cleft
Cling	**clung**	**clung**
Clothe	clothed clad	clothed clad
Come	**came**	**come**
Cost	cost	cost
Creep	crept	crept
Crow	**crew** crowed	—— crowed
Cut	cut	cut
Dare	dared durst [*ventured*]	dared

* *Cleave*, meaning *adhere*, is regular.

Present	Past	Perf. Part.
Deal	dealt	dealt
Dig	**dug** / digged	**dug** / digged
Do	**did**	**done**
Draw	**drew**	**drawn**
Dream	dreamed / dreamt	dreamed / dreamt
Drink	**drank**	**drunk**
Drive	**drove**	**driven**
Dwell	dwelt / dwelled	dwelt / dwelled
Eat	**ate**	**eaten**
Fall	**fell**	**fallen**
Feed	fed	fed
Feel	felt	felt
Fight	**fought**	**fought**
Find	**found**	**found**
Flee	fled	fled
Fling	**flung**	**flung**
Fly	**flew**	**flown**
Forget	**forgot**	**forgotten** / **forgot**
Forsake	**forsook**	**forsaken**
Freeze	**froze**	**frozen**
Get	**got**	**got** / **gotten**
Gild	gilded	gilded / gilt
Gird	girded / girt	girded / girt
Give	**gave**	**given**
Go	[went]	**gone**
Grave	—— / graved	**graven** / graved
Grind	**ground**	**ground**
Grow	**grew**	**grown**

Present	Past	Perf. Part.
Hang *	**hung**	**hung**
Have	had	had
Hear	heard	heard
Heave	**hove** / heaved	**hoven** / heaved
Hew	hewed / ——	hewed / **hewn**
Hide	**hid**	**hidden** / **hid**
Hit	hit	hit
Hold	**held**	**held**
Hurt	hurt	hurt
Keep	kept	kept
Kneel	knelt / kneeled	knelt / kneeled
Knit	knit / knitted	knit / knitted
Know	**knew**	**known**
Lade	laded	laded / **laden**
Lay	laid	laid
Lead	led	led
Leap	leaped / leapt	leaped / leapt
Learn	learned / learnt	learned / learnt
Leave	left	left
Lend	lent	lent
Let	let	let
Lie	**lay**	**lain**
Lose	lost	lost
Make	made	made
May	might	——
Mean	meant	meant
Meet	met	met

* *Hang*, meaning *cause death*, is regular.

Present	Past	Perf. Part.
Mow	**mowed**	{ mowed **mown**
Must	——	——
Ought	——	——
Past	pássed	{ passed past
Pay	paid	paid
Pen	{ penned pent	{ penned pent
Put	put	put
Quit	{ quit quitted	{ quit quitted
——	**quoth**	——
Read	read	read
Rend	rent	{ rent rended
Rid	rid	rid
Ride	**rode**	**ridden**
Ring	**rang**	**rung**
Rise	**rose**	**risen**
Rive	{ —— rived	{ **riven** rived
Run	**ran**	**run**
Saw	sawed	{ sawed **sawn**
Say	said	said
See	**saw**	**seen**
Seek	sought	sought
Sell	sold	sold
Send	sent	sent
Set	set	set
Shake	**shook**	**shaken**
Shall	should	——
Shape	shaped	{ shaped **shapen**
Shave	shaved	{ shaved **shaven**

Present	Past	Perf. Part.
Shear	sheared	{ sheared **shorn**
Shed	shed	shed
Shine	{ **shone** shined	{ **shone** shined
Shoe	shod	shod
Shoot	shot	**shot**
Show	{ showed	{ **shown** showed
Shred	shred	shred
Shrink	{ **shrank** **shrunk**	{ **shrunk** **shrunken**
Shrive	{ shrived	{ **shriven**
Shut	shut	shut
Sing	{ **sang** **sung**	**sung**
Sink	**sank**	**sunk**
Sit	**sat**	**sat**
Slay	**slew**	**slain**
Sleep	slept	slept
Slide	**slid**	{ **slidden** **slid**
Sling	**slung**	**slung**
Slink	**slunk**	**slunk**
Slit	slit	slit
Smell	{ smelled smelt	{ smelled smelt
Smite	**smote**	**smitten**
Sowed	sowed	{ sowed **sown**
Speak	{ **spoke** **spake**	**spoken**
Speed	sped	sped
Spell	{ spelled spelt	{ spelled spelt
Spend	spent	spent

Present	Past	Perf. Part.
Spill	spilled	spilled spilt
Spin	**spun**	**spun**
Spit	**spit** **spat**	**spit**
Split	split	split
Spoil	spoiled spoilt	spoiled spoilt
Spread	spread	spread
Spring	**sprang**	**sprung**
Stand	**stood**	**stood**
Stave	staved **stove**	staved **stove**
Steal	**stole**	**stolen**
Stick	**stuck**	**stuck**
Sting	**stung**	**stung**
Stink	**stank** **stunk**	**stunk**
Strew	—— strewed	**strewed**
Stride	**strode**	**stridden**
Strike	**struck**	**struck** **stricken**
String	**strung**	**strung**
Strive	**strove**	**striven**
Strow	—— strowed	**strown**
Swear	**swore**	**sworn**
Sweat	sweat sweated	sweat sweated

Present	Past	Perf. Part
Swell	—— swelled	**swollen** swelled
Swim	**swam**	**swum**
Swing	**swung**	**swung**
Take	**took**	**taken**
Teach	taught	taught
Tear	**tore**	**torn**
Tell	told	told
Think	thought	thought
Thrive	**throve** thrived	**thriven** thrived
Throw	**threw**	**thrown**
Thrust	thrust	thrust
Tread	**trod**	**trodden** **trod**
Wake	waked **woke**	waked
Wear	**wore**	**worn**
Weave	**wove**	**woven**
Weep	wept	wept
Wet	wet	wet
Will *	would	——
Win	**won**	**won**
Wind	**wound**	**wound**
Wit	wist	——
Work	worked wrought	worked wrought
Wring	**wrung**	**wrung**
Write	**wrote**	**written**

* *Will*, meaning *bequeath*, is regular.

III. THE SUBJUNCTIVE MODE

It appears to be impossible to frame a concise and exact definition of the Subjunctive mode, or descriptions of its functions. It has been treated as distinguished from the Indicative only where it has separate forms, for in such cases only does it have a palpably distinctive force. The Indicative mode has been described as the one that is used in stating a fact, or in asking a simple question of fact, while the Subjunctive is used to express a thought involving doubt, concession, or wish. Yet the same feeling of doubt or indeterminateness that characterizes the Subjunctive is often conveyed by the forms that are now assigned to the Indicative. For example, in the sentence,

Even if he *fails* in this, he will still persevere,

the conditional force of the Indicative *fails*, appears to differ in degree, not in kind, from that of the Subjunctive *fail* in—

Even if he *fail* in this, he will still persevere. Again in —

Though he *may be telling* the truth, you cannot trust him, and

Though he *be telling* the truth, etc., the Indicative of the Potential phrase, *may be telling*, differs from the Subjunctive *be telling*, only in presenting the thought as somewhat less uncertain. Historically, it appears that the Indicative mode has borrowed something of the force of the Subjunctive; and in parsing the verb *fails*, or the Potential verb phrase *may be telling*, we may say that they are in the Indicative mode, and have the force of the Subjunctive (or are used with Subjunctive force).

There is, of course, the alternative treatment, which regards the Subjunctive as sharing the *forms* of the Indicative, rather than the Indicative as sharing the *force* of the Subjunctive. The second method appears to be more easy of comprehension; and as it leads to the same results when applied in the analysis of thought, it has been adopted here.

Other constructions in which a choice of modes is allowed are:

TEMPORAL CLAUSE.

Subjunctive. Wait till this tyranny *be* overpast.
Indicative. Wait till this tyranny *is* overpast.

PURPOSE CLAUSE.

Subjunctive. Let him take heed lest he *fall.*
Indicative. Let him take heed that he *does* not *fall.*

RESULT CLAUSE.

Subjunctive. So live that thou *go* not —
Indicative. So live that you *do* not *go.*

INDIRECT QUESTION.

Subjunctive. Which *were* the better course none could tell.
Indicative. Which *was* (or *would be*) the better course none could tell.

NOUN CLAUSE.

Subjunctive. The first requirement is that every man *be* in his place at the appointed hour.
Indicative. The first requirement is that every man *shall be* in his place at the appointed hour.

One form of condition, however, and one form of wish always require the verb to be distinctively in the Subjunctive mode. Examine the following sentences. In —

"If the owner *were* here he would not refuse permission," it is distinctly implied that the owner is *not* here. Such conditions, where the supposition is the opposite of the fact, are often called *conditions contrary to fact.* In the wish —

"O that this tale were true," it is clearly implied that the tale is *not* true. Such wishes may be termed *unattainable wishes.*

When the predicates of conditions contrary to fact or of unattainable wishes contain the word *be,* and when also they denote non-fulfillment in the present time, they are in the Subjunctive mode. When, however, these conditions and wishes relate to *past* time their verbs take the Indicative forms, as —

If you *had been here,* this would not have happened.
O *had* he *been* more careful.

So also do other verbs than *be* in such conditions and wishes relating to time present or past, as —

If he *saw* you here, he would certainly be angry (or If he *had seen*).
O had I the wings of a dove I would fly.

We hear occasionally in careless speech such expressions as —

"If he *was* here he would help."

"I would not do this if I *was* you." They are nevertheless as true violations of present correct usage as to say, "He doesn't know nothing about the matter."

The Potential phrases formed by the auxiliaries *could, may, might, should,* and *would* are sometimes treated as forms of the Subjunctive mode. It seems more consistent, however, and it certainly is much simpler, to class them as phrases in the Indicative mode with Subjunctive force, in such sentences as —

If he *should* remain he *would be* well entertained, I care not what you *may do*, and the like.

If one examines any extended selection of a careful author, he will find by far the largest portion of the verbs in the Indicative mode, for even where the Subjunctive might be employed its place is usually taken by the Indicative. Yet its part in the masterpieces of English literature is by no means an insignificant one, and the discriminating use of the Subjunctive lends a grace and delicacy to the expression of thought of which the most finished writers of today gladly avail themselves.

PART THREE
LESSONS IN COMPOSITION

CHAPTER I

CAPITALS, PUNCTUATION, ETC.

LESSON I

THE USE OF CAPITALS

One of the marks of a good writer is the proper use of capital letters. The most important rules for capitals are the following:

A *Capital Letter* should be used to begin —

1. Every sentence.
2. Every line of poetry.
3. Every direct quotation.
4. All individual or special names of persons, places, months, and days; as —

William Shakespeare, Spain, September, Saturday, Easter.

All words made from them; as —

Shakespearean, Spanish.

And all abbreviations of them; as —

Wm., Sept.

5. All names applied to God.

6. The principal words in titles. Thus:

The President of the United States.
"The Land of the Midnight Sun."

7. The words I and O should always be capitals.

[See Appendix II.]

Exercise 1. — Copy the following passages, using capital letters where they are needed. Give a reason for each change that you make.

(*a*) thus they answered — hoping, fearing,
some in faith, and doubting some, —
till a trumpet-voice, proclaiming,
said, "my chosen people, come!"
then the drum,
lo! was dumb;
for the great heart of the nation, throbbing, answered, "lord, we come!"

(*b*) here we see the very same wolf — do not go near him, annie! — the selfsame wolf that devoured little red ridinghood and her grandmother.

(*c*) "When you are older," said james's father, "you can read the 'iliad.'"

"o i know what that is," replied james, "it is a story about the grecian war written by a greek poet named homer. our teacher read some of it to us last friday."

Exercise 2. — Think of the most interesting story about an animal that you have ever read or heard. Write it briefly in your own words, paying particular attention to the use of capitals.

LESSON II

SOME RULES FOR PUNCTUATION

Writing is much clearer and easier to understand when it is properly punctuated, for punctuation-marks show where the sentences end and how they are divided. Some of the marks

show also the kind of sentence. Other aids to clearness are the apostrophe, quotation-marks, and the hyphen. The following are simple rules for these marks.*

1. The **Period** [.] must be used after —

Every complete sentence that is not a question nor an exclamation.

All abbreviations or initial letters.

A heading, title, or signature, when used alone. [See p. 345.]

2. The **Question-mark** [?] must be used after —

Every complete question.

3. The **Exclamation-point** [!] must be used after —

Every expression that is very exclamatory.

4. The **Comma** [,] must be used to separate from the rest of the sentence —

The name of the person spoken to. Thus:

John, come forward.

A direct quotation, or each of the parts of one if it is divided.

The **Comma** must also be used to separate —

The parts of a series of three or more words of the same kind.

The flags were red, white, and blue.

The parts of a sentence that is made up of two or more sentences. Thus:

We have come, and you must go.

5. The **Apostrophe** ['] must be used to denote —

Possession.

The omission of letters in contracted words.

The plurals of letters, figures, etc. Thus:

Dot your i's. Your 4's are poor.

* A fuller treatment of punctuation will be found in Appendix II.

6. Quotation-marks [" "] must be used to inclose —

Every direct quotation, or each of the parts into which it is divided.

The title of a book or periodical, if the title is long.

7. The **Hyphen** [-] must be used **between** —

The parts of some compound words.

The syllables of a word written on different lines.

Exercise 1. — Tell why each **punctuation-mark** is used in these sentences:

1. How many days are there in a leap year?
2. Can Honor's voice provoke the silent dust?
3. Boys, have you ever read "Tom Brown at Rugby"?
4. Now abideth faith, hope, charity.
5. The houses were low, narrow, and dingy.
6. Julius Cæsar wrote, "I came, I saw, I conquered."
7. "Experience keeps a dear school, but fools will learn in no other."
8. Which sounds better, "No, sir, I can't"; or, "Yes, ma'am, I'll try"?
9. "The Courtship of Miles Standish" was written by Henry W. Longfellow.

Exercise 2. — The old Greeks got on with very little punctuation. They even ran their words together, as in the following passage. Try rewriting this interesting little story, separating the words, and putting in punctuation where it is needed.

MrPopewhowascrookedandcrosswastalkingwithayoungofficertheofficer saidthethoughtthatinacertainsentenceaninterrogationmarkwasneededdo youknowwhataninterrogationmarkissnarledoutthecrookedcrosslittleman itisacrookedlittlethingthatasksquestionssaidtheyoungmanandheshutup MrPopeforthatday.

Exercise 3. — Think of the most amusing incident that you can recall. It may be something that you have seen or heard at your home, on the schoolground, or in the schoolroom. Make a brief story of it, writing as simply and straightforwardly as you can, as if for a little child to read. Attend particularly to the punctuation.

LESSON III

QUOTATIONS

1. When we introduce the exact language of another person into what we are writing, we make what is called a **Direct Quotation.** Thus:

Prince Edward and his division were so hard pressed that a message was sent to the King, asking for aid. "Is my son killed?" said the King. "No, sire." "Is he wounded or thrown to the ground?" "No, sire," said the messenger; "but he is very hard pressed." "Then," said the King, "I shall send no aid; because I am resolved that the honor of a great victory shall be his."

2. In writing a direct quotation, we must remember three things:

(1) To begin it with a capital.

(2) To inclose it in quotation-marks.

(3) To separate it from the rest of the sentence by a comma, unless it is a question or an exclamation.

If the quotation consists of several sentences, it may be preceded by a colon [:].

3. When we introduce anything into our writing as a thought or an opinion of another without using his exact language, we make an **Indirect Quotation.** Thus:

DIRECT. The King said, "**I have** lost the hearts of **my** people."
INDIRECT. The King said that **he had** lost the hearts of **his** people.

Indirect quotations frequently begin with the word "that," and they require no quotation-marks.

4. A **Divided Quotation** is one which is given in two parts, with some of the writer's own words between.

Each part should be inclosed in quotation-marks, and should generally be separated from the rest by commas. Thus:

"I propose to fight it out on this line," wrote General Grant, "if it takes all summer."

5. In writing a conversation between two persons, what each one says should generally occupy a separate paragraph. Thus:

"Colonel Miller," asked General Brown, "can you silence that battery?"

"I'll try, sir," replied the gallant colonel.

Exercise 1. — Change the direct quotations in this lesson into indirect quotations.

Exercise 2. — Rewrite the following passage, inserting quotation-marks where they are needed:

The gentleman turned to the boy who was sitting on the log, and said, Where do you live?

Sir?

Where do you live?

The boy hesitated a moment as if he did not understand him. Then he said,

I don't know, sir. I don't live anywhere.

The little boy in the wagon laughed.

Don't know where you live, said the gentleman. Well, what are you doing out here?

I have been catching butterflies.

Exercise 3. — Continue this conversation. What will the gentleman ask next? What will the boy on the log reply? What questions may the little boy in the wagon ask, and what will be the replies? As the gentleman and the little boy drive away, what will they say to each other? Write this all out, paying particular attention to the use of quotation-marks.

LESSON IV

REVIEW OF CAPITALS, PUNCTUATION, AND QUOTATION-MARKS

Exercises. — Copy one or more of the following selections, or write from the dictation of your teacher, using capitals and punctuation marks correctly. Attend carefully also to the quotations.

1. Over and over again,
No matter which way I turn,
I always find in the book of life
Some lesson I have to learn.
I must take my turn at the mill;
I must grind out the golden grain;
I must work at my task with a resolute will,
Over and over again.

2. William H. Prescott, John L. Motley, and George Bancroft are distinguished American historians. Prescott wrote "The Conquest of Mexico." Motley wrote "The Rise of the Dutch Republic." Bancroft wrote the "History of the United States."

3. Know old Cambridge? Hope you do.
Born there? Don't say so! I was too:
Born in a house with a gambrel roof, —
Standing still, if you must have proof.

Yes, in the old gambrel-roofed house looking out on the College Green, lived Rev. Dr. Abiel Holmes — pastor of the First Church in Cambridge, Massachusetts, but of wider fame as the author of the "American Annals" — and there was born to him the son, Oliver Wendell, who was to shed new luster on the family name as the brightest of American poets and essayists. His birthdate is August 29, 1809.

4. Henry Wadsworth Longfellow, the most popular of American poets, was born in Portland, Maine, Feb. 27, 1807. His father was a well-known jurist, and, like Bryant, he was descended from John Alden, the youngest of the *Mayflower's* Pilgrims.

From 1835, the time of his appointment as Professor of Modern Languages and Literature in Harvard University, till his death, March 24, 1882, Longfellow lived in the stately old Cambridge mansion occupied by Washington during the siege of Boston, 1775-76.

5. "Our enemies are before us," exclaimed the Spartans at Thermopylæ. "And we are before them," was the cool reply of Leonidas. "Deliver your arms," came the message from Xerxes. "Come and take them," was the answer Leonidas sent back. A Persian soldier said: "You will not be able to see the sun for flying javelins and arrows." "Then we will fight in the shade," replied a Lacedæmonian.

CHAPTER II

The Choice of Words

LESSON V

SYNONYMS

We often find several words nearly alike in meaning, each one of which we must learn to use in its proper place. Such words are called **Synonyms.** Thus:

Ancient, old, aged, elderly, antiquated, are synonyms, for, in a general way, they have the same meaning; but we say "ancient customs," "old trees," "aged or elderly persons," "antiquated fashions."

Synonyms are words that have the same or nearly the same meaning.

Exercise 1. — 1. Separate the following words into **five groups,** each containing **five synonyms.**

2. **Use** the words of each group in expressions that will illustrate their meaning. Thus:

"A *plot* to rob the bank"; "the *arrangement* of words"; "a *scheme* for raising money"; "a *conspiracy* to assassinate the king."

plot	misfortune	grand	beautiful	reduce
diminish	scheme	calamity	superb	free
liberal	decrease	plan	disaster	magnificent
splendid	generous	abate	conspiracy	catastrophe
mishap	gorgeous	lavish	lessen	arrangement

Exercise 2. — 1. Find one or two **synonyms** for each of the following words:

Busy; bold; honest; counterfeit; obscure; barren; appease; cheerful; dead; larceny; defeat; certain; collect; death; frighten; censure; frank; famous; obstinate; spacious.

2. Give one or two words that are **opposite in meaning** to each of the foregoing.

Exercise 3. — Read each phrase, **substituting synonyms** for the italicized words.

1. *Insipid* fruit. 2. *Gnarled* oaks. 3. *Relentless* foes. 4. *Chaplet* of flowers. 5. *Sepulchers* of kings. 6. *Auspicious* omens. 7. Debtor's *assets*. 8. *Martial* music. 9. *Voluntary* offering. 10. A *gluttonous* fellow. 11. *Waning* power. 12. *Obsequies* of a ruler. 13. *Imprudent* methods. 14. *Infallible* signs. 15. *Indelible* impressions. 16. Merchants' *liabilities*. 17. Raleigh's *explorations*. 18. *Frugal* habits. 19. *Brutal* actions. 20. *Benevolent* feelings.

LESSON VI

SYNONYMS

Exercise 1. — **Substitute words or expressions** as synonyms for the italicized words.

1. *Prepare* your lessons. 2. *Honor* your *parents*. 3. The *thief* was *caught*. 4. He spoke *excitedly*. 5. *Peacefully slept* the *weary children*. 6. A *furious gale* was raging. 7. A few *dilapidated* old *buildings still stand* in the *deserted hamlet*. 8. We *urged* his *going*. 9. The Nile overflows *once a year*. 10. Much *fatigued* we *reached* the end of our *journey*. 11. *Farming* is a *pleasant occupation*. 12. There is no cause *sacred enough* to *justify* a *violation of the truth*. 13. We *resolved* to make the attempt in *spite* of all *difficulties*. 14. The *prisoners* were *condemned* and *executed*. 15. He *addressed* the *mariners*. 16. She was *the one who inherited* her uncle's *wealth*. 17. We awoke *as soon as the sun rose*. 18. What *ought* I *to do?* 19. After *the sun had gone down*, we resumed the journey that to some of us seemed *without end*.

Exercise 2. — **Substitute sentences** of equivalent meaning.

1. The *opposing forces* stood in *battle array*. 2. The supply *constantly increases*. 3. Plants are the *habitations* of insects. 4. They *traversed* the *lofty* mountains that *surround* this beautiful *region*. 5. The *majority of mankind* earn their *livelihood* by *hard work*. 6. The army was *animated* by the spirit of its *leader*. 7. Sailors *encounter* constant *perils*. 8. The *intelligence* was brought by a *courier*. 9. Our *liberties* were not *secured* without a *struggle*.

LESSON VII

VARIETY OF EXPRESSION

Exercise 1. — The Wide-Awake Debating Club is to discuss this question: "*Resolved,* That life in the country is more pleasant for young people than life in the city." Write what you would say on either side of the question, if you were a member of the club.

Exercise 2. — Write what might be said by your opponent on the other side of the question.

Exercise 3. — Rewrite one of the preceding exercises, trying to make it clear and interesting to a child in the fourth grade. Use the simplest words and expressions you can think of, but do not change the meaning very much.

LESSON VIII

SYNONYMS DISCRIMINATED

Very few synonyms have exactly the same meaning. Sometimes the difference between two words is so slight that only careful study will show what it is. Sometimes it is so great that one word cannot be safely used for the other in any sentence. Every one who wishes to use words correctly must be on the watch for these differences. It is not enough to use the *almost right* word; we must use, if we can, the *exactly right* word. If we mean "a *mischievous* boy," we must not say "a *wicked* boy." If we wish to speak of "a *large* sum of money," we must not say "an *immense* sum of money."

Exercise 1. — What is the **difference** between —

a *lazy* boy	and	an *idle* boy;
a *large* man	and	a *great* man;
a *large* gift	and	a *generous* gift;
what one *wants*	and	what one *needs;*
he *hopes*	and	he *expects;*
a *trade*	and	an *occupation;*

peeling fruit	and	*paring* fruit;
a *street*	and	a *road*;
a *savage* dog	and	a *surly* dog;
an *indignant* man	and	an *angry* man.

Exercise 2. — Study the words in each of the following pairs till you think that you understand the meaning of them. Then **use** each of the words so as to show that you can discriminate between them.

1. That is **healthful** which *gives* health; that is **healthy** which *has* health.
2. **To remember** is to call to mind readily; **to recollect** is to recall with effort. We can sometimes recollect what we do not remember.
3. **Habit** is the result of **custom.** What is *customary* soon grows to be *habitual.*
4. A man's **reputation** depends on what he *appears* to be; his **character** is what he really *is.*
5. **Brave** and **courageous** men do their duty, even though suffering from fear or disapproval; **bold** and **reckless** men neither fear nor care.
6. **Crimes** are offenses against law; **sins** are offenses against the right.
7. We **convince** a man by argument; we **persuade** him by advice and entreaty.

Exercise 3. — Explain the **difference in meaning** between the words of each pair. Thus:

Mountains and clouds are *high*; masts and trees are *tall.*
Do not say "I *guess* so" if you know enough about the subject to say "I *think* so."

1. high, tall;	4. silent, quiet;	7. pardon, forgive;
2. glance, look;	5. economical, stingy;	8. kill, murder;
3. guess, think;	6. hear, understand;	9. see, notice, observe.

Exercise 4. — Discriminate between the words in each pair, and **use** them in sentences.

1. love, like;	4. bring, fetch;	7. believe, think;
2. export, transport;	5. bear, carry;	8. learn, teach;
3. follow, pursue;	6. discover, invent;	9. education, learning.

LESSON IX

WORDS RELATED IN MEANING

Many words in the language are connected in meaning, though they may not be sufficiently alike to be called synonyms. It will be interesting to study some of them.

Exercise 1. — Find several words or expressions that are **related in their meaning** to each of the following. Thus *true, correct, definite* are related to "exact," though not strictly synonomous with it. Explain the difference in each case.

exact	ambush	size	inquiry
exchange	banner	orifice	deny
prudent	ample	journey	error
find	alter	docile	ignorant
taciturn	maintain	necessary	culpable
frighten	origin	hinder	sagacious
future	strength	speed	insane
veteran	savage	frosty	veracity
evening	dominate	look	obstinate
procrastinate	concur	certain	request
aged	occupant		

Exercise 2. — **Answer these questions** thus:

"A *just* decision is one that is *fair* to all parties concerned."

"*Authentic* reports are such as come from a *reliable* source."

(*a*) What is a —

1. *just* decision? 2. *salubrious* climate? 3. man of *veracity*? 4. *veracious* statement? 5. *voracious* animal? 6. *majority* of five? 7. *minority* of three? 8. *plurality* of seven? 9. *ambiguous* remark?

(*b*) What are —

1. *sanguinary* battles? 2. *pugnacious* people? 3. *contemporaneous* events? 4. *tyrannical* rulers? 5. *arbitrary* rules? 6. *maritime* countries? 7. *hospitable* persons? 8. *authentic* reports? 9. *junior* partners?

Exercise 3. — Study the face of the boy in the picture on the next page. Does it express *wonder, surprise, interest, curiosity, amusement, amazement,* or *astonishment?* Tell what each word means, and show that the one you have chosen is the best.

LESSON X

RIGHT WORDS AND WRONG WORDS

Here are two lists of words and phrases. Those on the left are words to be avoided. They are words that are not used by people who know how to speak and write correctly. Those on the right are good words which everybody ought to use. Read the lists carefully and resolve that hereafter whenever you speak or write you will choose the good words and shun the bad.

To be Avoided.	*To be Used.*
drownded	drowned
yourn	yours
wonst	once
nowheres	nowhere

To be Avoided.	*To be Used.*
attackted	attacked
preventative	preventive
unbeknown	unknown
gents	gentlemen
hain't	haven't
I ain't	I am not
he ain't	he isn't
they ain't	they're not
throwed	threw
blowed	blew
knowed	knew
he done it	he did it
I seen it	I saw it
them things	those things
these sort	this sort
to home	at home
to once	at once
sez he	said he
just as lives	just as lief
ruther	rather
remember of	remember
et	ate

Exercise. — Read the following sentences, filling the blanks with the right words:

1. My kitten fell into the brook and was dr——. 2. I do not like th—— sort of apples. 3. He kn—— where the dog was before he heard it bark. 4. We called at the house but nobody was —— home. 5. Jack said he would just as l—— go as stay. 6. When my father asked him where he lived, he laughed, and said, "Nowh——." 7. A sudden gust of wind bl—— my hat off. 8. In reply to the question "What did you learn at school today?" he always said, "Nothing that I re——." 9. My camera is larger than y——. 10. What is the name of th—— things in the window? 11. He had to defend himself when the boys att—— him. 12. Which would you r—— have, a pony or an automobile? 13. While we were out of the room the cat jumped on the table and —— up the meat. 14. George Washington once thr—— a silver dollar across the Potomac River.

LESSON XI

EXPRESSIONS TO BE AVOIDED

Study the following sentences and note the expressions which should be avoided. You will probably need to refer to them many times.

To be Avoided.	*To be Used.*
1. I wish everybody would mind *their* own business.	1. I wish everybody would mind *his* own business.
2. I *expect* you got wet yesterday.	2. I *suppose* you got wet yesterday.
3. If I *had have known* you were coming, I should have stayed at home.	3. If I *had known* you were coming, I should have stayed at home.
4. He felt *kind of* sorry at leaving us.	4. He felt *rather* sorry at leaving us.
5. This is *all the farther* we have gone.	5. This is *as far as* we have gone.
6. William makes his R's just *like* I do.	6. William makes his R's just *as* I do.
7. Aren't you *most* through?	7. Aren't you *almost* through?

1. *Their* should be used when the antecedent is plural, *his* when the antecedent is singular. See p. 123, § 298.

2. *Expect* refers to the future. We can say "I expect that he will come tomorrow," but not "I expect that he came yesterday."

3. *Had known* is the past perfect tense of the verb *know*. See p. 238.

4. *Kind of* should be used only in such expressions as "this kind of goods." Avoid also *kind o'*, *kinder* (in the sense of *kind of*), *sort o'*, and *sorter*.

5. *All the farther*, in the sense of *as far as*, is simply bad English.

6. *Like* is a preposition and is properly used in such expressions as "He looks like me." *As* is a conjunctive adverb. See p. 200, § 494.

7. *Most* is the superlative form of *many* or *much*. See p. 135, § 325.

Exercise. — Read or write the following sentences, filling the blanks with the words that should be used.

1. If you —— come by the morning train I could have met you at the station. 2. I —— you are tired after your long walk. 3. Dinner is —— ready. 4. Everyone is expected to bring —— own luncheon. 5. Spring Lake is —— lonesome after the tourists have left. 6. Frank told me that was —— the lesson went. 8. Why don't you signal to him —— I do?

LESSON XII

RIGHT WORDS AND WRONG WORDS

The Wrong Words	*The Right Words*
1. I can't go *without* my father gives me the money.	1. I can't go *unless* my father gives me the money.
2. Potatoes are going to be *plenty* next fall.	2. Potatoes are going to be *plentiful* next fall.
3. Next month I am to have a *raise* in my salary.	3. Next month I am to have a *rise* (or *increase*) in my salary.
4. Mr. Smith has *rode* the same bicycle for twenty years.	4. Mr. Smith has *ridden* the same bicycle for twenty years.
5. When I got up the house was *real* warm.	5. When I got up the house was *really* (or *very*) warm.
6. Aunt May is feeling *some* better this morning.	6. Aunt May is feeling *somewhat* better this morning.
7. The old cat came with us a little *ways*.	7. The old cat came with us a little *way*.

1. *Without* is a preposition. *Unless* is **a subordinating conjunction.** See p. 36 and p. 215.

2. *Plenty* is a noun. *Plentiful* is an adjective.

3. *Raise* is a verb. *Rise,* in this case, is a noun.

4. *Rode* is the past tense, *ridden* the past participle, of the verb *ride.*

5. *Real* is an adjective, but an adverb is needed.

6. *Some* is an adjective. *Somewhat* is an adverb.

7. We may say *a way* but not *a ways.*

Exercise. — Use the right words to fill the blanks in the following sentences:

1. Chestnuts are very —— this year. 2. This check is worthless —— you sign your name to it. 3. The firm has promised me a —— in salary the first of November. 4. Nobody has ever —— this mustang. 5. Judge Henson lives a little —— beyond the stone schoolhouse. 6. The thermometer is —— higher than it was yesterday. 7. If you will be —— quiet I will read you a story.

LESSON XIII

WORDS SIMILAR IN FORM

Words nearly alike in form or pronunciation may have very different meanings. Such pairs of words require special attention. Study carefully the following list and note the differences.

Except, *to leave out,*
Affect, *to act upon, to influence,*
Love, *to regard with affection,*
Lay, *reclined,*
Sat, *took a seat,*
Captivate, *to charm,*
Stop, *to halt,*

Accept, *to receive, to agree to;*
Effect, *to produce, to accomplish;*
Like, *to be pleased with, to enjoy;*
Laid, *placed* [see § 438];
Set, *placed;*
Capture, *to catch;*
Stay, *to remain.*

Exercise. — **Fill the blanks** with the appropriate words selected from the preceding list.

1. Please —— my thanks for your kindness. 2. How was he —— by the news? 3. I —— good music. 4. Have you ever —— up all night? 5. He —— it away in his safe. 6. He —— in bed until noon. 7. I —— my neighbors, but I do not —— them. 8. His troubles have ——

his mind. 9. I cannot —— your invitation. 10. She —— down to rest. 11. The Japanese —— three of the Russian cruisers. 12. How long will you —— in San Francisco? 13. Although he was greatly —— by the loss of his friend, he did not cease working until he had —— his purpose.

LESSON XIV

WORDS SOMEWHAT ALIKE

Exercise 1. — (*a*) From the dictionary **learn the difference in meaning** between the words in each of the following pairs:

1. Prescribe, proscribe ; 2. proceed, precede ; 3. impute, impugn ; 4. statue, statute ; 5. species, specie ; 6. respectively, respectfully ; 7. expect, suspect ; 8. convince, convict ; 9. lightning, lightening ; 10. fly, flee ; 11. liniment, lineament ; 12. ingenious, ingenuous ; 13. stationery, stationary.

(*b*) Use words from the *first three pairs* to complete these sentences :

1. What did the physician ——? 2. In what order did they —— to the temple? 3. The band —— the regiment. 4. You should not —— wrong motives to me. 5. The lawyer —— the honesty of the witness.

(*c*) **Use** each of the remaining words in a sentence or phrase, to show that you can discriminate between them.

Exercise 2. — Tell the **difference in meanings** of these words, and use each word in a sentence:

1. Missives, missiles; 2. emigrants, immigrants; 3. pour, pore; 4. diseased, deceased; 5. prospective, retrospective; 6. luxurious, luxuriant ; 7. equity, iniquity; 8. retaliate, reciprocate; 9. principal, principle; 10. rout, route; 11. propose, purpose; 12. contemptible, contemptuous; 13. complement, compliment; 14. human, humane.

LESSON XV

UNNECESSARY WORDS

Do not use words that are not needed to express the thought clearly.

For example; *got* implies action, and should not be used with *have* to show simple possession, as in — We have *got* ten fingers.

Exercise 1. — Relieve the following sentences of all needless words or expressions:

1. I have not got any money left. 2. My friend got badly hurt yesterday. 3. A widow woman called to see you. 4. From whence came they? 5. Smell of these flowers. 6. Taste of this fruit. 7. You had ought to read more. 8. I can never find no time. 9. You have stood up too long: sit down a while. 10. He has lost one-half of his money. 11. Put the vase up on to the shelf. 12. From hence we infer his inability. 13. This fact is universally known by all. 14. Payment must be made by the latter end of the month. 15. You hadn't ought to use any unnecessary words. 16. Where have you been to? 17. Had I have known it, I should have gone also. 18. Edward and James they both went. 19. A strait connects them together.

Exercise 2. — Point out the superfluous words, and show **why** they are unnecessary.

1. He is equally as anxious as you. 2. Cover the plants over. 3. I shall always distrust him whenever he speaks. 4. The journey will require three weeks' time. 5. Keep off of the grass. 6. This evidence is wonderful and surprising. 7. You cannot give to a more worthier object. 8. He may probably go, but he cannot possibly succeed. 9. He was filled with unbounded admiration. 10. I shall first begin by showing the defects, and then afterwards I shall finish by showing the excellences of the system. 11. He abhorred and detested the idea of being in debt. 12. The funeral obsequies were largely attended. 13. I was just going to go. 14. You do very well for a new beginner. 15. The fort was completely surrounded on all sides by the enemy. 16. What you say is very true. 17. Thank those who are coworkers together.

LESSON XVI

INAPPROPRIATE WORDS

Avoid all unsuitable, or exaggerated, or "slang" expressions.

It is useless to try to describe all kinds of things by such words as "nice," "lovely," "awful," "splendid," or "perfectly immense"; find some other adjective that will express your meaning exactly, and remember that it is no disgrace to speak good English everywhere.

Exercise 1. — **Substitute** for the italicized words **suitable descriptive expressions.**

1. *Nice* weather; a *nice* picture; *nice* clothes; a *nice* man; a *nice* lecture; a *nice* ride; *nice* music; a *nice* plan. 2. An *awful* pen; *awful* good; *awfully* pretty; *awfully* dear; *awfully* slow. 3. *Splendid* pudding; *splendid* entertainment; a *perfectly splendid* sermon. 4. This sidewalk is *just too lovely for anything.* 5. The delay was *disgusting.* 6. What a *pretty* steamship! 7. Those shoes are an *immense* fit. 8. I *just adore* caramels. 9. I *hate* long stories. 10. The coffee seems *mighty* weak. 11. What a *horrid* mistake. 12. A *perfectly lovely* salad.

Exercise 2. — **Use correctly** in sentences: nice, awful, horrid, splendid, lovely, disgusting.

Exercise 3. — Select five words that may correctly describe a brook, a speech, music, Niagara Falls, a mountain path.

LESSON XVII

BIG AND LITTLE WORDS

The simplest words are usually the best. Never use a long word when a short one will say what you mean. Never use a phrase when you can put your thought in a word. Avoid big, high-sounding expressions like "a lurid conflagration" for "a fire," "a denizen of the metropolis" for "a city man," "a monarch of the forest" for "a tree"; especially beware of old, worn-out phrases such as "trip the light fantastic toe" for *dance,* "in the arms of Morpheus" for *asleep.* The fewer words you can use, the better, provided that you make your meaning entirely clear.

Exercise 1. — **Substitute** simpler or more appropriate expressions for those that are italicized.

1. He *resides in an elegant mansion.* 2. The barn was *consumed by the devouring element.* 3. We ***attended divine*** *service.* 4. He *was cut down by the scythe of Time.* 5. She was *ushered into existence* in Maine. 6. The streams are *bound by winter's icy chain.* 7. The ice broke, and the boy was *launched into eternity.* 8. We were *conveyed to the dearest spot on earth* in an express wagon. 9. Crowds *congregated to witness* the

race. 10. *Divest yourself of your outer habiliments*, and stay with us. 11. There were some *gorgeously appareled members of the gentler sex* present. 12. *Immediately upon our establishment in the hostelry* we *partook of a sumptuous repast.*

LESSON XVIII

AMBIGUOUS EXPRESSIONS

Try to frame your sentences in such a way that they cannot be misunderstood. Expressions which can mean either of two things are said to be **ambiguous.**

Thus the sentence "No one should drink this water without being boiled" might be taken to mean either (1) "Every person should be boiled before he drinks this water," or (2) "No one should drink this water without first boiling it."

Exercise 1. — Point out the two meanings which these sentences may have. Then **reconstruct** each sentence so that it shall have only one meaning:

1. Ask how old Mrs. Jones is. 2. What I want is common sense. 3. The judge told the lawyer that he was not an authority. 4. I have not heard from one of my friends. 5. She has given me more than you. 6. My friend's father died while he was in Europe. 7. I promised her mother that I would call upon her sister. 8. I had just met my partner a ruined man. 9. We met the same horse tramping through the snow in our rubber boots.

The most frequent cause of ambiguity is a wrong order of the words. *Try to arrange the parts of a sentence so that it may convey as clearly as possible just the meaning intended.*

Exercise 2. — Try to **improve the arrangement** of the words in the following expressions, and explain why changes are needed.

1. For sale: soft men's hats, black ladies' gloves, and leggings for children with or without feet. 2. We came very near being killed more than once. 3. He bought a new pair of gloves. 4. Carpets and clothes beaten and washed. 5. All rivers are not so swift. 6. Solve the next example to the end but one. 7. I should like to visit you very much. 8. I only recite in the morning. 9. I heard all you said very distinctly. 10. A fine view was obtained from the upper story of Niagara Falls.

11. Mrs. James only has one child. 12. I have been trying to have my watch repaired every day this week. 13. I never expect to be any taller than I am now. 14. Try to always put adverbs in their proper place.

LESSON XIX

VARIETY IN EXPRESSION

Exercise. — Read the following selection, substituting for the italicized words and phrases others that are synonymous or nearly so. Have you improved the narrative in any way? Give your reason.

I am *sure* that you have read *accounts* of *voyages* in the Arctic regions. You have been *told* of the sufferings of the *crews* during the long winters, amid the ice and snow; and you have heard *how*, during that *dismal period*, there is *total* darkness, for the sun never *rises* for weeks and months together. On the *other hand*, these northern *regions* often present a *more cheerful* picture. During midsummer, the long darkness of winter is *atoned for* by *perpetual* sunshine. At midnight there is still the full *brilliance* of day, and the sun, though low, no doubt, has not passed *below the horizon*. Even in the northerly parts of Europe *we can see the midnight sun*. Lord Dufferin, in his delightful narrative of a *cruise*, entitled "Letters from *High Latitudes*," gives an *interesting* illustration of the *perplexities* arising from *endless* daylight. It appears that everything went on *happily* until the *fatal moment* when the yacht crossed the Arctic Circle. Then it was that *dire tribulation* arose among the poultry. A *fine* cock was the cause of the *trouble*. *Knowing* his *duty*, he always liked to be *particular* about *performing* the *important task* of crowing at sunrise. This he could do regularly, so long as the yacht remained in *reasonable latitudes*, where the sun behaved *properly*. But when they crossed the Arctic Circle, the cock was *confronted* with a *wholly* new experience. The sun never set in the evening, and *consequently* never had to rise in the morning. What was the *distracted* bird to do? He did everything. He burst into occasional fits of *terrific* crowing at all *sorts* of hours, then he *gave up* crowing altogether, but finding that did not *mend* matters, he took to crowing *incessantly*. Exhaustion was *succeeded* by delirium, and rather than live any longer in a *universe* where the sun was capable of *pranks* so *heartless*, the *indignant* fowl *flung* himself from the vessel and *perished* in the Arctic Ocean.

— *R. S. Ball.*

CHAPTER III

LETTER-WRITING

LESSON XX

THE HEADING

The most general use of written language is for **Letters** which we send addressed to absent persons, to whom we have something to say.

1. Kinds. — Letters may, of course, be written upon any subject. They may serve in transacting business; they may give or ask for information or advice; or they may take the place of ordinary conversation between friends and acquaintances. Sometimes they are *formal*, sometimes *familiar*.

2. Form. — By custom a formal letter is made to consist of six parts:

1. The **Heading**,
2. The **Address**,
3. The **Salutation**,
4. The **Body of the Letter**,
5. The **Complimentary Ending**,
6. The **Writer's Signature**.

3. The **Heading** of a letter should give the *place* and *date* of writing. If a reply is to be sent to the place of writing, the letter should show exactly where to send it by mail. If a reply is to be sent elsewhere than to the place of writing, the fact should be indicated after the signature. (Form 8.)

1. **Place.** — If in a city or in any other place where they need to be known, give (*a*) the name or number of the **house**, and the name of the **street** (or else the post-office box). Thus: Turner's Inn, Green St.; or Park Sq. (Forms 1 to 26.)

(*b*) Always give the name of the **city**, **town**, or **post-office** to which replies are to be sent.

(*c*) When it would be of any use to tell the **county**, give that next. It sometimes happens that in one state there are several towns with similar names, so that the name of the county is needed to distinguish them; and if a town is small and little known, it may hasten the delivery of the reply to add the county.

(*d*) Next comes the name of the **state**, unless you are *sure* that it is not needed.

2. **Time.** — In familiar letters, and whenever it needs to be known, give first the **day of the week.** (Forms 4 and 12.) In other letters, give only the **day of the month**, the **month**, and the **year.** We may write 24 May, 1906, or May 24, 1906.

3. **Position of Heading.** — The heading may occupy *one*, *two*, or *three lines*, according to the space it requires. It begins an inch or more from the top, and about half way across the page toward the right. Each of the following lines, if one is not enough, should begin a little farther to the right. Always put the whole of the date on one line.

4. **Heading Omitted.** — Except in business letters, the heading is often omitted, and the place and time are given at the left of the page after the signature. (Forms 19 and 26.)

5. **Punctuation.** — Put commas after every part, except between the name and the day of the month, and between the name and the number of the street or post-office box. Put a period after abbreviations, and at the end of the whole.

Exercise. — Examine carefully the forms on pp. 273–279. Then write the following as **headings** properly arranged:

1. Oct. 25, 1906, Saratoga, State of New York, 217 Spring St.

2. I am in Andover, in Oxford Co., in Maine, at the Eagle Hotel, July 21, 1907.

3. At Home on Washington's Birthday, 1906, Thursday.

4. Outline model of letter showing indentions and arrangement of parts.

1. Heading.

2. Address.

3. Salutation.

4. Body of Letter.

5. Complimentary ending.

6. Signature.

LESSON XXI

THE ADDRESS AND THE SALUTATION

The Address

The **Address** of a letter consists of the name and title of the person or firm to whom it is written. Sometimes, especially in business letters, the residence or place of business is added.

1. **Name and Title.** — To the name of the person addressed it is polite to add an appropriate title.

(*a*) Before the name we may write:

Mr. in addressing a man.

Mrs. [Mistress] in addressing a married woman.

Messrs. [Messieurs] in addressing two or more men.

Miss (pl. **Misses**) in addressing an unmarried woman or a girl.

Master (pl. **Masters**) in addressing a boy.

Rev. or **The Rev.** before the full name or some other title in addressing a clergyman; as, The Rev. C. F. Howe; Rev. Mr. Howe; The Rev. Dr. Howe; *not* Rev. Howe.

Hon. in addressing members of Congress, and a few other high officials.

Dr. in addressing a physician; or any person who has one of the titles M.D., Ph.D., D.D., LL.D., etc.

(*b*) After the name we may write:

Esq. in addressing lawyers, many government officers, and sometimes other gentlemen, though it is now used less often than formerly.

(*c*) In addressing the President of the United States, or the Governor of a State, the following forms may be used:

To the President,
Executive Mansion,
Washington, D. C.
Sir: (or Mr. President).

To His Excellency, ————
Governor of the State of ————
Sir: (or Your Excellency).

(*d*) There are many other titles, such as Gen., Col., Supt., which may be used in addressing the persons to whom they rightfully belong.

(*e*) Sometimes two or more different titles are used together; as, Prof. Wm. Hale, M.D., LL.D.; but if both have the same meaning, as *Dr.* and *M.D.*, they should not be used together. With *Esq.*, no other title should be used; and we should not say *Mr. Dr. Brown.*

2. **Residence.** — By residence is meant the name of the post-office and state; sometimes also the street and number where a person receives letters.

3. **Arrangement and Position.** — The address may, like the heading, occupy one, two, or three lines. The first line should contain nothing but the name and title, and should not be indented from the left margin. Each of the following lines should be indented somewhat more than the one before it.

In *business letters* the address should be given on the two or three lines below the heading. In *familiar letters*, if given in full, it should begin on the line below the signature. In other letters it may be written at the end instead of at the top, especially when the *heading* is very long. (Form 11.)

The Salutation

The **Salutation** is a courteous or affectionate greeting that serves to introduce the body of the letter.

1. **Form.** — Its form depends upon who is writing, who is addressed, and what degree of intimacy or friendship there is between the two. Hence there are many forms from which to choose, though only a few can be given here. Where several forms are given in succession, the first are the most formal, the last are the most familiar.

(*a*) In business or formal letters of any sort we write:

Sir (pl., Sirs or Gentlemen);	Madam (pl., Ladies);
Dear Sir or Sirs;	Dear Madam;
My dear Sir.	My dear Madam.

A young unmarried woman is addressed simply as (for example) Miss Brown, or Dear Miss Brown.

(*b*) In more familiar letters, we may use one of the preceding forms, or such as these:

Friend Brown;	My dear Ned;	Cousin Clara;
Dear Brown;	My dear Friend;	My dear Mother.

2. **Position.** — If the address consists of three lines, the salutation may be indented as much as the second line. (Form 18.) If it consists of one or two lines, the salutation should be written a little to the right. (Forms 13, 16.)

If the address is omitted here, the salutation should begin at the left margin of the line below the heading.

Although usage is not uniform, there is a tendency among typewriters to place the salutation by itself on the line below the address without indention. This is done so that the body of the letter may stand alone.

Punctuation. — After the salutation, use a comma, a colon, a comma and a dash, or a colon and a dash, according to the degree of formality with which the letter begins. The comma is the least formal.

Exercise. — After studying the forms on pp. 274–277, write the various addresses and salutations that you might use —

1. In writing to your father; your brother or sister; your uncle; your grandmother; your cousin.
2. In writing to an intimate friend; to your teacher; to a physician; to a neighbor.
3. In writing to a clergyman who is a stranger to you; to the chairman of your school committee; to the superintendent of schools.

LESSON XXII

THE BODY, THE ENDING, AND THE SIGNATURE

I. The Body

The **body** of a letter is the message itself, or what we have to say.

1. **Contents.** — Do not make such needless remarks as "I now take my pen in hand," or "I will now close," but begin with something worth saying; express yourself clearly and concisely in complete sentences grouped into paragraphs according to the sense; and stop when you have done. Use simple words, avoiding slang. Careless or illegible penmanship may not only occasion costly mistakes, but it shows a want of respect.

2. **Position, Form,** etc. The Body begins under the end of the introduction, or if that is long, on the same line with the salutation. There should be a narrow margin at the left extending the whole length of the page; we should *write legibly,* without crowding, and never divide a syllable at the end of a line.

II. The Ending

The **Complimentary Ending** is a courteous assurance of good faith, respect, or affection, which is added at the end of a letter. One should say something that is in keeping with the style of letter he has written, and with his relations to the person addressed; and he should at the same time express his feelings truthfully.

1. **Form.** — (*a*) In business or formal letters the common forms are:

Yours truly;	(Very) truly yours;
Yours respectfully;	(Very) respectfully yours.

And in extremely formal letters, such as are sometimes written to high officials Form 11, or something similar, may be used. (Forms 1 to 26.)

(*b*) For friendly or familiar letters there is a great variety of other forms, some of which are given in the models. Other examples are:

Faithfully yours;	With highest regards;	Yours ever;
Most truly yours;	Yours sincerely;	Your loving sister;
Your devoted son;	Ever most gratefully yours.	(Forms 3, 6, 8.)

"Yours, etc.," is vulgar.

2. **Position.** — The conclusion begins on the line following the body of the letter, and is indented about one-third the width of the page. If it is long, it should be arranged in two or three lines, like the heading and the address. (Forms, pp. 274–277.)

III. The Signature

The **Signature** shows the name of the person who writes or dictates the letter. When a person writes as an officer of any sort, he should add his official name (Form 14); and when he signs for another person, he should give both names. (Form 17.)

(*a*) The signature is to be written *distinctly* on the line following the complimentary ending, and indented about half the width of the page.

(*b*) In all business, formal, or extremely important letters, it should be written in full, and in every other letter when there might possibly be a doubt as to who sent it.

(*c*) A lady when writing to a stranger should so sign her name as to show whether she is to be addressed as Miss or as Mrs. (Form 19.)

Place and Date, or Address, at the End. — (*a*) When the place and date are not given as a heading, they are to be added in the same form at the left of the page, on the line below the signature. (Forms 19 and 26.) Or —

(*b*) The *address* may be put here if omitted at the beginning. (Form 11.)

(*c*) The place to which a reply is to be sent should be given here, if it is not the same as the place of writing. (Form 8.)

Model Forms. — Observe carefully the position, capitals, and punctuation of the parts of a letter as given in these forms.

[Form 1]

Denver, May 25, 1907.

[Form 2]

Dear Father:

I am sure you will be glad to

Body of letter

hear, etc. .....

[Form 3]

Your affectionate son,

Edward Bacon.

[Form 4]

Atlanta, Ga.,
Friday, April 19, 1906.

[Form 5]

My dear Emily:

What a delightful way you have of reminding one, etc. ----------

[Form 6]

Yours as ever,

Alice.

[Form 7]

596 Cleveland Ave.,
Chicago, June 5, 1907.

I must tell you, my dear Mother, what a surprise, etc. ----------

[Form 8]

Ever, my dear Mother,
Your loving daughter,
Grace Nelson.

Please direct to
Meadville, Penn.

Exercises. — Upon a properly shaped page, write the very best letter you can, whether long or short, and whatever the subject. Refer to the preceding forms and directions. Only constant practice can give you facility.

1. Your father wishes you to bring your copy-book home that he may see your improvement in penmanship. Write a letter to your teacher, asking permission to do this. You may say which book you mean, when you would like to take it, or how your father came to ask about your writing. (Use Forms 1, 24, 25.)

2. Your teacher thinks you have been rather careless in your writing, and wishes your father to wait until the close of the term before examining the book. Write to your father a letter explaining the matter fully. (Use Forms 1, 2, 3.)

3. A friend of yours named ——, has invited you to drive next Saturday afternoon. Write to your mother, who is in an adjoining town, asking leave to go, and telling her all you know about how many are going, where you are to go, and how late you are to stay. (Follow Forms 2, 3, 12.)

4. Your mother has a plan to receive company at that time, and wishes you to be at home. Write to your friend about the matter, expressing your thanks and regrets. (Use Forms 5, 6, 12.)

5. Miss Elsie White, of 13 Oak St., Louisville, Ky., has received a Maltese kitten by express from her friend Mary Ford, who lives in Cincinnati. She is much pleased, and writes a letter acknowledging the gift, and mentioning some traits that she has discovered in her new pet. Write Elsie's letter. (Select from Forms 4 and 12, 5, 7, and 24.)

LESSON XXIII

BUSINESS LETTERS

A Business Letter should be business-like. Generally it is brief. Always it should be clear, straightforward, and to the point. Whatever does not bear directly on the matter in hand may be safely omitted.

The reply to a business letter should acknowledge its receipt, give its date, and refer to its contents. We may say, for example, "Your favor of the 28th ult., in answer to our inquiries, is at hand," etc.

None but the most common abbreviations are to be used, and no figures except in connection with dates and large sums of money. The sign & is to be used only in the name of a firm.

Model Forms. Observe carefully the address, salutation and ending of the forms below.

[Form 9]

Continental Hotel,
Washington, D. C.,
October 4, 1907.

[Form 10]

My dear Sir:—

Inquiries at the Treasury Department, etc. ----------

I am, Sir,

[Form 11]

Your obedient servant,
William Reynolds.

Hon. John D. Long,
Boston, Mass.

[Form 12]

19 Ray Street, Brooklyn,
Tuesday, Aug. 12, 1906.

[Form 13]

Miss Emma Sanderson,

Dear Madam,—

Your inquiry of the 10th instant concerning, etc. ----------

[Form 14]

Yours truly,
Walter G. Ward,
City Clerk.

[Form 15]

(P. O. Box 1925.)
St. Louis, Mo.,
Dec. 29, 1906.

[Form 16]

Messrs. James Monroe & Co.,
Syracuse, N. Y.

Dear Sirs:— Enclosed please find a draft, etc. .....

[Form 17]

Yours respectfully,
A. G. Lane & Co.,
By John Cole.

[Form 18]

William E. Hatch,
Supt. of Schools,
New Bedford, Mass.

My dear Sir:— Will you inform me, etc. .....

[Form 19]

Respectfully yours,

(Miss) Emily A. Jenkins.

Winchester, Ind.,
Aug. 4, 1906.

Exercises. — 1. Write to Messrs. Geo. Beck & Sons, Rochester, N.Y., asking them to send you six varieties of flower seeds, which you may name in a column, with the price of each set opposite. Write as if you inclosed a postal order for fifty cents. (Select what you think appropriate forms.)

2. Write to the postmaster in your city or town to ask the cost of sending books through the mail. Before writing decide exactly what you mean to ask. (Compare Forms 7, 15, 18, 25, 14, 17.)

3. Write the answer that, as an officer of the Government, he sends you. (Select parts of Forms 13, 14, 11.)

4. Monroe & Henry are expressmen doing business at 147 Spruce St. Write them to call for your trunk in time for a certain train which you wish to take at the nearest railroad station. Be very definite.

5. Write to the publishers of this book, asking to have a copy of it sent to some person who lives in a neighboring town, and who has asked you to buy a copy for him. Write as if you were to inclose payment. (Use Forms 9, 18.)

6. Samuel Underhill, who lives **at** 745 University Ave., Knoxville, Tenn., incloses an express money order for one dollar and seventy-five cents to Perry Mason Co., publishers of *The Youth's Companion*, Boston, Mass., as the subscription price of that magazine for a year. Write his letter.

7. Write to Wm. Constable & Co., asking that some samples of dress-goods be sent to your mother's address. Give them some idea of the kind wanted. They do business in Broadway, New York City.

8. Mrs. Betsey Trotwood, who lives in Fresno, Cal., at 95 Elm St., has received a tub of butter from Ralph Lane, a farmer living in Oleander, Cal. It was sent with the understanding that it might be exchanged. It is not satisfactory, and Mrs. T. writes accordingly. Reproduce her letter. (Use Form 16.)

9. Dr. Thomas F. Snow lives on Revere St., Boston, at Number 96. He wishes to purchase a residence in one of the suburbs, costing not over $5,000. He writes to Geo. H. Chapin & Co., Real Estate Agents, Journal Building, Boston, telling them what he wants, and asking them to communicate with him. Write his letter. (Use Forms 7, 18, 25.)

10. They reply to Mr. Snow, describing two places they have for sale, — one in Arlington, and the other in Melrose. They give him an idea of the size of each house, of the location, price, terms of payment, etc.,

and invite him to call to see them. Write their letter. (Use Forms 8, 12, 17.)

11. Write to your grocer to send you "on account" a definite quantity of four kinds of groceries. You may complain of the quality of the last oil he sent you, and explain how it burns. You will try a different brand.

12. As clerk for Bond Brothers, dealers in hay and grain, 94 Portland St., Lowell, Mass., write to the Freight Agent of the B. & M. R.R., Portland, Me., inquiring about the delay in the shipment of three carloads of hay consigned to your firm on a certain date.

LESSON XXIV

REPLY TO AN ADVERTISEMENT

Study this model form. Then write one or more of the letters called for by the exercises.

[Form 20]

194 Warren St.,
Manchester, N. H.,
June 29, 1907.

Mr. Edward O. Spinner,
Supt. of the Atlantic Mills,
Lawrence, Mass.

Dear Sir: I wish to apply for the position advertised in the "Sun."

I am fourteen years old, and have just graduated from the Adams School. I am well and strong and not afraid of work, and shall try to be faithful to my employer.

I can bring a recommendation from my teacher, Mr. Ford, and another from the gentleman for whom I worked during my last summer vacation.

Yours very respectfully,
Harry T. Edmunds.

Exercises. — 1. FOR SALE. A farm of thirty-five acres, all under cultivation. Price reasonable, and terms easy. For full particulars, address LEMUEL MASON, Sharon, Mass.

Edward Poorman answers this advertisement. His address is P. O. Box 315, Providence, R. I. Write his letter.

2. Mr. Mason replies, giving a full description of the farm, stating price, reasons for selling, and other facts which a purchaser might wish to know. Write his letter.

3. TO LET. A small house, in a pleasant, retired situation. For particulars, address JOS. B. ARNOLD, P. O. Box 1492, Chicago, Ill.

Dr. Allan Downs, who lives at 396 Madison St., in the same city, answers this advertisement, asking information. Write his letter.

4. Mr. Arnold replies, describing the house and giving its location, telling **rent, etc.** Write his letter.

5. WANTED. A boy in a hardware store to learn the business. Must be honest, willing to work, and ready to give up the use of tobacco if desired. Address, stating age, residence, qualifications, and references, FRANK PURINGTON & CO., 294 Euclid Ave., Cleveland, Ohio.

Guy Wheeler, who lives in Sandusky, Ohio, answers this advertisement. Write his letter.

LESSON XXV

NOTES OF INVITATION, ETC.

Formal invitations and replies are written in the third person upon note-paper or cards. They are dated at the bottom, and no signature is added. The following models may be used.

[Form 21.] FORMAL INVITATION

Miss Ruth Fielding requests the pleasure of Miss Helen Thayer's company on Tuesday evening, May fifteenth, at eight o'clock.

14 Park Avenue.

[Form 22] INVITATION ACCEPTED

Miss Helen Thayer accepts with pleasure Miss Fielding's invitation for Tuesday evening next.

121 Concord Square, May tenth.

Form 23] INVITATION NOT ACCEPTED

Miss Alice Winslow regrets that the serious illness of her Mother prevents her acceptance of Miss Fielding's kind invitation for Tuesday evening. May fifteenth.

Fairview, Saturday.

Informal invitations and replies are written in the first person, and may follow one of the forms in preceding letters or that given below.

[Form 24]

Dear Miss Brown,

In reply to your kind invitation for Thursday next .....

[Form 25]

Very truly yours,

Rebecca Foster.

[Form 26]

'The Elms',
Newbury, 10 May 1907,
2 o'clock.

Exercises. — 1. Write for your mother to her friends, Mr. and Mrs. John F. Ayer, a formal invitation to dinner next Wednesday at six o'clock.

2. They send a formal acceptance. Reproduce it. Or —

3. They formally decline on account of a previous engagement. Write their declination.

4. Alice Harrison Doe invites her cousin, Mary Sands, to spend the holidays with her, and tells some of her plans for Christmas Day, and the week following. Alice lives at the Armington Home, Philadelphia, and her cousin at 213 Murray Ave., Harrisburg. Refer to a previous visit. (Use Forms 9, 26.)

5. Miss Mary's mother is ill, and she is unable to come. Write the reply in which she tells what she is busy about.

LESSON XXVI

THE ENVELOPE, ETC.

Fold a letter-sheet by turning up the lower edge to meet the upper evenly. Then fold twice the other way — first the left edge, then the right, making the distance between the folds a little less than the width of the envelope.

Fold the lowest third of a **note-sheet** toward the top, then fold the upper end toward the bottom. If the sheet is wider than the length of the envelope, fold it in the middle from the bottom to the top, and then from left to right. If the envelope is nearly square, fold the paper once in the middle.

The **Superscription,** or address upon the envelope, is chiefly for the benefit of post-office officials, and should be written so fully and so distinctly as not to hinder in any way the speedy delivery of the letter.

1. **Contents.** Besides the name and title with the post-office and state, there must be sometimes the street and number; sometimes the county; and sometimes the name of the person to whose care the letter is sent — all arranged as shown in Forms 27-30.

2. **Position.** The superscription should generally be on the lower half of the envelope, and each successive line should begin a little farther toward the right.

3. **Punctuation** is meant to be a help to the reader; and on envelopes where there is nothing but the address, and where the parts of that are already separate enough, the best usage is to omit terminal points, as in the models. It is better to give the name of the state in full, on a separate line.

4. **Return Address.** The name and address of the sender are often placed in the upper left-hand corner, that the letter may be returned if not delivered. This is sometimes an important addition, as when it is not certain that the letter is rightly addressed, or when the full name of the writer is not given inside. (Form 29.)

5. The **stamp** should be evenly placed, right end up, about an eighth of an inch from the upper right-hand corner. Inclose a stamp to pay for sending the reply, when you think it is only fair to do so.

Exercises. — Rule rectangles on slate or paper, making them the exact shape of some envelope, and **copy** the **models** on p. 284. Then write **envelope addresses** to the following:

1. To your father, mother, brother, sister, or some classmate; to some clergyman of your acquaintance; to a friend, in care of his or her father, whose post-office box is numbered 47.

2. To a doctor of divinity named Gilbert Shaw, living in Cincinnati at 24 Wilson Sq.

3. To Emmett, Kent & Co., a firm of lumber dealers, doing business in Clinton, Illinois. Clinton is in De Witt Co.

4. To the wife of John Alden, who lives in the capital of Ohio, at 27 Garfield Avenue.

5. To a firm composed of Miss Decker and Miss Fitz, whose millinery rooms are on Cumberland St., No. 201, Nashville, Tennessee.

Forms of superscription:

[Form 27]

Stamp

Mr. James O. Hunt
19 Spring St.
Los Angeles
California

[Form 28]

Stamp

A. T. Grant & Co.
Box 193
Toledo
Ohio

Return to
The Century Co.
New York.

[Form 29]

Stamp

Mrs. Geo. W. Emerson
Franklin
Morgan Co.
Illinois

[Form 30]

Stamp

Miss Laura F. Bacon
Care of C. G. Hale, Esq.
Times Building
Chicago

LESSON XXVII

TELEGRAMS

The parts of a **telegram** are (1) the name and address of the person to whom it is sent, (2) the body, and (3) the signature of the sender.

Telegraph companies do not charge for the name and address or for the signature, and hence these may be given in full. For the body of the message, however, there is a fixed charge for ten words or less, and an extra charge for each word over ten. The message, therefore, does not usually exceed ten words.

The art of writing a telegram consists in saying clearly what you have to say in the fewest words possible. The forms of courtesy used in letters are generally omitted.

Figures, decimal points, and dollar signs are counted as separate words, and compound words as one word. Numbers should be spelled out. If there is any question how the words of your telegram should be counted, inquire at the local telegraph office.

The following is a good telegram:

CHICAGO, *Oct. 28, 1906.*

GEORGE R. TICKER, Evansville, Ind.

Convention at Auditorium, Chicago, Thursday afternoon at two. Bring credentials.

FRANK SIMONS.

Exercises. — 1. You were to join your father at a hotel in a neighboring city at a certain hour, but you have missed the train. Telegraph him, telling him what has happened and when you will arrive. Use ten words or less in the body of the message.

2. On your arrival at the Central House, Denver, from Chicago, you find your baggage missing. You telegraph at once to the baggage-master at the station in Chicago making inquiries, describing trunk, and giving orders. Use not more than fifteen words in the body of the message.

3. Yesterday you sent an order to Samuel Pease & Co., St. Louis, Mo., for four Monarch refrigerators, size No. 4. You find now that you should have sent for three of size No. 4 and one of size No. 5. Send a telegram correcting the error.

4. When Edward Birney reaches the fishing camp on Carp Lake, near Provemont, Mich., he finds that he has left his steel fishing-rod in the closet of his room at home. He telegraphs to his father at 624 Cherry St., Elkhart, Ind., explaining the matter and asking him to send the rod by express. Write the telegram.

5. When you bought your ticket at Forest City, you were in such haste to catch the train that you left your pocket-book lying on the ticket-seller's window. You are now at Sumach Junction. Telegraph to the ticket-agent at Forest City, describing the pocket-book, telling him how much money it contains, and asking him to send it by the conductor of the next train.

6. Reduce each of the following telegrams to ten words or less, not counting the address and signature:

NEW YORK, *September 2, 1906.*

OLIVER POST, 626 Orange Avenue, Tampa, Fla.

Your letter has been received, but I cannot read the name of the steamer on which you say your father is coming. Please telegraph it to me at once.

F. P. STANTON.

CHICAGO, *June 5, 1907.*

MISS CHARLOTTE FRIEDMAN, Little Rock, Ark.

There are three trunks in the Santa Fé baggage room one of which may be yours. You must send me a fuller description.

T. C. JOHNSON.

COLORADO SPRINGS, COL., *March 24.*

SAMUEL P. MARSH, Lawrenceville, Minn.

Your son Frederick has had a relapse and is now dangerously ill. You had better come on at once and bring Mrs. Marsh with you.

STEPHEN LANGDON.

CHAPTER IV

Narratives

LESSON XXVIII

HOW TO TELL A STORY

A story must (1) begin right, (2) it must be told in the right order, (3) it must end right, and (4) it must contain only what is necessary. Here is an example of a good story well told. As you read, notice what is told first, what follows, and how the story ends.

My brother Frank was sent to the post-office for a letter. When he came there, the poor child found a big dog at the door of the office, and was afraid to go in. It was just the dead part of the day in a country village, when even the shops are locked up for an hour, and Frank, who is very shy, saw no one whom he could call upon. He tried to make Miss Evarts, the post-office clerk, hear; but she was in the back of the office. Frank was frightened, but he meant to do his duty. So he crossed the bridge, walked up to the butcher's shop in the other village, — which he knew was open — spent two pennies for a bit of meat, and carried it back to tempt his enemy. He waved it in the air, called the dog, and threw it into the street. The dog was much more willing to eat the meat than to eat Frankie. He left his post. Frank went in and tapped on the glass, and Miss Evarts came and gave him the letter. Frank came home in triumph, and papa said it was a finer piece of duty performed than the celebrated sacrifice of Casabianca's would have been, had it happened that Casabianca ever made it. — *E. E. Hale.*

1. This story begins right because it tells first precisely the things we must know to understand what follows. Thus the beginning gives the name of the boy and tells what he was asked to do.

2. It is in the right order because the events are told just as they happened:

1. Seeing the big dog at the door.
2. Looking for help.
3. Trying to make Miss Evarts hear.
4. Buying the meat.
5. Tempting the dog away.
6. Getting the letter.
7. Going home.

3. It ends right because it closes with the last thing that we want to know. There is nothing else to tell.

4. It contains all that we want to hear at this time about Frank and the dog, and it contains nothing more.

Try changing the order of the happenings and see whether the story is made better or worse.

Exercise. — A friend of yours is at the hospital with a broken ankle. To amuse him and take his mind off his pain, write for him a story about something that has happened in your school since he left. Choose the most interesting incident you can think of. Before you write consider how you will begin, how you will end, and in what order you will tell the story.

LESSON XXIX

A STORY TO BE STUDIED

AN UNWELCOME VISITOR

Many years ago, when much of our land was still covered with thick woods, a little frame schoolhouse stood at the edge of a large forest. Often the children in school would tremble to hear the wolves howling near by, and sometimes, at play outside, the sight of a pair of fiery eyes in the underbrush would make them scamper for the schoolhouse; yet they loved to collect at the windows and watch the troops of gay hunters who passed on their way to the forest.

One fine spring morning when every one was working busily, the yelping of hunters' hounds broke the stillness, and before any one had time to rush to the windows to see what was the matter, a fox dashed in at the open schoolroom door with a pack of hounds close upon it. In a second everything was in an uproar. The fox, once in the room, turned about as if it wanted to go back, but the hounds in the door blocked the way, so with growls and snarls it leaped over the benches, scattering the screaming children right and left, and knocking over a little girl who still sat in her seat as if paralyzed by fear.

Some of the children scrambled under benches to get out of the way, others huddled together in corners, and a few nearest the door rushed out, while the teacher, who tried to make himself heard in the confusion, shouted, "Out at the door, everybody!" The fox made for the farther corner of the room, and as the hounds closed in upon it, in the general hubbub, the last of the children were finally pushed out at the doorway by the teacher, and from the screams of the fox and the noise of tumbling bodies they could tell that the death struggle was taking place inside.

A group of hunters came riding up, and several hurried into the schoolroom to the hounds' assistance. They had guessed what had taken place when they heard the shouts of the children, but were too far away to call off the hounds. They seemed heartily sorry to think they had caused such a disturbance. The children now had great sport talking over their unexpected visitor with the hunters and their teacher, and in putting things in order in the schoolroom but all work for that day was over.

—*Katherine Klingel.*

Read the first paragraph of this story.

What is told us in this paragraph? Does anything *happen* in this part of the story? If not, what is this paragraph for? Why not leave it out? What is the use of telling us where the schoolhouse stood? Do we need to know this in order to understand and enjoy the rest of the story? Why say anything in this paragraph about the fears of the children? About the hunters? Why not leave those things until the end?

Read the second paragraph.

Why does the writer tell us at the beginning that the children were working busily? Do we need to know that right here? Why not wait until the fox has come in before telling us the children were busy? Why not wait until the end of the story before saying this? Why tell about the yelping of the hounds before telling about the dashing in of the fox? Name all the happenings in the order in which they come in this paragraph. Do you see why they should come in this order?

Read the third paragraph.

Could you put the second sentence first? Why not?

Read the last paragraph.

What does it tell first? What next? What is the last sentence about? Could the last sentence be put anywhere else in the story? Why not?

Exercise. — Make a list of all the things that are told in the story. You may write it in this way:

Paragraph I.
1. What is told first.
2. What is told next.

Paragraph II.
1. What happens first.
2. What happens next.
3. What happens third.

Paragraph III.
1. What happens first.
2. What happens next.

Paragraph IV.
1. What happens first.
2. What is told next.
3. What happens last.

In line 11 why does the writer say "*rush* to the windows"? Why not "*go* to the windows"? In line 12 we are told that the fox "*dashed* in at the open schoolroom door"? Why not say that the fox "*came* in at the open schoolroom door"?

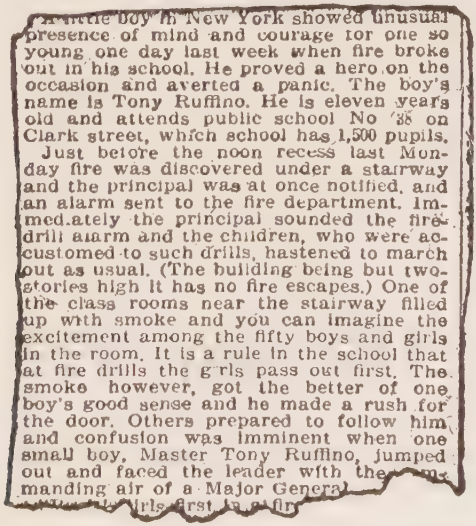
Why use the word *screaming* in line 16? Would it not be just as well to say "Scattering the children right and left"?

Notice the word *scrambled* in line 19. Would it be as well to say "Some of the children *crawled* under benches"? Why not? Why use *huddled* in line 20? Why not say "Others *stood* together in corners"?

LESSON XXX

A STORY TO COMPLETE

What you see here is a clipping from a New York paper. It contains a true story of a brave little boy. Unfortunately the latter part of it has been torn away and lost. See, however, whether you cannot complete the story. You will find some help in the opening sentences, and the questions below may suggest what to write.



A little boy in New York showed unusual presence of mind and courage for one so young one day last week when fire broke out in his school. He proved a hero on the occasion and averted a panic. The boy's name is Tony Ruffino. He is eleven years old and attends public school No '38 on Clark street, which school has 1,500 pupils.

Just before the noon recess last Monday fire was discovered under a stairway and the principal was at once notified, and an alarm sent to the fire department. Immediately the principal sounded the fire-drill alarm and the children, who were accustomed to such drills, hastened to march out as usual. (The building being but two stories high it has no fire escapes.) One of the class rooms near the stairway filled up with smoke and you can imagine the excitement among the fifty boys and girls in the room. It is a rule in the school that at fire drills the girls pass out first. The smoke however, got the better of one boy's good sense and he made a rush for the door. Others prepared to follow him and confusion was imminent when one small boy, Master Tony Ruffino, jumped out and faced the leader with the commanding air of a Major General

girls first in a fire

1. What did Tony say to the boy who made a rush for the door? 2. What did the boy say and do? 3. What happened then? 4. Did the children march out in order? 5. How long did it take them to reach the sidewalk? 6. When did the fire-engines come? 7. Was the building saved?

Try retelling the whole story (1) as Tony might have told it to his father or mother when he went home at noon; or (2) as one of the girls might have told it to a girl in another room that afternoon; or (3) as the principal might have told it in a letter to the superintendent.

LESSON XXXI

A LETTER AND A STORY

The following letter was written by General Robert E. Lee to his son. It contains many thoughts that are worth noting and remembering.

ARLINGTON HOUSE, *April 5, 1852.*

MY DEAR SON: — I am just in the act of leaving home for New Mexico. My fine old regiment has been ordered to that distant region, and I must hasten on to see that they are properly cared for. I have but little to add in reply to your letters of March 26, 27, and 28. Your letters breathe a true spirit of frankness; they have given myself and your mother great pleasure. You must study to be frank with the world; frankness is the child of honesty and courage. Say just what you mean to do on every occasion, and take it for granted that you mean to do right. If a friend asks a favor you should grant it if it is reasonable; if not, tell him plainly why you cannot; you will wrong him and yourself by equivocation of any kind. Never do a wrong thing to make a friend or keep one; the man who requires you to do so is dearly purchased at such a sacrifice. Deal kindly but firmly with all your classmates; you will find it the policy which wears best. Above all, do not appear to others what you are not. If you have any fault to find with any one, tell him, not others, of what you complain; there is no more dangerous experiment than that of undertaking to be one thing before a man's face and another behind his back.

We should live, act, and say nothing to the injury of any one. It is not only best as a matter of principle, but it is the path of peace and honor.

In regard to duty, let me, in conclusion of this hasty letter, inform you that nearly a hundred years ago there was a day of remarkable gloom and darkness — still known as the dark day — a day when the light of the sun was slowly extinguished as if by an eclipse. The legislature of Connecticut was in session, and as its members saw the unexpected and unaccountable darkness coming on they shared in the general awe and terror. It was supposed by many that the last day, the day of judgment, had come. Someone, in the consternation of the hour, moved an adjournment. Then there arose an old Puritan legislator, Davenport, of Stamford, and said if the last day had come

he desired to be found at his place doing his duty, and therefore moved that candles be brought in so the house could proceed with its duty. There was quietness in that man's mind, the quietness of heavenly wisdom and inflexible willingness to obey present duty. Duty, then, is the sublimest word in our language. Do your duty in all things, like the old Puritan. You cannot do more; you should never wish to do less. Never let me and your mother wear one gray hair for any lack of duty on your part. Your affectionate father.

Exercise. — Retell in your own words the story of "The Dark Day."

LESSON XXXII

A STORY FROM A POEM

Read the following story carefully.

THE OYSTER AND ITS CLAIMANTS

Two travelers discovered on the beach
An oyster, carried thither by the sea.
'Twas eyed with equal greediness by each;
Then came the question whose was it to be.
One, stooping down to pounce upon the prize,
Was thrust away before his hand could snatch it,
"Not quite so quickly," his companion cries;
"If *you've* a claim here, *I've* a claim to match it;
The first that saw it has the better right
To its possession; come, you can't deny it."
"Well," said his friend, "my orbs are pretty bright,
And *I*, upon my life, was first to spy it."
"You? Not at all; or, if you *did* perceive it,
I *smelt* it long before it was in view;
But here's a lawyer coming — let us leave it
To him to arbitrate between the two."
The lawyer listens with a stolid face,
Arrives at his decision in a minute;
And, as the shortest way to end the case,
Opens the shell, and eats the fish within it.
The rivals look upon him with dismay: —
"This Court," says he, "awards you each a shell;
You've neither of you any costs to pay,
And so be happy. Go in peace. Farewell!"

— *La Fontaine.*

Exercise. — Tell in your own words a story like this, of two chipmunks finding a nut. The lawyer in this case may be a squirrel. You may use the following outline:

1. The discovery.
2. The rival claims.
3. The dispute.
4. The lawyer and his fee.
5. The verdict rendered.

LESSON XXXIII

A STORY FROM A PICTURE

THE HUNTERS

In this picture we see two hunters anxiously watching the approach of some wild animal. What is the animal? How far away is it? What is it doing? Has it seen the hunters yet? Study the faces of the hunters. Which is the braver

of the two men? Which is the better hunter? What is each man saying? What will each one do as the animal comes on? What will be the outcome of the struggle?

Exercise. — Write the story suggested by the picture. Before writing, consider carefully (1) how you will begin, (2) in what order the events will occur, (3) how you will bring the story to an end.

LESSON XXXIV

A SUGGESTED STORY

Commit thi stanza to memory:

Were I so tall to reach the pole
Or grasp the ocean with my span,
I must be measured by my soul:
The mind's the standard of the man.

Exercise. — Try making up a story that will bring out the thought of these verses. Let it be about two boys, Edward Bell and John Dixon. Edward is tall and strong, but inclined to be selfish and overbearing. The appearance and character of John may be anything you please.

LESSON XXXV

THE MEANING OF THE TERM "NARRATIVE"

Another name for the stories that you have been writing, and for stories of any kind, is *narratives.*

A *narrative* is an orderly and connected account of what has sometime taken place, or is imagined to have taken place.

In writing a narrative of any kind —

1. Do not begin a sentence until you have thought it through and know just how it is to end.

2. Keep the order in which the events occurred, unless you have a good reason for following some other method.

3. Mention every point that is needed to give the reader a clear idea of what happened.

4. Say most about what is most important or interesting, and omit useless details.

5. Make the narrative a connected whole, but do not string sentences together with "ands."

6. Write naturally, as you would talk, and use no words whose meaning you do not know.

7. Arrange your thoughts by *topics*, and make a separate paragraph for each distinct topic.

8. Try to punctuate carefully as you write.

Exercise 1. — Observe carefully the **events** of a **day** or **half-day** in your school, making notes of what happens if need be. Next day narrate these events in the form of a letter to your uncle or aunt, following the order in which they occurred.

Say most about what is most important, but omit nothing that is needed to make the account complete. Try to make it clear and interesting.

Mail this letter if your teacher approves and thinks it is well enough written.

Exercise 2. — Narrate your **experience with some pet animal** — a dog, a cat, a horse, a bird, or rabbits, etc. Observe this order, and make a connected whole:

1. What pet; kind or breed, name. 2. Size, color, age, value. 3. How and when obtained. 4. When or where kept. 5. Food; what, how often, by whom. 6. Habits, day and night. 7. Friends and enemies, or likes and dislikes. 8. Intelligence; tricks, anecdotes. 9. What became of it, how much affection you have for it, or why it was worth petting.

Exercise 3. — Tell how you spent your last pleasant **holiday.** The following outline may help you.

1. Your subject. 2. Pleasant expectations; what preparation made; what hoped for. 3. The night before. 4. The morning; first occupation; plans for the day; company. 5. The afternoon; where; with whom. 6. The dinner. 7. The evening; all details. 8. Feelings; surprises; disappointments; enjoyment.

Exercise 4. — Each of the following may be the subject of a narrative about your **personal experiences.** Begin by making an outline similar to those provided in previous exercises.

1. The Fourth of July. 2. Christmas. 3. Saturday Afternoon. 4. A Day in the Country. 5. An Evening at the Fair. 6. A Shopping Expedition. 7. A Visit to the Museum. 8. How I Helped on the Farm. 9. A Day at the Seaside. 10. The Surprise Party. 11. A Base-ball Match. 12. The Toboggan Slide. 13. A Candy-pull. 14. A Day in the Kitchen. 15. A Journey. 16. A Rainy Day. 17. An Out-of-door Geography Lesson. 18. A Fire. 19. Caught in the Rain. 20. My Experience with the Toothache. 21. An Eventful Day. 22. My First Disobedience. 23. A Day on my Bicycle.

Exercise 5. — Under the direction of your teacher, visit with a companion some one of the following in the neighborhood of your school. Then make an outline, and **write an account of your visit.**

A Cotton Mill.
A Shoe Factory.
A Grist Mill.
The Custom House.
A Machine Shop.
A Bookbinder's.
The Poor House.
The Court House.
The Old Mill.
The Telephone Exchange.
The Ship Yard.
A Newspaper Press Room.
A Cemetery.
The Old Fort.
The Lighthouse.
The Falls.
A Brick Yard.
A Woodland Road.

LESSON XXXVI

BIOGRAPHICAL SKETCHES

Exercise 1. — 1. What is a **biography?**

2. Write a biography of your father, or brother, or some acquaintance.

3. What is an **autobiography?** Write one, using these suggestions:

Your name — birthplace and date — names and occupation of parents — place of residence — events in your life — travels — schools attended — different studies — out-of-school lessons, such as music or elocution — other occupation or pursuits — habits of rising — work to

do — fondness for work — sports — books read — kind of reading preferred — friends — natural disposition — plans for future education — for business — object in life.

In collecting materials this may serve as an

Outline for a Biographical Sketch

I. **Introduction.** Name, and how best known.

II. **Birth.** Time, place, and — generally — ancestry.

III. **Childhood and Youth.** Education; preparation and training for life-work; early pursuits, habits, disposition.

IV. **Chief Events of Life,** public and private, in their order.

V. **Death.** Time, place, circumstances.

VI. **Characteristics.** Personal appearance and bearing; mental and moral qualities; likes and dislikes, ability and culture.

VII. **Results of Life.** Development of self; example to others; service to individuals, to the country, to the world.

LESSON XXXVII

THE STORY OF COLUMBUS

Exercise 1. — Learn what you can about the life and character of Columbus, and then write a biographical sketch. You will find Irving's "Life of Columbus" a good book for this purpose. The following questions will suggest what you are to look for.

1. When and where was Columbus born? 2. What is known about his early life? 3. Why did he become a sailor? 4. What led him to think of a voyage to the West? 5. Where did he seek aid? 6. Where did he find aid? 7. What happened on his first voyage? 8. When and where did he land? 9. How was he received on his return? 10. What other voyage did he make? 11. What led to his imprisonment? 12. What happened on his last voyage? 13. Where and when did he die? 14. What were the greatest and best traits of his character? 15. What was it in him that made him successful?

Exercise 2. — After reading the following poem tell the story of the first voyage as the mate might have told it to another sailor upon his return.

COLUMBUS *
[1492]

Behind him lay the gray Azores,
  Behind the Gates of Hercules;
Before him not the ghost of shores,
  Before him only shoreless seas.
The good mate said: "Now must we pray,
  For lo! the very stars are gone.
Brave Admiral, speak, what shall I say?"
  "Why, say, 'Sail on! sail on! and on!'"

"My men grow mutinous day by day;
  My men grow ghastly wan and weak."
The stout mate thought of home; a spray
  Of salt wave washed his swarthy cheek.
"What shall I say, brave Admiral, say,
  If we sight naught but seas at dawn?"
"Why, you shall say at break of day,
  'Sail on! sail on! sail on! and on!'"

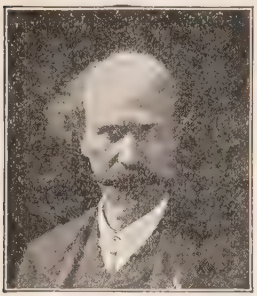
They sailed. They sailed. Then spake the mate:
  "This mad sea shows his teeth to-night.
He curls his lip, he lies in wait,
  With lifted teeth, as if to bite!
Brave Admiral, say but one good word!
  What shall we do when hope is gone?"
The words leapt like a leaping sword:
  "Sail on! sail on! sail on! and on!"

Then, pale and worn, he kept his deck,
  And peered through darkness. Ah, that night
Of all dark nights! And then a speck —
  A light! A light! A light! A light!
It grew, a starlit flag unfurled!
  It grew to be Time's burst of dawn.
He gained a world; he gave that world
  Its grandest lesson! "On! sail on!"

— *Joaquin Miller.*

* From the "Complete Works" of Joaquin Miller, copyrighted and published by the Whitaker & Ray Company, San Francisco. By permission.

Exercise 3. — A friend of yours who has not read the life of Columbus cannot understand why so great and good a man was put in chains. Tell him the story of that part of Columbus's life. Where will you begin? With what will you end?



Joaquin Miller

Joaquin Miller, the author of the poem in this lesson, was born in Wabash District, Indiana, November 10, 1841. His real name is Cincinnatus Hiner Miller. Most of his life has been spent upon the Pacific Coast, and his poems and other writings are mostly about life in that region. His first volume of poems, published in 1871, was called "Songs of the Sierras."

LESSON XXXVIII

THE STORY OF GEORGE WASHINGTON

Use the following outline and notes for a sketch of the life of

GEORGE WASHINGTON

I. *Introduction.* "The Father of his Country"; first President of the United States.

II. *Birth.* Virginia, Feb. 22, 1732; English ancestors; father died when his son was quite young; mother a remarkable woman; his devotion to her.

III. *Childhood and Youth.* Plain and practical education; influence of brother Lawrence; an athlete; habits; strength of character; a surveyor at sixteen.

IV. *Chief Events of Life.* Marriage; home at Mount Vernon; mission to Venango; his first campaign; his part in Braddock's Expedition; the Revolution; commander-in-chief; around Boston; in New York and New Jersey; defence of Philadelphia; Valley Forge; Monmouth; Yorktown; in constitutional convention; chosen president; events of his administration; farewell address.

V. *Death.* At Mount Vernon, Dec. 14, 1799; mourned at home and abroad.

VI. *Characteristics.* Sound judgment, self-control, dignity, firmness, unselfishness, patriotism, self-sacrifice; one of the world's great men.

VII. *Results of Life.* Brought Revolution to a successful issue. Established the government. Held in affection by all Americans. His life an example and an inspiration. "First in war, first in peace, first in the hearts of his countrymen."

Exercise. — Make a study of the **Life of Washington** as you find it given in books, and then write a biographical sketch. Use the preceding notes, and follow the directions given in Lesson 36.

Try to express the facts in your own language without dependence upon the words of the books that you may consult, and remember that the quality of what you write is of more importance than the quantity.

LESSON XXXIX

LIVES OF NOTED MEN AND WOMEN

Exercise 1. — **Prepare notes** according to the plan given, and **write sketches** of one or more of these

STATESMEN AND INVENTORS

John Adams.	Robert Fulton.
Benjamin Franklin.	Eli Whitney.
Alexander Hamilton.	James Watt.
Thomas Jefferson.	George Stephenson.
Andrew Jackson.	S. F. B. Morse.
Daniel Webster.	Charles Goodyear.
Henry Clay.	Elias Howe.
John Hay.	Thomas A. Edison.

Exercise 2. — Write a sketch of the **Life of Longfellow**, using any facts that you can remember from your reading. Those suggested here will not be enough.

Henry Wadsworth Longfellow, the best beloved of American poets — Feb. 27, 1807, Portland, Me. — Bowdoin College, at 14, graduated

at 18 — chosen Professor of Modern Languages at Harvard at 28 — his home, a house occupied by Washington in 1775–76 — Charles Kingsley said of his face that it was the most beautiful he had ever seen —. Poems noted for sweetness and purity — His courteous, pure, beautiful life the best poem of all — Died March 24, 1882 — The inheritance of his writings.

Exercise 3. — Prepare **outline notes,** as in Lesson 38 and **write a sketch** of the life of one or more of these

AUTHORS

William Shakespeare.	Ralph Waldo Emerson.
Sir Walter Scott.	James Russell Lowell.
Washington Irving.	John Greenleaf Whittier.
Edgar Allan Poe.	Sidney Lanier.
William Cullen Bryant.	Oliver Wendell Holmes.
Alfred Tennyson.	Nathaniel Hawthorne.

LESSON XL

HISTORICAL SKETCHES

Historical events are incidents in the life of a people or nation. They are parts of the story of the life of mankind; and the doings of the chief actors make up so large a part of history that a record of events is often little more than a sketch of the life of some prominent man.

Thus, a biographical sketch of Columbus necessarily includes a narrative of the "Discovery of a New World," and to tell of the "Conquest of Mexico" is to sketch the life of its conqueror, Hernando Cortez.

Exercise 1. — **Prepare the outline** and **notes,** and **write a sketch** of one of the following, or of any other distinguished man you may choose, so as to show the part he played in history.

Hernando Cortez.	William Penn.
Ferdinand de Soto.	John Paul Jones.
La Salle.	Robert E. Lee.
Henry Hudson.	Ulysses S. Grant.

Generally something like the following will serve best as an

Outline for a Historical Sketch

I. **Introduction.** The subject : why interesting or important.
II. **Cause or Purpose.** What led to the event.
III. **Time and Place.**
IV. **Principal Actors,** and their relations to one another.
V. **Details,** given in natural order.
VI. **Effect** produced at the time.
VII. **Conclusion.** Thoughts or reflections on the event as a whole. Influence on the nation's life or future history.

The writing of a good historical sketch, or, for that matter, of anything else, requires a clear knowledge of the subject, which must come from reading, study, and conversation. Note-taking is often helpful.

Outline and notes for a sketch of

Burgoyne's Invasion

I. *Introduction.* Important event of Revolution. Its influence on the result.

II. *Object.* Plan to divide the country. Clinton going north from New York City, Burgoyne going south to meet him.

III. *Time, Place.* June–Oct., 1777. Canada; N.Y.; Vt.

IV. *Principal Actors.* Burgoyne, St. Leger, Baum; Schuyler, Gates; Stark. Duty of each.

V. *Details.* Route *via* Lake Champlain and the Hudson; 8,000 men; English; Hessians; Indian allies. Expedition of St. Leger to Ft. Schuyler *via* St. Lawrence and Oswego (Oriskany), and of Col. Baum to Bennington. Both defeated. Capture of Fts. Ticonderoga, Crown Point, Edward. Two battles at Saratoga. Lost. Defeat; no retreat; no provisions. Surrender of army, Oct. 17, 6,000 men.

VI. *Effect.* Americans encouraged. France acknowledged independence.

VII. *Conclusion.* Victory timely, as it followed defeats. Greatest influence in ending the war.

Exercise 2. — Prepare the outlines and write a **historical sketch** on "Burgoyne's Invasion," or on one of these subjects:

The Discovery of America.
The Landing of the Pilgrims.
The Battle of Quebec.
The Boston Tea-party.
Battle of Lexington.
Battle of Bunker Hill.
Arnold's Treason.
Battle in Manila Bay.
The Burning of the Capitol.
Lewis and Clarke's Expedition.
An Incident of the Revolution.
Our National Flag.
Naval Battle at Santiago de Cuba.
Searching for the North Pole.

Exercise 3. — Write a little **history** of the **State** in which you live.

Exercise 4. — Prepare an outline, and write a **brief history** of

Your native town.
The city in which you live.
The city of Washington.
New Orleans.
Cuba.
Chicago.
California.
Florida.
Texas.

LESSON XLI

INCHCAPE ROCK

Listen to the reading of Robert Southey's story of "The Inchcape Rock." Then retell it to the class in your own words with the help of the following outline:

Introduction. Condition of air, sea, and ship.

Details of Story.
- Why the holy Abbot placed a bell on the rock.
- How the sea looked on a certain day.
- Sir Ralph walks the deck in merry mood.
- Proposes to vex the Abbot.
- Cuts the bell from the float.
- His voyage, success, and return.
- A storm encountered.
- Anxiety about the Inchcape Rock.
- Fate of the ship.

Conclusion. Effect on Sir Ralph.

LESSON XLII

THE AFRICAN CHIEF

Read the story of "The African Chief" by W. C. Bryant. Then tell it to the class, using the following outline.

Introduction. Description of captive. Appearance. History.

Details of Story.
- Request for freedom. Offers ornaments.
- The refusal and intention of captors.
- Disclosure of gold concealed in hair.
- Request renewed, and reasons given.
- Again denied, but gold taken.

Conclusion. Effect on the chieftain.

LESSON XLIII

THE WHITE-FOOTED DEER

Read W. C. Bryant's story of "The White-Footed Deer." Then write it as if you were telling it to a little child. The following outline will be a help.

1. The time and place. 2. Appearance of deer and her habits. 3. The protection of the cottage dame. 4. Tradition of the Indians. 5. The hunter's success. 6. His fatal shot. 7. The red-men's revenge. 8. Desolation.

LESSON XLIV

PAUL REVERE'S RIDE

Read and retell Longfellow's story of "Paul Revere's Ride." Imagine that you are Paul Revere telling the story to a grandchild. You may use the following outline.

1. The time. 2. The signal light. 3. The object of the ride. 4. Your listening friends discover the movements of the British. 5. Your impatient watching. 6. The signal at last! You mount and are off!

7. The ride to Medford. 8. Lexington village, its appearance. 9. The ride ended. 10. The result.

LESSON XLV

NAUHAUGHT, THE DEACON

Read and study carefully Whittier's story of "Nauhaught, The Deacon." Then write it from the following outline. Make several direct quotations.

1. Nauhaught and his circumstances. 2. His dream. 3. He visits his traps. 4. His success. 5. Thoughts of home and of his needs. 6. His prayer. 7. He finds the purse. 8. The conflict with temptation. 9. Reasons for keeping the money; for not keeping it. 10. The noble resolve. 11. He visits the inn and finds the owner. 12. The reward. 13. His feelings as he goes home. 14. The angel.

LESSON XLVI

Prepare an outline and reproduce from it the story of "The Frost."

THE FROST

THE Frost looked forth one still, clear night,
And he said, "Now I shall be out of sight;
So through the valley and over the height
In silence I'll take my way.
I will not go like that blustering train,
The wind and the snow, the hail and the rain,
Who make so much bustle and noise in vain;
But I'll be as busy as they."

Then he went to the mountain and powdered its crest,
He climbed up the trees, and their boughs he dressed
With diamonds and pearls, and over the breast
Of the glimmering lake he spread
A coat of mail, that it need not fear
The downward point of many a spear
That he hung on its margin, far and near,
Where a rock would rear its head.

He went to the windows of those who slept,
And over each pane like a fairy crept;
Wherever he breathed, wherever he stepped,
By the light of the moon were seen
Most beautiful things. There were flowers and trees,
There were bevies of birds and swarms of bees,
There were cities, thrones, temples, and towers, and these
All pictured in silver sheen!

But he did one thing that was hardly fair,—
He peeped in the cupboard, and, finding there
That all had forgotten for him to prepare,—
"Now, just to set them a-thinking,
I'll bite this basket of fruit," said he;
"This costly pitcher I'll burst in three,
And the glass of water they've left for me
Shall 'tchick!' to tell them I'm drinking."

— HANNAH FRANCES GOULD.

LESSON XLVII

STORIES FROM VARIOUS SOURCES

After reading one of the following stories make an outline of it. Then write the story in your own words.

1.	Bruce and the Spider.	*B. Barton.**
2.	Small Beginnings.	*C. Mackay.**
3.	The Milkmaid.	*J. Taylor.**
4.	The Nantucket Skipper.	*J. T. Fields.*
5.	God's Judgment on the Wicked Bishop.	*R. Southey.*
6.	Incident of the French Camp.	*R. Browning.*
7.	Arnold Winkelried.	*Montgomery.*
8.	The Sandpiper.	*Celia Thaxter.*
9.	The Little Match Girl.	*Hans Christian Andersen.*
10.	The Choice of King Midas.	*Hawthorne.*
11.	Horatius at the Bridge.	*Macaulay.*
12.	The Story of Ruth.	*Bible.*
13.	The Legend of Bregenz.	*A. A. Procter.*

* Bryant's *Library of Poetry and Song.*

CHAPTER V

DESCRIPTIONS

LESSON XLVIII

PICTURES IN A POEM

MIDSUMMER*

Through all the long midsummer-day
The meadow-sides are sweet with hay.
I seek the coolest sheltered seat,
Just where the field and forest meet, —
Where grow the pine trees tall and bland,
The ancient oaks austere and grand,
And fringy roots and pebbles fret
The ripples of the rivulet.

I watch the mowers, as they go
Through the tall grass, a white-sleeved row.
With even stroke their scythes they swing,
In tune their merry whetstones ring.
Behind the nimble youngsters run,
And toss the thick swaths in the sun.
The cattle graze, while, warm and still,
Slopes the broad pasture, basks the hill,
And bright, where summer breezes break,
The green wheat crinkles like a lake.

The butterfly and humblebee
Come to the pleasant woods with me;
Quickly before me runs the quail,
Her chickens skulk behind the rail;
High up the lone wood-pigeon sits,
And the woodpecker pecks and flits.

* Copyrighted by Houghton, Mifflin & Co., Boston.

Sweet woodland music sinks and swells,
The brooklet rings its tinkling bells,
The swarming insects drone and hum,
The partridge beats its throbbing drum.
The squirrel leaps among the boughs,
And chatters in his leafy house
The oriole flashes by; and, look!
Into the mirror of the brook,
Where the vain bluebird trims his coat,
Two tiny feathers fall and float.

— *J. T. Trowbridge.*

Exercise 1. — This poem is full of beautiful pictures. Mark the lines that please you best, and commit them to memory. Then, closing the book, write a description of the picture that you see most clearly.

Exercise 2. — Answer these questions about the poem, or other questions that your teacher may ask:

1. What is the meaning of "bland"? Why has the poet used it in speaking of pine trees? 2. Do you know what "austere" means? Are all trees austere? 3. Why is "fret" a good word to describe the appearance of the rivulet? What other words might be used in its place? 4. What does "nimble" tell you that would not be told by "quick," "busy," "brisk," or "active"? 5. What is a swath? 6. Is "crinkles" the best word to describe the appearance of a wheatfield or a lake when a sudden puff of wind strikes it? Why not use "quivers," "ripples," "billows," or "tosses"? 7. What do young quails do when they "skulk"? Is the word ever applied to persons? 8. How can a brooklet "ring tinkling bells"? 9. What is a "throbbing" drum, and why is this the right word to describe the sound made by the partridge?

10. What is the difference between droning and humming? What kinds of insects make a droning sound? a humming sound? 11. What is the meaning of "chatter" when it is applied to persons? Why is it properly used here of the noise made by a squirrel? 12. Why is "flashes" used in describing the oriole? Why not say "darts" or "glides"? 13. What do you think is the poet's purpose in describing all of these objects and living things? Is he successful?

LESSON XLIX

STUDY OF A POEM

MIDWINTER*

The speckled sky is dim with snow,
The light flakes falter and fall slow;
Athwart the hill-top, rapt and pale,
Silently drops a silvery veil;
And all the valley is shut in
By flickering curtains gray and thin.

But cheerily the chickadee
Singeth to me on fence and tree;
The snow sails around him as he sings,
White as the down of angel's wings.

I watch the slow flakes as they fall
On bank and brier and broken wall;
Over the orchard, waste and brown,
All noiselessly they settle down,
Tipping the apple-boughs, and each
Light quivering twig of plum and peach

On turf and curb and bower-roof
The snow-storm spreads its ivory woof;
It paves with pearl the garden walk;
And lovingly round tattered stalk
And shivering stem its magic weaves
A mantle fair as lily-leaves.

The hooded bee-hive, small and low,
Stands like a maiden in the snow;
And the old door-slab is half hid
Under an alabaster lid.

* Copyrighted by Houghton, Mifflin & Co., Boston

All day it snows: the sheeted post
Gleams in the dimness like a ghost;
All day the blasted oak has stood
A muffled wizard of the wood;
Garland and airy cap adorn
The sumach and the wayside thorn,
And clustering spangles lodge and shine
In the dark tresses of the pine.

The ragged bramble, dwarfed and old,
Shrinks like a beggar in the cold;
In surplice white the cedar stands,
And blesses him with priestly hands.

— *J. T. Trowbridge.*

Exercise 1. — Mark the lines of this poem that you most enjoy, and commit them to memory. Answer as many of the following questions as you can.

1. What is the "silvery veil"? Have you ever seen anything like it? 2. What makes the twigs of the plum and peach tree quiver? 3. What is the meaning of the word "woof"? Why is it used here? 4. What does alabaster look like? 5. Why does the poet call the oak tree "a muffled wizard"? 6. Are there any sounds to break the silence? What are they? 7. Do you know why the bramble is called "ragged"? 8. Which of these words best describes the feeling of the poet as he views the scene: *joyful, cheerful, sad, somber, melancholy, pensive, calm?*

Exercise 2. — Describe in your own words the part of the scene that you remember best.

LESSON L

DESCRIPTIVE WORDS TO BE SUPPLIED

Exercise 1. — Think of all the words that might be used to fill the blank in the following poem. Select the one that will best describe the motion of the reeds or the sound as the wind sweeps through them. Give your reasons for choosing this word.

SUMMER WINDS

Up the dale and down the bourne,
  O'er the meadow swift we fly;
Now we sing, and now we mourn,
  Now we whistle, now we sigh.

By the grassy-fringed river,
  Through the —— reeds we sweep,
Mid the lily-leaves we quiver,
  To their very hearts we creep.

Exercise 2. — As you read the following description try to picture in your mind as clearly as you can the lake, the mountains, and the road. Then choose from the following just the right words to fill the blanks:

abruptly	steeply	precipitously	sheer	softly
gently	slowly	swiftly	furiously	rapidly

"The lake is about fifty miles long, and the eastern end of it runs far in among the mountains. These mountains are very dark and somber, and their sides rise —— from the margin of the water so that in many places there is scarcely room for a road along the shore. Indeed, you go generally to that end of the lake in a steamer; and as you advance, the mountain seems to shut you in completely at the end of the lake. But when you get near to the end, you see a narrow valley opening before you, with high mountains on either hand, and the River Rhone flowing very —— between green and beautiful banks in the middle of it."

LESSON LI

READING FACES

Exercise 1. — Notice the expression on the face of the dog. What does it mean? Can you find some word that will describe it? What would he say if he could speak? Why has he put his paw on the little girl's knee? Look at the girl's face. Do you think she is trying to tease the dog? Can you find any word or phrase that will describe her face?

Exercise 2. — Turn to the pictures on p. 317. Find a word or phrase that will exactly describe each face. Suggest words — why do you choose? Why do you reject?

Exercise 3. — Examine the face of the donkey on p. 324. What word can you think of that will describe it accurately?

Exercise 4. — Find words to describe the faces of the two men in the picture on p. 294.

DIVIDED AFFECTION

LESSON LII

DIRECTIONS FOR DESCRIBING

A **description** should be so written as to produce a clear picture in the mind of the reader.

Observe carefully these *directions:*

1. Learn all you can about what you are to describe: (*a*) By observation; (*b*) By experiment; (*c*) By reading and study; (*d*) By inquiry.
2. Do not try to write a description of an object unless you can see it or

remember it distinctly. 3. After having gathered the material for your description, arrange it in order according to one of the plans or outlines given.

4. Think every sentence carefully through before beginning to write it. Arrange what you say in separate paragraphs, according as it pertains to one or another branch of your subject.

5. Use no word or expression of which the meaning or the application is not clear to you. 6. Learn to select words that *exactly* describe the quality to which you wish to refer. Do not be too proud nor too lazy to use a dictionary.

7. Avoid in all your language, whether spoken or written, every *slang* expression — not only because slang is vulgar, but also because it is a great hindrance to the growth of one's vocabulary.

Exercise 1. — Write as if for a friend who is at a distance and has never visited you a clear and vivid **description** of your *schoolhouse* and *schoolroom.*

1. Describe the *building:* (*a*) its location; whether pleasant, convenient, and so on. (*b*) Its surroundings; yard, trees, etc. (*c*) Its age, size, shape, material; architecture, whether plain or ornamental. (*d*) The entrances, stairways, corridors, arrangement of rooms, dressing-rooms, etc.

2. Describe your *room:* (*a*) In what part of the building. (*b*) Size, shape; doors, windows. (*c*) Furniture; seats, number, arrangement. (*d*) Walls, blackboards, maps, ornaments. (*e*) Such improvements as you can suggest.

Exercise 2. — In the same general way **describe** —

1. The church you attend.
2. The house you live in.
3. Your sitting-room.
4. Your grandfather's home.
5. A mill.
6. The nearest railroad station.
7. A blacksmith's shop.
8. The gymnasium.
9. The ball-field.
10. The largest public building in town.
11. A railway car.
12. A children's play-room.
13. A farmer's kitchen.
14. A country store.
15. An old garret.
16. The public library.
17. A day in a trolley-car.
18. An automobile.

Exercise 3. — Take for your subject —

1. **My Garden.** Tell its situation; its form and size; how inclosed; how the beds are arranged; what they contain; just how you have managed it this year; what you expect to gather or to raise; what you can find in it to interest you if you will. Write simply and naturally, as you would talk to a friend.

2. What I see from my Piazza.
3. What I see on my Way to School.
4. The View from a Hill-top.
5. An Hour in the Woods.
6. Learning to Swim.
7. What the City Boy saw in the Country.
8. Autumn Foliage.
9. How the Coal was got into the Cellar.
10. The Organ-Grinder.
11. A Game of Hide and Seek.
12. Mowing the Lawn.
13. The Tin Peddler.
14. The Broken Axletree.
15. How the Moving was done.
16. On a Street Corner.
17. Scenes in an Electric Car.
18. The Street Vender.
19. Scenes at a Railway Station.
20. Harvesting our Crop.

LESSON LIII

COMPARISON AND CONTRAST

In describing an object it is often a help to *compare* or *contrast* it with something better known — showing how the two agree or differ in appearance, structure, qualities, use, and so on.

Exercise 1. — Compare the following with respect to (*a*) **Form,** (*b*) **Parts or Structure,** (*c*) **Use.**

1. A pin and a needle.
2. A spoon and a fork.
3. A shovel and a pickaxe.
4. A pail and a box.
5. A sled and a boat.
6. A fence and a wall.
7. A watch and a clock.
8. A leaf and a flower.
9. A bolt and a lock.
10. A pocket and a purse.
11. A fireplace and a stove.
12. A thermometer and a barometer.
13. A chair and a sofa.

Exercise 2. — Compare the following as to their (*a*) **Appearance,** (*b*) **Qualities,** (*c*) **Use.**

1. Butter and cheese.
2. Cotton and wool.
3. Cotton and linen.
4. Leather and rubber.
5. Silk and flax.
6. Flour and meal.

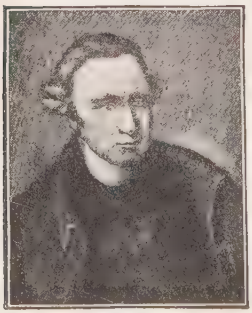
Exercise 3. — Compare the following with respect to their (*a*) **Size,** (*b*) **Parts,** (*c*) **Habits.**

1. Horse and cow.
2. Hen and duck.
3. Cat and dog.
4. Horse and camel.
5. Wolf and lamb.
6. Fly and spider.
7. Frog and turtle.
8. Butterfly and humming-bird.

Exercise 4. — Compare the following, showing, in an orderly way, points of **likeness** and of **difference.**

1. Two of your classmates.
2. Summer and winter.
3. Two churches.
4. A doctor and a clergyman.
5. A farmer and a miner.
6. A telephone and a telegraph instrument.

Exercise 5. — In the picture on p. 321, find two dogs that look very much alike. Point out the likenesses and differences.



Exercise 6. — Examine this face carefully. Then find in this book or elsewhere a face that resembles it. Point out the likenesses and differences.

Exercise 7. — In the front part of Webster's "International Dictionary" and opposite p. 1612 of the "Standard Dictionary" are pictures of the Great Seals of the States. Finding two that are nearly alike, tell the likenesses and differences.

LESSON LIV

THREE FACES

Exercise 1. — Look carefully at these pictures. Are they three portraits of the same boy, or portraits of three different boys? Give reasons for your opinion.

Exercise 2. — Choose the face that you like best, and describe it as accurately as you can.

LESSON LV

GEOGRAPHICAL DESCRIPTIONS

The description of countries, cities, rivers, mountains, and of other natural or political divisions requires careful observation and inquiry, as well as reading and study. The order in which such subjects may be treated is shown by the following

OUTLINES

I. A City or Town

I. **Situation.** County and state or the like; on or in sight of what shore, river, lake, mountain, railroad, or important city — giving distance and direction.

II. **Size.** Area and population, compared with some other city or town. Variety of inhabitants.

III. **Streets and Roads.** Quality and direction. Principal means of approach and transportation.

IV. **Buildings and Public Works.** Number and character. Library, post-office, court-house, churches, schoolhouses, parks, bridges, monuments, etc. If a place of note — the reason.

V. **Leading industry.** Manufactures — what kind. Commerce — with what places. Agriculture — what products.

VI. **Surroundings.** Character of the suburbs; natural scenery; places of historic interest.

VII. **History.** Brief mention of specially interesting events, of remarkable growth and prosperity, or of disasters.

II. A Country or State

I. **Situation.** In reference to the whole region; to other states, etc.

II. **Size.** Area, or length and breadth, as shown by comparison. Population.

III. **Physical Features.** The coast, surface, mountains, rivers, lakes. The climate and soil.

IV. **Products:** (*a*) animal; (*b*) vegetable; (*c*) mineral.

V. **Cities and Towns.** The more important. For what noted.

VI. **Trade and Manufactures.** Imports, exports, and articles manufactured.

VII. **People.** Race, nationality; chief occupations; character; education; religion; government. Other matters of interest.

Exercise 1. — Following the general plan given above, describe —

1. The city or town in which you live.
2. One or more of the most important cities in the United States.
3. One or more of the following:

London	Paris	Moscow	Rome	Dublin
Berlin	Birmingham	Tokio	Mexico	Florence
Liverpool	Edinburgh	Calcutta	Cairo	Vienna
Havana	Manila	Cape Town	Pekin	Panama

Exercise 2. — After collecting the necessary information from either persons or books, arrange it according to the preceding plan in —

1. A description of your **native state** or **country.**
2. A description of one or more of the following:

England	Scandinavia	Spain	Florida	Holland
New York	Italy	Chile	Greece	Mexico
France	Japan	Russia	Scotland	Australia
Brazil	China	Pennsylvania	Ireland	Java
Palestine	India	Egypt	Germany	California

LESSON LVI

DESCRIPTION OF PROCESSES

To tell how an article is made, or how anything is done, requires a thorough knowledge of the process and considerable skill in expression. We must —

1. State the object of the process; the difficulty, frequency of it, etc.
2. Describe the **material** used; the *tools*, *utensils*, and everything else required.
3. Mention the **persons** engaged in the work.
4. Narrate the **details of the operation** from beginning to end, telling exactly what is done.

Exercise. — Take as a subject whichever of these processes you are familiar with, prepare an outline, and write a **description** of it.

1. Setting a Table.
2. Making a Bed.
3. Harnessing a Horse.
4. Making a Kite.
5. Making an Apron.
6. Getting Supper.
7. Shoeing a Horse.
8. Building a House.
9. Making Traps.
10. Making Bricks.
11. Laying out a Base-ball Ground.
12. The Manufacture of Pottery.
13. Printing a Newspaper.
14. Taking Care of Plants.
15. How to Play my Favorite Game.
16. How a Beaver Builds his House.
17. The Care of a Canary.
18. Laying out a Tennis-court.
19. The Coining of a Silver Dollar.
20. Making Cotton into Cloth.

LESSON LVII

A PICTURE AND A POEM

Exercise 1. — After reading the following story find in the picture, "The Congress of Dogs," a dog like Dart. Describe him. Find other dogs that might be Prince and Swallow and little Music. How do you know which dogs to choose?

On his morning rounds the Master
Goes to learn how all things fare;
Searches pasture after pasture,
Sheep and cattle eyes with care;
And, for silence or for talk,
He hath comrades in his walk;
Four dogs, each pair of different breed,
Distinguished two for scent, and two for speed.

See a hare before him started!
— Off they fly in earnest chase;
Every dog is eager-hearted,
All the four are in the race:
And the hare whom they pursue,
Knows from instinct what to do;
Her hope is near: no turn she makes;
But, like an arrow, to the river takes.

Deep the river was, and crusted,
Thinly by a one night's frost;
But the nimble hare hath trusted
To the ice, and safely crossed;
She hath crossed, and without heed
All are following at full speed,
When lo! the ice, so thinly spread,
Breaks — and the grayhound, Dart, is overhead!

Better fate have Prince and Swallow —
See them cleaving to the sport!
Music has no heart to follow,
Little Music, she stops short.
She hath neither wish nor heart,
Hers is now another part;
A loving creature she, and brave!
And fondly strives her struggling friend to save.

From the brink her paws she stretches,
Very hands as you would say!
And afflicting moans she fetches,
As he breaks the ice away.

For herself she hath no fears, —
Him alone she sees and hears, —
Makes efforts with complainings; nor gives o'er
Until her fellow sinks to reappear no more.

— *Wordsworth.*

Exercise 2. — Tell in your own words the story of Dart.

LESSON LVIII

DESCRIPTION OF ANIMALS

Exercise 1. — From *what you already know* about **The Camel,** write as good a description as you can without making an outline.

Learn what you can about camels *from books and persons,* study the outline below, and then follow it, add to it, or use parts of it in rewriting your description.

In gathering material for the description of *an animal* we may follow an outline similar to that here applied to —

The Camel

I. **Introduction.** The camel a large beast of burden; famous as "The Ship of the Desert."

II. **Place where found.** Arabia, Africa, Central Asia.

III. **Size, Shape, and Covering.** Eight feet high; much larger than a horse; ungainly; humps (one or two) on back; covered with rough, dark brown hair.

IV. **Parts.** *Head* small, like a sheep's, no horns; *teeth* unlike those of most herbivorous animals — more like a dog's, and suited to tearing off twigs and shrubs; *neck* long, no mane; *body* bulky; *legs* long, slender; *knees* provided with a cushion; *feet* broad, soft.

V. **Food.** Thorny shrubs, date leaves, beans.

VI. **Habits and Qualities.** Chews the cud; seldom needs water; has great endurance; patient, obedient, kneels for burden; vicious towards its own kind.

VII. **Uses.** (*a*) Beast of burden: 300 pounds five or six miles an hour. (*b*) Its milk a favorite beverage. (*c*) Flesh salted for food. (*d*) Fat melted for butter. (*e*) Hair made into cloth.

VIII. **Conclusion.** Indispensable in long journey across deserts; anecdotes, etc.

Exercise 2. — Write a **description** of one or more of the following, making an outline of what is important to be said.

Elephant	Beaver	Frog	Tiger	Horse
Lion	Crocodile	Spider	Raccoon	Cow
Bear	Fox	Bee	Sheep	Reindeer
Wolf	Whale	Silkworm	Butterfly	Cod

In collecting material for the description of *a bird* the outline below may be followed. In every case, when possible, the observation and study should be from the object itself.

Description of Birds

I. **Appearance:** Form; size; actual and comparative; bill, length, how adapted for use; feet, size; toes, number, length, position, adaptation for mode of life.

II. **Color:** Above; below; distinguishing marking; differences between male and female; young.

III. **Name:** Significance of; by whom given; change in different localities; variety in one locality.

IV. **Food:** Kinds in summer, in winter; where and how obtained.

V. **Nest:** When built; where; by whom; material used; how made; size; shape; time required for building.

VI. **Eggs:** Number; color and markings; size; time of incubation.

VII. **Young:** Covering; food; time in nest; learning to fly.

VIII. **Enemies:** What; why to be feared.

IX. **Song:** Characteristics; when; birds having similar song.

X. **Migration:** When; where; why; routes; leaders.

XI. **Value to man.**

XII. **Personal Observations.**

Exercise 3. — In the same general way make a study and description of the following, using the outline or such parts of it as may be helpful.

Woodpecker	Bobolink	Sparrow	Swallow
Jay	Mocking-bird	Chickadee	Blackbird
Oriole	Bluebird	Owl	Meadow-lark
Cedar-bird	Kingbird	Crow	Hawk

Exercise 4. — Examine the face of this donkey carefully. Then, closing your book, tell everything you can about the donkey's appearance.

Exercise 5. — Find in the picture on p. 321 a dog whose expression is much like that of the donkey. Point out the resemblances and differences.

Exercise 6. — Learn the name of some animal that once existed but is now *extinct*. (If you do not know this word look it up in the dictionary.) Having gathered all the information you can about it, describe it for your classmates.

LESSON LIX

DESCRIPTION OF PLANTS

Exercise 1. — Select some **plant**, either wild or cultivated, of which you know the looks and habits very well, and try to describe it. Remember the stem, branches, leaves, flowers, and fruit; the shape, size, and color of all the parts; when it starts, when it blossoms, when it dies, etc.

It is one thing *to be acquainted* with a plant — to know how it grows, how it behaves, and how it differs from other plants in its stem, its leaves, its flowers, and its fruits. This comes only by the study of plants themselves.

It is quite another thing *to know of what use* a plant is to man, and what treatment it receives.

A general description of *a plant as producing something useful to man* may follow this

OUTLINE

I. **Use, Value.** For food, clothing, building material, etc.

II. **Place Where Found, and How Discovered.** Native or naturalized; wild or cultivated.

III. **General Appearance.** Height, size, trunk, bark, branches, foliage, flowers, fruit. Method of propagating.

IV. **Part Used.** Method of gathering or collecting it, and of preparing it for its final use.

Exercise 2. — After reading and asking questions, or after a conversation-lesson in school, make an outline, and give a general description of **the plant** from which we get

Flour	Sugar	Flax	Rubber	Mahogany
Rice	Cotton	Tea	Tobacco	Oranges
Corn	Coffee	Cork	Cocoa	Potatoes
Figs	Dates	Almonds	Bananas	Peanuts

LESSON LX

LISTENING DOGS

Exercise 1. — The two dogs appear to be listening to some sound that comes from within the house. What is the sound and what causes it? If there is some person in the house, tell who it is and what he (or she) is doing or saying. Describe this person. If he appears at the door what will he say, and what will the dogs do?

Exercise 2. — Describe briefly the attitudes of the two dogs.

Exercise 3. — Find in the picture on p. 321 two dogs which closely resemble these. Point out the resemblances and differences.

Exercise 4. — Suppose that you have taken a snap-shot of these dogs with your camera. In taking the picture you stood a little way behind them, but just before you pressed the button you whistled sharply. Describe the picture thus taken.

LESSON LXI

DESCRIPTION OF PERSONS

It is easy to recognize a person, to distinguish him in a crowd, and to learn his ways; but it is hard to convey clearly to others the means of picturing to themselves one whom they have not seen, or of understanding his character. We must do the best we can to describe truthfully the —

I. **Figure.** Whether large, tall, stout, well-proportioned, or the opposite.

II. **Face.** *Features,* complexion, eyes, hair, etc.

III. **Manners.** Peculiarities of appearance, bearing, action, dress, and speech.

IV. **Traits of Character.** Disposition, habits, peculiar traits, mental power, source of reputation.

Exercise 1. — After making an outline, **describe** one or more of the following: —

1. Your father.
2. Your most intimate friend.
3. The family doctor.
4. A baby.
5. The oldest person you ever saw.
6. Yourself.
7. A tramp.
8. A farmer.
9. An Indian.
10. The most peculiar person you know.
11. A clergyman.
12. An Englishman.
13. A Chinaman.
14. An Italian.
15. The ideal boy or girl.

Exercise 2. — Give directions to an artist for painting a portrait of some boy or girl in your school. You need not give the name. Describe the person so accurately that the artist will have no excuse for mistakes. Write good naturedly and avoid hurting anyone's feelings.

Exercise 3. — Describe one of the historical characters mentioned on pp. 302, 303.

Exercise 4. — Describe some character that you have read about in a story or poem.

CHAPTER VI

Explanations

LESSON LXII

AN EXAMPLE OF EXPLANATION

Read carefully the following explanation and be prepared to answer the questions below:

You will often read, in books, of measuring the height of a mountain, or other lofty place, by the barometer; and to most people this is quite a mystery. The explanation of it is, however, very simple. It is this: The earth is surrounded on all sides by the atmosphere, which though very light, has a certain weight, and presses with considerable force upon the ground, and upon everything that is exposed to it. If, however, you go up from the ground, as, for instance, when you ascend a mountain, the higher you go, the less the pressure is. This is naturally to be expected, for the higher you go in such a case, the less air there is above you to press. Now, a barometer is an instrument to measure the pressure of the air, just as a thermometer measures the heat or coldness of it. An aneroid barometer is a kind in which the air presses on a curiously contrived ring or band of brass, and according as it presses more or less, it moves an index like the hand of a watch, which is placed on the face of it.

The way in which you use such an instrument to measure the height of a mountain is this: You look at the instrument when you are at the bottom of the mountain, before you begin your ascent, and see how it stands. There is a little index like the hour-hand of a watch, which is movable. This you set at the point where the other index stands when you are at the foot of the mountain. Then you begin your ascent. You shut up your barometer if you

please, and put it in your knapsack, or in a box, or anywhere else you please. Wherever you put it, the pressure of the air will find it out, and penetrate to it, and as you gradually rise from the surface of the earth, the index, which is connected with the curious brass ring, moves slowly backward as the pressure diminishes. This motion continues as long as you continue ascending. If you come to a level place, it remains stationary as long as the level continues. If you descend, it goes forward a little, and then begins to go back again as soon as you once more begin to ascend. Then, when you get to the top of the mountain, you look at it, and you see at once how much the pressure of the air has diminished. From this, by an easy calculation, you tell at once how high you have come.

1. What is it that the writer is trying to explain? In what words does he tell this? 2. What does the writer tell us in lines 4–10? Why does he say this at the beginning rather than the end? 3. What does he tell about in lines 11–16? To what is the barometer compared? Why? 4. What is the difference between these two instruments? How are they alike? 5. What is told in lines 17–36? Could we have understood this part if it had come first? 6. Notice the words that are used. Are there any that you do not understand?

Exercise 1. — Explain to some one who is younger than you are how you can measure the height of a tree without climbing to the top of it. Before talking or writing consider carefully what you will say and in what order you will say it.

Exercise 2. — Explain how a fish can raise and lower itself in the water.

Exercise 3. — Explain how a boat can sail against the wind.

LESSON LXIII

DIRECTIONS FOR EXPLAINING

In order to explain anything we must first make sure that we understand it very well ourselves, for how can a writer hope to make clear to others what is not clear to himself?

When we are sure that we understand the subject, we should think of all the different things we want to say about it and set them down in their proper order.

A good way to begin an explanation is to state exactly what it is we mean to explain and how we intend to explain it. Then as we write it is well to observe these precautions:

1. Use the simplest language possible.
2. Tell one thing at a time.
3. Follow a definite plan.
4. Tell things in the order in which they are needed.
5. Compare the thing to be explained with something else which the reader already knows about as, for example, a barometer with a thermometer.

Exercise 1. — An old-fashioned remedy for nose-bleed is to put a large brass door-key on the back of the neck. Another remedy is to take several long breaths one right after the other. Find why either of these remedies, or both of them, should check the bleeding. Then make a careful explanation for someone who does not understand.

Exercise 2. — Some persons after seeing a flash of lightning can tell in a little while how far away it was. Find how this is done, and explain it to some one who does not understand it.

Exercise 3. — Explain to a young friend of yours how the graphophone reproduces the sound of the voice.

Exercise 4. — Which is the brightest star in the heavens? Learn where it is. Explain to someone how to find it.

Exercise 5. — Explain how the North Star may be found by one who is lost on the plains or in the desert.

LESSON LXIV

EXPLAINING A LOOK

Notice the expression on the face of the dog. Have you ever seen a human face with the same expression? What does it mean? What would the dog say if he could talk? What words would you use to describe his character?

LESSON LXV

THE POINT OF A STORY

Read the following stories. Then state as clearly as you can the point of each story, that is, what the story means.

(*a*) Two men once sat in a public meeting listening to a speech. When the meeting was over, one said to the other, "What did you think of that speech?" His friend replied, "It reminded me of a poplar tree that grew in my father's orchard. It was tall and beautiful, but it bore no fruit."

(*b*) A farmer once came to a neighboring lawyer, expressing great concern for an accident which he said had just happened. "One of your oxen," said he, "has been gored by an unlucky bull of mine, and I should be glad to know how I am to make you reparation."

"You are a very honest fellow," replied the lawyer, "and will not think it unreasonable that I expect one of your oxen in return."

"It is no more than justice, to be sure," said the farmer. "But what did I say? I misspoke myself. It is *your* bull that has killed one of *my* oxen."

"Indeed," said the lawyer, "that alters the case. I must inquire into the affair, and if — "

"And if!" exclaimed the farmer; "the business, I find, would have been concluded without an *if*, had you been as ready to do justice to others as to exact it from them."

LESSON LXVI

SOME PASSAGES TO BE EXPLAINED

A young friend of yours in his reading has come upon the following lines of poetry. He does not know precisely what they mean.

Explain them to him so clearly that he cannot fail to understand them.

(*a*) The key of yesterday I threw away,
And now to-day,
Before to-morrow's fast closed gate
Hopeless I wait,
In vain to pray, in vain to sorrow;
Only the key of yesterday unlocks to-morrow.

(*b*) We know not fully what we are
Still less what we might be;
But hear faint voices from the far
Dim lands beyond the sea.

(*c*) You're always sure to detect
A sham in the things folks most affect;
Bean-pods are noisiest when dry,
And you always wink with your weakest eye.

LESSON LXVII

A POEM TO LEARN

James Whitcomb Riley, popularly known as "The Hoosier Poet," was born in Greenfield, Indiana, in 1853. Most of his verses are in the Hoosier dialect, and are distinguished by their homely humor and pathos, and their musical rhythm. His first book of poems "The Old Swimmin' Hole," was published in 1883.

JAMES WHITCOMB RILEY

THE PRAYER PERFECT

Dear Lord! kind Lord!
Gracious Lord! I pray
Thou wilt look on all I love,
Tenderly to-day!
Weed their hearts of weariness;
Scatter every care
Down a wake of angel-wings
Winnowing the air.

Bring unto the sorrowing
All release from pain;
Let the lips of laughter
Overflow again;
And with all the needy
O divide, I pray,
This vast treasure of content
That is mine to-day!*

Exercise.—A child to whom this poem has been read wishes to know what is meant by the last three lines of the first stanza. Explain them to him as carefully as you can. Use simple words and make the meaning perfectly plain. Explain also what is meant by "weed their hearts," and "Let the lips of laughter overflow again."

LESSON LXVIII

STUDY OF A POEM

ABOU BEN ADHEM

Abou Ben Adhem (may his tribe increase!)
Awoke one night from a deep dream of peace,
And saw within the moonlight of his room,
Making it rich, and like a lily in bloom,
An angel writing in a book of gold.
Exceeding peace had made Ben Adhem bold,
And, to the presence in the room, he said,
"What writest thou?" The vision raised its head,
And, with a look made of all sweet accord,
Answered, "The names of those who love the Lord!"
"And is mine one?" asked Abou. "Nay, not so,"
Replied the angel. Abou spake more low,
But cheerly still; and said, "I pray thee, then,
Write me as one that loves his fellow-men."

* From "Rhymes of Childhood," copyrighted and published by the Bobbs-Merrill Company, Indianapolis. By permission.

The angel wrote and vanished. The next night
It came again, with a great wakening light,
And showed the names whom love of God had blest;
And lo! Ben Adhem's name led all the rest!

— *Leigh Hunt.*

Exercise 1. — 1. Is this a true story? Give it in your own words, trying not to leave out any idea expressed in the poem. What is the lesson it teaches? 2. What does *tribe* mean here? Is it specially appropriate? Why? 3. Do you think the name Abou Ben Adhem adds interest to the poem more than some more familiar name would have done? 4. What three names are given to the visitor? 5. Is this better than repeating the word angel? Why *it* rather than *he?* 6. Explain *like a lily in bloom; all sweet accord; exceeding peace; bold.* 7. Is *cheerly* the usual form?

LESSON LXIX

MEANING OF A POEM

THE CHAMBERED NAUTILUS

This is the ship of pearl, which, poets feign,
Sails the unshadowed main, —
The venturous bark that flings
On the sweet summer wind its purpled wings
In gulfs enchanted, where the Siren sings,
And coral reefs lie bare,
Where the cold sea-maids rise to sun their streaming hair.

Its webs of living gauze no more unfurl;
Wrecked is the ship of pearl!
And every chambered cell,
Where its dim dreaming life was wont to dwell,
As the frail tenant shaped his growing shell,
Before thee lies revealed, —
Its irised ceiling rent, its sunless crypt unsealed!

Year after year beheld the silent toil
That spread his lustrous coil;
Still, as the spiral grew,
He left the past year's dwelling for the new,
Stole with soft step its shining archway through,
Built up its idle door,
Stretched in his last-found home, and knew the old no more.

Thanks for the heavenly message brought by thee,
Child of the wandering sea,
Cast from her lap, forlorn!
From thy dead lips a clearer note is born
Than ever Triton blew from wreathëd horn!
While on mine ear it rings,
Through the deep caves of thought I hear a voice that sings:—

Build thee more stately mansions, O my soul,
As the swift seasons roll!
Leave thy low-vaulted past!
Let each new temple, nobler than the last,
Shut thee from heaven with a dome more vast,
Till thou at length art free,
Leaving thine outgrown shell by life's unresting sea!

—*O. W. Holmes.*

Read a description of the nautilus. Try to find a picture, or a shell, if you are near a museum of natural history. Nobody knew much about it before 1830. Not long after this Dr. Holmes wrote the poem. The old Greek name is *nautilus*, meaning a sailor.

Exercise. — 1. Is it meant that the nautilus *toils* like the ant or the bee? 2. What is meant by *stole with soft step?* 3. Does the nautilus sail on the surface all the time? 4. Is it known how long each chamber serves as its home? 5. Explain or define, giving synonyms when you can; *poets feign, unshadowed main, purpled wings, irised, rent, sunless, crypt, lustrous, Siren, Triton, low-vaulted, unresting, wandering sea, on mine ear it rings, heavenly message.* 6. What is the connection between *ven-*

turous, Siren sings, and *coral reefs?* 7. Express the chief thought of the first stanza simply in your own language, in two prose sentences. 8. Explain in a similar way the chief thought in each of the following stanzas. 9. Do you discover any plan in the poem as a whole? 10. What is the appropriateness of the last line, fourth stanza? 11. Commit the whole poem to memory. 12. Study the author and some of his other poems.

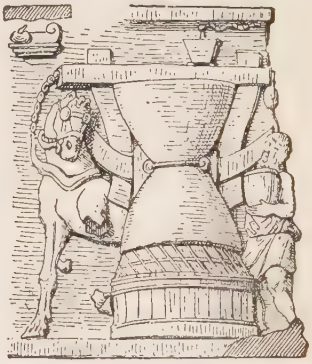
LESSON LXX

ANCIENT WEAPONS AND TOOLS

Exercise. — In this picture you see some of the weapons and tools used by the ancient cliff-dwellers of Arizona. See whether by studying them you can tell how each was made and what it was used for.

LESSON LXXI

AN OLD MILL



Exercise. — These pictures show the kind of mill with which the old Romans ground their wheat. The picture on the left shows the mill itself. The picture on the right is an old piece of sculpture showing how the mill was used. Write an explanation of the pictures, entitling it "How wheat was ground 2000 years ago."

LESSON LXXII

SOME INTERESTING WORDS

bedlam cynosure sincere sycophant porcelain

Exercise. — These words have a curious and interesting history. Look them up in the dictionary and find in any other way all you can about them. Then explain how each one came to mean what it does. The following outline may be used:

1. The derivation of the word.
2. Its earliest use.
3. The changes it has gone through.
4. Its present meaning and use.

CHAPTER VII

PARAGRAPHS

LESSON LXXIII

WHAT A PARAGRAPH IS

If we examine the language that we use in speaking or in writing, we shall find that it consists of larger and smaller groups. Groups of words join to form sentences; groups of sentences join to form paragraphs; groups of paragraphs join to form speeches or written compositions.

Further, when we consider these groups separately we see that in each case the elements of the group — the words, the sentences, and the paragraphs — have come together because they belong together. They are all needed in the group in which we find them in order to express some single, definite idea. Thus, all the words in a sentence have come together in order to express the one idea of that sentence: all of the sentences in a paragraph have come together in order to express the one idea of that paragraph; all the paragraphs of the composition have come together to express the one idea of that composition.

Read carefully the following group of sentences:

The water was full of vessels of all kinds, coming and going, or lying at anchor. These vessels were all of very peculiar forms, being built in the Dutch style, and not painted, but only varnished, so as to show beautifully the natural color of the wood of which they were made. They had what might be called fins on each side, which were made to be taken up or let down into the water, first on one side and then on the other, as the vessel was on different tacks in beating against the wind.

Notice that the sentences are all about one thing.

Sentence 1 tells us how many vessels there were.

Sentence 2 tells us what the vessels were made of.

Sentence 3 tells us how the vessels were sailed.

A group of sentences that belong together because they are all about one idea is called a **paragraph.**

The first word of a paragraph is begun a little to the right of the margin. This is called the *indention.*

The first word of every paragraph should be indented.

A good paragraph is said to have *unity.* This is just the same as saying that all of the sentences in it are about one thing.

A paragraph which is about two or more things, or which contains sentences that do not belong together, is said to *lack unity.* It is a bad paragraph.

Read this paragraph carefully:

1. At one place there was a ferry-landing. 2. The ferry-house, together with the various buildings appertaining to it, was on the top of the dike, and a large pier with a snug and pretty basin by the side of it, below. 3. There was a flight of stairs leading up from the pier to the ferry-house, and also a winding road for carriages. 4. At the time that the steamer went by this place, the ferry-boat was just coming in with a carriage on board of it.

Exercise 1. — What is the one thing the paragraph tells about?

Exercise 2. — Take a look from the window of the school-room. Then write a paragraph about something that you have seen. Be sure that the sentences are all about just one thing.

LESSON LXXIV

PARAGRAPHS TO BE SEPARATED

In the following selection three paragraphs have been run together. The first one tells about Mrs. Gray's view of the the mountain, the second tells about her view of the city, the

third is about her feelings in going up and down the iron stairway.

Find the places where the second and third paragraphs begin. Copy the selection, indenting at the proper points.

Mrs. Gray was very much interested in the view of the mountain, and of the column of smoke issuing from the summit. She had not seen the summit before, as all the upper part of the mountain had been enveloped in clouds during the time while they were approaching the town. She was also much pleased with the view of Naples itself, which she obtained from this platform. The hotel was built out over the water, so that from the lookout the town was spread out in full view, with all the great castles and towers which crowned the cliffs and headlands above, and the various moles, and piers, and fortresses that extended out in the water below. In coming up the iron stair, on the outside of the building, Mrs. Gray had been a little afraid; but in coming down she found the steps so firm and solid under her tread that she said she should not be afraid at all a second time.

Exercise 1. — On your way to or from school stop for a moment at a place where two streets or roads intersect. Look first to the north, then to the east, then to the west. Now write three paragraphs telling what you saw. In the first paragraph tell what you saw in front of you; in the second what you saw at the right; in the third what you saw at the left. Remember to make indentions in the proper places.

Exercise 2. — Write three paragraphs explaining how to spin a top. In the first tell how the top is wound; in the second how it is held; in the third how it is thrown. You may suppose that you are writing for a little child who has never had a top of his own before.

Exercise 3. — Give directions to an artist for drawing a picture of some wild animal. In the first paragraph tell the size, shape, and color, comparing it to some domestic animal; in the second describe the head; in the third describe the body; in the fourth describe the legs and tail. Remember to indent properly.

Exercise 4. — Examine the two paragraphs on pp. 328, 329. What is each one about?

LESSON LXXV

ORDER OF SENTENCES

In a good paragraph the thoughts march steadily from one sentence to another until the end is reached. This is because the sentences are in the right order and are connected together properly.

Notice the order of the sentences in the paragraph on p. 340.

First, we learn what the paragraph is about, that is, the ferry landing. Next, we learn what is at the landing, namely, the ferry-house, the pier, and the basin. Third, we learn about the flight of stairs and the road. Fourth, we learn about the approach of the ferry-boat.

Now put sentence 3 in the place of sentence 2. The order is then wrong. You cannot understand sentence 3 until you have been told about the landing and the ferry-house.

In every good paragraph there is a reason why the sentences come in the order in which you find them.

Exercise 1. — Read carefully the following paragraph. See whether you can explain why the sentences come in just this order. Try putting sentence 1 in the place of sentence 2. Why cannot this be done? Why should sentence 4 not stand at the beginning? Could sentence 6 come before sentence 5? Why? Could the second and third sentences change places? At first thought it would seem that the last sentence might come directly after sentence 4. But would this give a true picture of the scene? Why not?

1. The carriage was entirely open, and the party, as they drove along, enjoyed an uninterrupted view of everything around them. 2. They passed through one or two beautiful public squares, with palaces and churches on either hand, and lines of troops parading before them. 3. Then they came to a long and exceedingly busy street, with the port and the shipping on one side, and stores, shops, hotels, and estab-

lishments of every kind, on the other. 4. The street was crowded with people going to and fro, some on foot and some in carriages. 5. A great many persons were carrying burdens on their heads. 6. Some had jars, or pails, or little tubs of water; some had baskets heaped up with oranges, or other fruit. 7. Some had long boards with a row of loaves of dough upon them, which they were taking to the bakers to be baked.

Exercise 2. — Examine in the same way the paragraphs on pp. 27, 71, 312, 328, 329, 339.

LESSON LXXVI

STUDY OF POEMS

Exercise 1. — Make a study of "The Water Fowl," p. 142.

1. Can you tell what species of bird is meant? 2. Is it one of a flock? 3. What is the time of day? Of the year? 4. Would the bird probably be in sight of the poet all day? 5. In the sixth stanza why did the poet write *scream* instead of *sing?* 6. Can you see any reason why the poet says *abyss of heaven?* What does it mean? 7. Why capital in *Power?* 8. What is the force of *zone to zone?* 9. Show the close connection between stanzas 5 and 6. 10. Should there be a period after *near?* 11. Would the arrangement be improved by putting the fourth stanza next to the last? 12. Make a list of all the words in the poem that would probably not be used in prose. 13. Tell what you can of the author.

Exercise 2. — Make a study of "The Concord Hymn," p. 105.

1. What event is here commemorated? 2. One line of the poem is very often quoted; which is it? 3. What does this line mean? 4. What is the name of the *dark stream* that seaward creeps? 5. Does *creeps* quite harmonize with the *flood* of the first line? What does flood mean here? 6. Explain the use of *soft.* 7. With what meaning is *redeem* used? 8. What examples of personification does the poem contain? 9. What is the meaning of *embattled, votive, redeemed, shaft?* 10. Why use semicolons in second stanza instead of periods or commas? Explain the meaning of the last stanza.

APPENDIX II

I. CAPITALS, PUNCTUATION, ETC.

A **capital letter** should be used to begin —

1. Every independent sentence, and generally every phrase or clause separately numbered.

2. Every line of poetry.

3. Every direct quotation.

4. All words used as proper nouns; words made from proper nouns; and abbreviations of them.

5. Names and titles applied to the Diety, to the Savior, to the Trinity, to the Virgin Mary, and to the Bible.

NOTE. — Pronouns standing for the Deity should begin with capitals when necessary to make their antecedent clear.

6. Titles of honor, respect, and affection, and official titles applied to a particular person or used with a name.

7. The principal words in the title of books, pictures, periodicals, or in the headings of chapters, etc.

8. The names of political parties, religious denominations, races of men, words used to name certain regions or sections of a country, and names of special importance.

9. The words I and O should always be capitals.

NOTE. — Important words may be capitalized for emphasis, but capitals should be used sparingly for this purpose. The present tendency is to use capitals much less than formerly.

Exercise 1. — Justify the use of **capitals** in the following words and expressions:

Parent of Good, the Almighty, the Son of man, the Gospel, the Atlantic Ocean, New York City, Tuesday, March, African, Penn., his Honor, the Duke of Portland, General Miles, the Mayor of Duluth,

Admiral Sampson, the North, Hoosier, the Baptists, the North of Europe, Whigs and Tories, Come, gentle Spring, the Declaration of Independence, Prescott's Conquest of Peru, The Autocrat of the Breakfast Table.

Italic letters are used in printing —

1. To indicate emphatic words.
2. For short titles of books, pictures, etc., and names of ships.
3. For foreign words introduced into an English sentence.
4. For words mentioned by name; as the adverb *quickly*.

One line under a word in manuscript shows that it is to be printed in *italics;* two lines, in SMALL CAPITALS; three, in CAPITALS.

PUNCTUATION

If we carefully observe the marks used by the best writers and publishers, we shall find that there is great diversity among them.

Some discard the use of the colon entirely. Many prefer as few capitals, italics, and punctuation marks as possible.

Some books have the period after the headings of chapters and pages, others do not.

This is a matter of taste and prevailing custom. Sometimes, however, the simple omission of a comma in a personal letter may decide an important case in law; and a bill before the Massachusetts legislature was known as the "Semicolon Bill," because its meaning depended entirely upon the placing of a semicolon.

We shall not find good writers careless or inconsistent. When we write, we want to leave no chance of being misunderstood. When we speak, the tones of the voice and expression of the face help to make our meaning clear. If we are writing we need the help that punctuation marks can give us.

The rules for their use which are given below, have been agreed upon by the majority of our most careful writers. In many cases each mark has its own use, and no other can fill its place as well; in other cases we have to use our own judgment.

It is well for us to understand as many proper uses of punctuation marks as possible.

FOR REFERENCE. — Hill's "General Rules for Punctuation," Bigelow's "Handbook of Punctuation," and Wilson's "Treatise on Punctuation."

I. The **Period** (.) is used after —

1. A complete expression that is not interrogative or explanatory;

2. Abbreviations, initial letters, and Roman letters used as numerals;

Example: Sept., W. B. Richards, VII.

3. A heading, title, or signature, when it stands alone.

II. The **Comma** (,) —

Separates from the rest of the sentence —

1. The name of the person or thing addressed;

Examples: Richard, did you hear the alarm?
My country, 'tis of thee.

NOTE. — Sometimes we find an exclamation point in such examples.

See § 238.

2. A direct quotation, or the parts of one if it is divided;

Example: "Sir," replied I, "you do not know the cause of my grief."

Sets off —

3. Appositive words and phrases;

Example: Robinson, the best player of the eleven, has broken his leg. See Exercise 100.

4. Adjective clauses, when non-restrictive or explanatory; also adverb phrases and clauses which are separated from the words they modify; and, often, conditional and concessive clauses.

NOTE. — Single noun clauses are not usually set off by commas.

Examples: "The gray squirrels are fond of the high-bush blue-berries, which grow in abundance on the margin of the pond." — *F. Bolles.*

The rain having ceased, we went for Mayflowers.

"The Speedwell is noticeable during June and July, when clusters of these tiny flowers brighten many a waste spot along the sunny roadsides."

— *Mrs. Dana: "How to Know the Wild Flowers."*

"As I pick my way through marshy inland woods, its bright fronds, standing nearly three feet high, crowd about me."

— *"The Marsh Fern": Mrs. Dana.*

"If a man is slovenly in his ninety-nine cases of talking, he can seldom pull himself up to strength and exactitude in the hundredth case of writing."

— *G. H. Palmer.*

"Though old the thought and oft expressed,
'Tis his at last who says it best." — *Lowell.*

5. The **Comma** is used to separate the parts of a series of co-ordinate words or expressions when there are no connecting words; and sometimes, when there *are* such connecting words, for the sake of emphasis or distinctness.

Example: Franklin, Washington, Webster, and Lincoln, have been called the four greatest Americans.

NOTE. — Here the comma is used before "and"; it also sets off the long subject.

6. It shows that words are omitted.

Example: John was short of stature; Henry, tall.

7. It is used, in general, whenever a short pause is desired for a clearer understanding of the sentence.

"Obviously, good English is exact English."

— *Palmer's "Self Cultivation in English."*

III. The **Semicolon** (;) —

1. Separates long clauses, and sometimes sentences which are themselves divided by commas. Its use after the sentences forming a paragraph, instead of the period, is to keep a closer connection of thought.

Example: "Sometimes we leave an idea to be inferred from the context; sometimes we have more than one way of expressing the same idea; and sometimes we can express an idea only imperfectly; or not at all."

— *Henry Sweet: "English Grammar."*

2. Has the same uses as the comma when a longer pause is desired.

The wind is chill;
But let it whistle as it will,
We'll keep our Christmas merry still.

— *Marmion.*

3. Is sometimes used instead of the colon, as a mark of specification; and, like the colon in such cases, is often followed by a dash.

IV. The **Colon** (:). Although some writers discard the colon altogether, it has a distinct use —

1. As a mark of specification; as in introducing a formal statement or definition.
2. After the address in formal letters.
3. It is also used to separate the parts of a sentence which are themselves divided by semicolons. Such sentences may, however, be punctuated by commas and semicolons.

V. The **Interrogation Point** (?) is used after every direct question.

VI. The **Exclamation Point** (!) is used after any expression that is highly exclamatory.

NOTE. — Every interjection was formerly followed by the exclamation point. Now it is used only at the end of an exclamatory expression, unless there are certain words distinctly requiring it. The interjection *O* never has it unless standing alone, when it is written *Oh!*

VII. The **Dash** (—) is properly used —

1. When there is a sudden break in the sentence.
2. To show omissions,

As—vs. 32–40. b. 1840, d. —

3. Instead of parentheses two dashes inclose something which is necessary to the meaning, yet is an interruption.
4. After other marks, to add to their force, or to introduce illustrations or several dependent expressions. In the latter case it follows a colon or semicolon.

NOTE. — The dash is perhaps more carelessly used than any other mark. The more closely we can keep each mark to a definite use the better for the reader.

VIII. The **Hyphen** (-) —

1. Joins the parts of some compound words.

Example: Anglo-Saxon, great-grandfather, olive-green, but *not* New York, fisherman, etc.

NOTE. — Observation will teach us when to use the hyphen in compound words. Some of the examples given above are sometimes written without the hyphen. Like other marks, it should be used only when needed.

2. It is used between the syllables of a word on different lines.

IX. **Quotation Marks** (" ")

1. Always inclose a direct quotation, or the parts of such a quotation if it is divided by words not belonging to it.

Example: "Yes, sir," said the messenger, "I will attend to it."

But an indirect quotation requires no marks.

Example: The messenger said that he would attend to it.

2. When a quotation consists of several paragraphs or stanzas, the marks are used only at the beginning of each, and at the close of the last.

3. The titles of books, magazines, etc., are sometimes inclosed in quotation-marks, and sometimes printed in italics.

NOTE.— If a writer uses the double marks for quotation, single marks inclose an inner quotation, and *vice versa*.

X. The **Apostrophe** (') is used

1. To form the plurals of letters, figures, and other marks, as —

Dot your i's, and cross your t's; 3's and 4's, +'s, etc.

2. To show possession, with or without s. (See §222.)

3. To show the omission of one or more letters.

Can't, isn't, e'er, o'clock.

XI. The **Parenthesis** and **Bracket**, ( ), [ ],

Inclose the expressions which do not strictly belong to the sentence. The parenthesis is the more common form.

The bracket is generally used by editors in supplying missing words, dates, and the like, and for corrections, additions, or explanations.

XII. **Asterisks** (****), or (. . . .),

Show that omissions are made in what is copied or quoted.

Single asterisks and other marks, used for footnotes or references, explain themselves.

XIII. For the use of marks in letter-writing see pp. 273–277.

II. THE DEVELOPMENT OF OUR LANGUAGE

No language ever came into being ready-made. A language, like a plant, is always a growth. It has its period of development from small beginnings, its time of vigorous maturity, and, it may be, of decline. The history of a tongue, or even of a dialect, is of necessity closely connected with that of the people using it. As a nation grows in power, the influence of its language must also spread; so, too, must that influ-

ence share in the decline of the people to which it belongs. The *literature* may indeed remain, but even that cannot grow. The splendid literatures of Greece and Rome are no richer today than they were when the Greeks succumbed to the Roman power, and the Romans to the barbarous hordes from Central Europe in the fifth century. Our own language is now a great power in the world because the tremendous activity of the English-speaking race has carried it to every quarter of the globe.

The history of the English tongue is most interesting, bound up as it is in that of the English people — sharing in, and by its very form recording, the changes that have marked the wonderful development of the race. Fully to understand the language as we use it today, one should trace this history from the earliest time when English is recognizable as a distinct tongue. This is a long task; yet a few of the most important changes should be familiar to every one who wishes to read intelligently its literature.

The Britons. — The earliest race contributing definitely to make English history and the English language, which is known to have inhabited the island of Great Britain, was that of the fierce and hardy Britons. Attacked by Julius Cæsar, who led his Roman legions across the British Channel in the year B.C. 55, they were overpowered or driven into the fastnesses of Wales and Scotland by the close of the first century after Christ. Since the Britons never became thoroughly united with their conquerors, few of their customs, or their words, remain. Yet, in the proper names *Avon, Exeter, Oxford, Thames,* and in such familiar words as *cradle, glen, havoc, pool,* and *mug,* we have relics of the language that was spoken in England before the Christian Era.

The Romans. — For four centuries, or thereabouts, the Romans held sway over the greater portion of the island. Their dominion is marked in our vocabulary by the presence of *wall,* from the Latin *vallum,* and of *street,* from *strata* (*via*), a *paved* (road or way). For, to hold their possessions, it was necessary that the conquerors should establish many *camps,* or *castra* as they called them, and that these camps should be surrounded by walls, and connected by military roads, or streets. The word *castra* is seen also in the names of many of the towns where these camps were planted, as, *Lancaster, Gloucester, Chester,* and *Manchester,* and testifies to the Roman occupation just as those names in the United States do to the English settlement of this country.

Angles, Saxons, and Jutes. — Soon after the withdrawal of the Roman forces the land was invaded anew by a race distinct from Britons and Romans. They came from the lowlands of Europe that skirt the German Ocean and the lower Baltic, and spoke a language closely akin to that now in use there. Three divisions of this new Teutonic race came over at various times, in the latter part of the fifth century — *Angles*, *Saxons*, and *Jutes*.

For a hundred years and more the struggle lasted between the Britons and their foes. Finally, however, the land came into the possession of the *Angles* and the *Saxons*, who, as well as the Jutes, ultimately united to form the *Aenglisc* or *English* people, and who gave its name and its character to the English language. They, in their turn, it is true, were assailed by invaders — the fiery Norsemen from Denmark and Norway; but the new invaders were originally of the same blood, and in a measure mingled with, rather than absolutely over-powered, the English race, now fairly established in Britain. The influence, therefore, of this *Norse* invasion upon the language is not to be readily distinguished.

It is this *Anglo-Saxon* tongue, then, that forms, as it were, the *framework* of the English language as used by Alfred the Great ten centuries ago, and as we use it today. For more than five hundred years this was the speech of England.

The Normans. — While, like any other language, English suffered many modifications, there was no radical change till there came a new conquest of the island in A.D. 1066. In that year the Normans crossed from Northern France, and, after years of hard and bitter fighting, conquered the mingled Angles, Saxons, and Danes, and established a new rule, new manners, and, in part, a new language in the land. This new language, the Norman-French, was in reality but a modified form of the Latin, which the Romans, under Julius Cæsar, had introduced into France more than a thousand years before. The new customs brought by the invaders planted, of course, a large number of new words in the language of England, but its structure remained substantially Anglo-Saxon as before. Forms, however, were gradually becoming simpler. While the foreigners readily contributed new words and new ideas, they were impatient of adopting the forms of speech of their subjects; and the very shape of the words of English origin, as well as that of the borrowed terms, was modified in the course of the centuries required to unite the two races into one people. *Palace, castle, language, people.*

fashion are examples of Norman-French words brought into our language through the Latin.

The Revival of Learning. — Another era that marks a comparatively sudden change in the language is that of the centuries which gave us the invention of printing and the discovery of America. One of the results of the great quickening of thought that distinguishes this period was the awakening of an interest in the ancient classics. A knowledge of the literature and the language of Greece and of Rome came to be regarded as an absolute essential in the training of every educated person. This era, known as "The Rivival of Learning," is responsible for the introduction of great numbers of Latin and Greek words.

Modern Additions. — In more recent times there has been a somewhat steady growth in the vocabulary, as inventions and scientific discoveries have made necessary the creation of new terms. Latin, and especially Greek, have furnished a multitude of words in science, and indeed for household use. *Telegraph, telephone, bicycle, geography, automobile, multiplication, invention,* are familiar words drawn into common service from these sources. Commerce and travel have supplied large numbers of words from almost every civilized language on the earth. From the **French,** for example, we have borrowed *apartment, cadet, burlesque;* from the **Italians,** *pilgrim, cupola, lava;* from the **Spanish,** *indigo, vanilla, cork;* from **Persia,** *candy, chess, caravan;* from **Africa,** *oasis, guinea, canary;* from **Arabia,** *admiral, coffee, lemon,* etc. The Philippines, Cuba, and Porto Rico are likely to furnish many more terms through the channels of trade and social intercourse.

Losses. — In this way a wonderfully rich and varied vocabulary has been built up in the English language, which is equalled by that of no other tongue. It must not be supposed, however, that the process of change has been wholly one of addition — that there have been no losses. If one tries to read for the first time a page of Chaucer's "Canterbury Tales," however familiar he may be with the English of today, he will seem to be trying to read a new language. Many of the words will be entirely strange, and even words that he recognizes will be oddly spelled. Yet Chaucer has been called "a well of English undefiled." Words once in common use have disappeared, and the spelling of those still remaining has been greatly modified.

A clerk ther was of Oxenford also,
That un-to logik hadde longe y-go.
As lene was his hors as is a rake,
And he was not right fat, I undertake;
But loked holwe, and ther-to soberly,
Ful thredbar was his overest courtepy;
For he had geten him yet no benefyce,
Ne was so worldly for to have offyce.

A clerk there was of Oxford also,
That unto logic had long gone,
As lean was his horse as is a rake,
And he was not right fat, I undertake;
But looked hollow, and likewise soberly,
Full threadbare was his uppermost short cloak;
For he had gotten him yet no benefice,
Nor was so worldly for to have office.

— *From Skeat's "The Works of Geoffrey Chaucer."*

The English language, or rather the Anglo-Saxon, like the ancient Latin and Greek, and the modern French and German, had a great many inflected forms. Where now a noun has two case-forms, it once had five; an adjective had at least nine different case-forms, for an adjective was made to agree with its noun in gender, number, and case; and the forms of the verb were much more numerous than at present. That is, English as first spoken, was rich in inflected forms for showing the relations of words to one another in the sentence. As such forms are most often made by attaching endings to the *stems* of nouns, pronouns, adjectives, and verbs, languages abounding in inflections are called *synthetic* languages. (Synthesis means putting together.) In the English of today these relations in the case of nouns and pronouns are expressed mainly by *prepositions*, and in the case of verbs many of the modifications in meaning are expressed by the use of *auxiliaries*. A language that is so constructed is called *analytical*. (Analysis means taking apart, or separating.)

Hardly less wonderful, perhaps, than the extraordinary development of its vocabulary, is the slow process by which English has changed

from a *synthetic* to an *analytical* language. It has in this way gained greatly in simplicity, though it must be granted that there has been in some degree a loss in precision and in delicacy of expression. The pronunciation and the uncouth spelling of many English words bears curious and sometimes most perplexing witness to the vicissitudes through which our language has passed.

Present Changes. — The process of dropping inflections seems nearly to have reached a limit, yet there are two forms of the verb which we may even now see undergoing the process of reduction. The distinction in the use of *shall* and *will* in forming the Future Tense is less carefully observed by intelligent writers and speakers of today than it was by those of the middle of the nineteenth century, or earlier. This is true also of *should* and *would*. Again, the subjunctive mood as a distinct form has almost disappeared from common speech, though it is sparingly employed in literature. In discarding the subjunctive the language seems to be losing something of the delicacy of expression it once had. English, however, is at the opening of the twentieth century the greatest language power in existence, and bids fair to become ultimately the universal tongue.

III. DERIVATION AND WORD-BUILDING

How Words are Formed. — Most words have been made from older ones by adding something at the beginning or at the end, or by some other change which gives a slightly different meaning. Often one word is made by putting two others together.

Thus from **numb** we have **benumb** and **numbness**. From **drip** we have **drop** and **droop**. **Rail** and **road** make **railroad**.

A Word made from an Older One is a Derivative.

What has been put before a word to make a derivative is called a **Prefix**.

LIST OF PREFIXES FOR REFERENCE*

A or **ab**, **abs**, *away from;* abhor, abscond.

A, an (G) *not, without;* atheist, anonymous.

Ad, *to, toward;* adjoin, admix, adapt, adverb.

For ease of speaking, the *d* of *ad* is usually changed to match a following consonant, and so we often have with the same meaning *ac, af, ag, al, an, ap, ar, as,* or *at;* accost, affix, aggressive, alluring, annex, approach, arrange (set to rights), assist (give help to), attach.

Amb, am, *all round;* ambiguous (not direct).

Amphi (G) *on both sides;* amphitheater.

Ana (G) *up, back again;* analysis (taking to pieces).

Ante, *before;* anteroom.

Anti, ant (G) *against, opposite;* antidote, antartic.

Apo (G) *away from;* apostle (one sent out).

Bene, *well;* benefactor.

Bis, bi, *twice, two;* biped.

Cata (G) *down;* cataract.

Circum, *around,* also **circu;** circumnavigates, circuitous.

Con, *with, together;* also **col, com, cor, co;** convention, collision, combine, correspond, coöperate.

Contra, *against,* also **counter** (F) contradict, counter-balance.

De, *down, from;* depress, deliver.

Dia (G) *through, across;* diameter.

Dis, di, *in two, apart,* also **dif;** disband, divorce, different.

Duo, du, *two;* duodecimo, duet.

Epi (G) *upon, to;* epitaph (upon a tomb).

Eu (G) *well;* eulogy.

Ex, e, *out, from,* also **ef;** exhale, erase, efface.

Extra, *beyond;* extravagant.

Hemi, *half;* hemisphere.

In, *into, upon,* also **il, im, ir, en, em;** intrude, illumine, implant, irrigate, enlighten, embalm.

In, *not,* also **il, im, ir;** infirm, illegal, imprudent, irregular.

Inter, *between;* interrupt.

Ob, *against,* also **of, op;** obstruct, offend, opponent.

Pen, *almost;* peninsular.

Per, *through, thoroughly;* perforate, perfect.

Post, *after;* postscript.

Pre, *before;* predict.

Pro (L G) *before;* programme.

Re, *back, again,* also **red;** reform, redeem.

Semi, *half;* semicircle.

Sub, *under,* also for ease of speaking as before, **suc, suf, sup, sur, sus, su;** subscribe, succumb, suffix, support, surreptitious (creeping under), suspend.

Super, *above, over,* also **sur** (F) superintend, surpass.

Trans, tra, *across, beyond;* transport, traverse.

* The abbreviation (L) stands for Latin, (G) for Greek, (F) for French, (E) English; but all listed forms are Latin unless otherwise marked.

SUFFIXES

What is added at the end of a word to make a derivative is a **Suffix.**

LIST OF SUFFIXES

Able (E) and **ible** (E) form adjectives meaning *that may be;* readable, perceptible.

Aceous or **acious** means *containing* something, or *rather* so and so; herbaceous, loquacious.

Age denotes a *collection* or *sum total;* also a *state* or a *process;* herbage, leakage, marriage, tillage.

Al and **an** mean *relating to;* brutal, Roman.

Ance, ancy, and **ence, ency,** make *abstract nouns;* utterance, brilliancy, persistence, decency.

Ant or **ent** (L) denotes the *one who does* so and so; attendant, student.

Ary, ory, or **ry** form nouns that denote a *place* or a *collection;* granary, dormitory, pleasantry.

Ary and **ory** also make *descriptive adjectives;* honorary, explanatory.

Dom (E) makes a noun showing where *something has power* or prevails; kingdom, freedom.

Ed (E) makes a passive *participle* or an *adjective;* rowed, four-oared.

En (E) makes a passive *participle* or an adjective denoting *material;* beaten, oaken.

En (E) also forms verbs meaning *to make a thing so and so;* strengthen, widen.

Er and **est** (E) make *comparative* and *superlative* adjectives; greater, greatest.

Er (E) and **or** (L) denote the *one who does;* singer, collector.

Ern (E), also **erly,** form adjectives denoting *direction;* northern, southerly.

Et and **let** (E) make *diminutives,* something small or young; lancet; leaflet.

Ful (E) and **less** (E) make adjectives meaning *full of,* or *without;* hopeful, hopeless.

Fy (L) and **ize** or **ise** (G) form verbs meaning *to make so and so;* purify, crystallize, fertilize.

Ic and **ical** (GL) mean *belonging to;* heroic, logical.

Ile makes an adjective meaning *easy to,* or *belonging to;* fragile, puerile.

Ine means *belonging to;* crystalline, feminine.

Ing (E) makes a *verbal noun* or a *participle;* hunting, seeing.

Ion (L) makes a noun denoting action; confusion, assertion.

Ish (E) means *somewhat like,* or *belonging to;* boyish, bluish, Spanish.

Ism or **sm** (G) forms nouns of *action* or *result;* despotism.

Ist (G) makes a noun meaning *one who has to do with;* journalist.

Ive gives the idea *inclined to;* restorative.

Lent and **ose, ous** make adjectives meaning *full of;* fraudulent, jocose, famous.

Like (E) and **ly**, meaning "like," make *adjectives* and *adverbs;* godlike, godly, honestly.

Ling (E) forms a name for something *small* or *young;* duckling.

Ment denotes the *means* or the *action;* inducement, payment.

Mony makes an *abstract noun;* testimony.

Ness (E) with an adjective makes the *name of the quality;* brightness.

Ple or **ble** makes an adjective meaning *fold;* quadruple, double.

Ship (E) and **hood** denote *shape* or *condition;* fellowship, manhood.

Some (E) and **y** (E) form *descriptive adjectives;* winsome, rusty.

Ty makes an *abstract noun;* purity, cruelty.

Ward (E) makes an adjective or an adverb to show *direction;* seaward.

STEMS

Often from a single old form many new words have been made by varying the prefixes and suffixes, or by combining one word with another.

We do not always see an older word in each of these new ones, for the form of a word changes by use. But we commonly find some syllable, or group of letters, called the *Stem*, which shows from what the word was first made.

When two or more words have the same stem, they must have been derived from the same original source. We shall, therefore, find some connection in meaning among them, though they may look and sound very unlike.

LIST OF STEMS

Ag, *do, act;* agile, agitate, agent, transact.

Alt, *high;* altitude, altar, exalted, (very *high*), alto (a *high* part).

Anim, *life, mind;* animal, animated, unanimous, magnanimous.

Ann, *year;* annual, biennial, annals (*yearly* records).

Aper, *open;* aperture, April.

Apt, *fit;* apt, adapt.

Arch (G) *be first, rule;* monarch, archaic (ancient), architect.

Art, *skill;* artist, artifice.

Aud, *hear;* audible, audience, auditor.

Aur, *gold;* auriferous, auriole.

Bas (G) *low;* base, basement, bass, debase, basis.

Bat, *strike;* batter, battle, battery.

Bit, *bite;* bitter, bit, bits.

Brev, *short;* brevity, abbreviate, brief.

Cad, cid, cas, *fall, befall;* cascade, casual, accident, incident, deciduous (leaves), cadence (*falling* on the ear).

Cant, chant, *sing;* canto, incantation, chant, enchant.

Cap, capit, *head;* cap, cape, capital, captain, decapitate.

Cap, capt, *take;* captive, captor, accept, reception, capacity.

Carn, *flesh;* carnage (slaughter), carnivorous, carnal, carnation.

Ced, ceed, *go, yield;* precede, recede, exceed, proceed, procession.

Celer, *swift;* celerity, accelerate.

Cent, *hundred;* century, centennial, centiped, cent, percentage (amount on a hundred).

Cinct, *gird;* cincture (girdle), precinct (encircled place).

Clin, cliv, *lean;* incline, decline (*lean* away **from, refuse**), recline, declivity (*leaning* ground, slope).

Commod, *suitable;* commodious, accommodate, commodity, model, modest.

Commun, *common;* communicate or commune (make *common*), community.

Cor, *heart;* cordial, courageous, concord (having *hearts* together, agreement), discord.

Coron, *crown;* coronet, coronation, corolla.

Corp, *body;* corpse, corps, corpulent, corporation.

Cred, *believe, trust;* credible, credit, creed, credence.

Cur, *care;* accurate, curable, secure (free from *care*), curate.

Curr, cur, *run;* current, excursion, course.

Cycl, *circle;* cycle, tricycle.

Dent, *tooth;* dentist, trident, indent.

Di, *day;* diary, diurnal, meridian.

Dict, *say;* dictation, dictionary, contradict, predict, verdict.

Dign, *worth;* dignity, dignified, indignity.

Do, dit, *give;* donation, editor, extradition.

Domin, dam, *lord, lady;* domineer, dominion, dame, madame.

Dorm, *sleep;* dormant, dormitory.

Duc, *lead, draw;* duke, introduce, produce, abduction, educate (to *draw* out one's power).

Equ, *equal;* unequal, inequality, equity, (fair or *equal* treatment), iniquity (unfairness).

Fa, *speak;* affable, fable, infant, preface, ineffable.

Fac, fic, *face;* surface, superficial.

Fact, fect, *do, make;* benefactor, effect, confectioner, perfect.

Felic, *happy;* felicity, Felix.

Fer, *bear;* fertile, transfer, suffer, refer.

Fess, *acknowledge;* profess, confessor.

Fid, *trust;* fidelity, confide, diffident, infidel.

Fin, *end;* finish, final, finite (with an *end*), infinite, superfine (over finished).

Form, *shape;* deform, reform, formality.

Fort, *strong;* fortify, fortitude, force.

Frag, frac, *break;* fragile, fragment, fracture, fraction, infringe.

Fun, fus, *pour, melt;* fount, foundry, funnel, fuse (to melt).

Gen, gener, *kind, birth;* genus, gender, genteel, and generous (of good *birth*), degenerate, generation.

Gest, *carry;* digest, gesture.

Grad, gress, *step;* gradual, grade, progress, congress.

Gran, *grain;* granary, granule, granite.

Graph, gram (G) *write;* autograph, biography, geography, phonograph, diagram, grammar.

Grat, *thanks, favor;* grateful, gratis, gratify, gratuity.

Gross, *large;* gross, engross (write *large*), grocer.

Hor, *shudder;* horrid, horrify, abhor.

Hospit, *guest;* hospital, hospitality, hospitable.

Integr, *whole;* integer, integrity.

Ject, *throw;* eject, reject, projection, interjection.

Judic, *right;* judicial, prejudice, judgment. Cf. **jur.**

Junct, *join;* junction, conjunction, disjunction, adjoin, joint.

Jur, jud, *right;* injury, justice, judge.

Lat, *bear;* legislate, dilate, collation.

Lect, leg, *pick out, read;* select, election, collect, lecture, legible, legend.

Leg, *law;* legal, legislate, legitimate.

Liber, *free;* liberal, liberate, liberty, deliver (set free).

Lin, *flax;* linen, lining, lint, linseed.

Lingu, *tongue;* language, linguistic.

Liter, *letter;* literal (*letter* for *letter*), literary, literature, illiterate.

Loc, *place;* locate, dislocate, locomotive.

Log (G) *talk, account;* prologue, dialogue, geology.

Loqu, *talk;* loquacity, loquacious, colloquial, eloquence, soliloquy, ventriloquist.

Lud, *play, deceive;* ludicrous, prelude, delusion.

Mag, maj, *great;* magnify, magnanimous, magnificent, magnitude, magistrate, majesty, major.

Maj, *large;* majority, majesty, mayor. Cf. **mag.**

Man, *hand;* manual, manage, manufacture, manuscript.

Man, *stay;* permanent, mansion, remain.

Mar, *sea;* marine, mariner, maritime, mermaid.

Mater, *mother;* maternal, matron.

Med, *heal;* medicine, medicate, remedy.

Medi, *middle;* medium, Mediterranean, mediæval, immediately (right in the *midst* of things).

Mens, *measure;* commensurate, mensuration, immense.

Ment, *mind;* mental, demented, memento, mention.

Merc, *goods;* merchant, mercantile, commerce.

Merg, mers, *dip;* submerge, emerge, immersion.

Meter, *measure;* metric, diameter.

Migr, *remove;* migrate, emigrate, immigration.

Mir, *wonder;* miracle, mirror, mirage, admire.

Mit, mis, *send;* remit, transmit, admit, missionary, missile, dismiss, message.

Mon, *advise, remind;* monument, admonish, monitor.

Mort, *dead;* immortal, mortify (cause to do).

Mot, *move;* commotion, promote, remote, motor.

Mult, *many;* multitude, multiplication.

Mun, *gift;* remunerate, munificent.

Nat, *be born;* native, natural, nation.

Nav, *ship;* naval, navy, navigate, nautical.

Not, *know;* notice, notify, notorious, denote.

Numer, *number;* numerous, enumerate, innumerable, numerator (what shows *number* of parts).

Nunci, nounce, *announce;* enunciate, pronounce, renounce.

Ocul, *eye;* oculist, ocular (as *ocular* weakness).

Pan (G) *all;* panacea, panorama, pantheism.

Par, *equal;* parallel, compare, pair, separate.

Par, *get ready;* prepare, repair, apparel.

Parl (G) *speak;* parlor, parley, parliament, parlance.

Part, *part;* particle, partial, partner, partition.

Pass, *step;* pass, trespass, passenger.

Past, *feed;* pasture, repast, pastor.

Pat, pass, *suffer;* patient, passive, compassion.

Pater, *father;* paternal, patron, patrimony (what is inherited from a *father*).

Ped, *foot;* pedal, biped, quadruped, pedestrian, impede, (get before the *feet*), centiped.

Pel, pul, *drive;* pelt, propel, expel, dispel, repulse, compulsion, pulse.

Pen, *punishment;* penal, penalty, penitent.

Pend, *hang;* pendant, pendulum, suspend, depend, independence, appendix.

Pet, *ask, seek;* petition, appetite, competitor.

Petr (G) *stone;* petrify, petroleum, saltpetre.

Phil, *love;* philanthropy, philosophy.

Phon (G) *sound;* phonetic, euphony, symphony.

Physi (G) *nature;* physical, physiology, physician.

Pict, *paint;* picture, depict.

Plac, *please;* placid, implacable.

Ple, plet, *full;* complete, plenty, supplement.

Plen, *full;* plenty, replenish. Cf. **ple.**

Pli, plic, *fold;* complicate, pliable, multiply, duplex.

Plum, *feather;* plume, plumule.

Plumb, *lead;* plumber, plumb.

Pon, pos, *place, put;* postpone, position, opposite, opponent, post, posture, transpose.

Port, *carry;* porter, portable, export, import, transport, port, portfolio, report, deportment, (way of *carrying* one's self).

Pot, *drink;* potable, potation, (draught).

Potent, *able;* impotent, potentate, potential or possible.

Prehend, *take ;* prehensile (as a monkey's tail), comprehend, apprentice (one who is *taking* up a trade).

Prim, *first;* primary, primitive, prime, primer, primrose, primeval (belonging to the *first* ages).

Punct, pung, *prick;* puncture, punctual, punch, pungent.

Quant *how much, amount;* quantity.

Quart, quadr, *four;* quadruped, quadrangle, quart, quarter.

Quer, ques, *seek, ask;* query, inquire, question, request.

Quiet, *still;* disquiet, quietude, requiem.

Radi, *root;* radical, eradicate, radish.

Rap, rep, *seize;* rapacious, rapid, rapture.

Rat, *reason;* rational, ratify (to decide that a thing is *reasonable*).

Reg, rect, *straighten, rule;* regular, regal, rectify, rector, correct, direct.

Rid, ris, *laugh;* ridicule, deride, risible.

Riv, *brook, source;* river, derive.

Rog, *ask;* interrogate, arrogant.

Rupt, *break;* rupture, abrupt (*broken* off sharp), corrupt.

Sacr, sanct, *sacred;* sacrifice, consecrate, desecrate, sanctuary.

Sal, *leap;* sally, assail, salient.

Sal, *salt;* saline, salad.

Sanct, *holy;* sanctuary, sanctify, saint. Cf. **sacr.**

Sat, *enough;* satisfy, sate, satiate, saturate.

Sci, *know;* scientist, omniscient, conscious.

Scop (G) *see;* telescope, microscope, scope (field of vision).

Scrib, script, *write;* scribble, scripture, subscribe, describe, inscription, postscript.

Sec, *cut;* bisect, section, sect (division).

Sen, *old;* senior, senate, senile.

Sent, sens, *feel, think;* sentiment, sentence, dissent, sense, sensual.

Sequ, *follow;* sequel, subsequent; consecutive, prosecute.

Serv, *keep;* preserve, conservatory; reservoir.

Sist, *stand;* assist, insist, resist. Cf. **sta.**

Sol, *alone;* solo, solitary, solitude.

Son, *sound;* sonorous, resonant; consonant.

Sort, *fate, lot;* sort, consort.

Spec, spic, *look;* spectator, prospect, inspect, conspicuous.

Speci, *look, kind;* species (all that *look* alike), special (of a particular *kind*). Cf. **spec.**

Spir, *breathe;* inspire, expire, conspiracy (whispering together), spiritual.

Sta, stat, stant, *stand;* statue, station, stable, distant, circumstances (surroundings).

Stell, *star;* stellar, constellation, Stella.

String, strict, *bind;* stringent, strict, (boa) constrictor, restrain.
Stru, *build;* structure, destruction, obstruct, instrument.
Su, *follow;* sue, suite, suit, pursue.
Suad, *urge;* suasion, persuade.
Sum, *take;* resume, consume, presume.
Surg, *rise;* surge, insurgent.
Tact, tang, *touch;* contact, contagious, tangible, attain.
Tail, *cut;* tailor, detail, retail.
Teg, tect, *cover;* integument, detect, protect.
Tempor, *time;* temporary, extemporary.
Tend, tens, tent, *stretch;* extend, tendon, tendency, tension, tent.
Test, *witness;* testimony, attest.
Tort, *twist;* tortuous, torture, distort.
Tract, *draw;* extract, subtract, retract.
Trit, *rub;* trite (*worn* out), contrite (*worn* and penitent), trituration.
Trud, *thrust;* protrude, intrude.
Un, *one;* unit, unite, union, uniform, unanimous, unique (the only *one* of a kind).
Und, *wave;* inundation, undulate, redundant.
Ut, us, *use;* utensil, utility, usual; abuse.
Vad, *go;* invade, pervade, evade.
Val, *be strong;* valiant, equivalent; convalescent.
Ven, *course;* convent, advent; event.
Vers, vert, *turn;* invert, divert; verse, controversy.
Vi, *way;* viaduct, deviate, impervious.
Vic, vinc, *conquer;* victor, invincible, convict.
Vid, vis, *see;* vision, vista, visible; visit, provide, evident.
Viv, *live;* revive, survive, viands; vivid, vivacity.
Voc, *call;* vocal, vocation, vociferous, provoke, convoke, voice.
Volv, *roll;* revolve, convolvulus.
Vot, *vow;* devote, votive, vote.

Exercise. — 1. Define any of the words in the Selections for Study by giving (*a*) the meaning of the stem, (*b*) of prefix or suffix.

2. Arrange several groups of words having (1) the same stem, (2) the same prefix, (3) the same suffix, and give the meaning of each word.

3. Make a list of words that are compounded of two or more simple words. Discriminate carefully in the use of the hyphen.

INDEX

[*The numbers refer to pages.*]

A or an, 133.
A few abbreviated expressions, 220.
Abou Ben Adhem, study of, 334.
Absolute construction, 100, 197.
Abstract nouns, 81; personified, 89, 117.
Active voice, 169.
Active participle, 196.
Adjectives, 24–27, 132–143; kinds, 132; conjunctive, 134; descriptive, 133; interrogative, 134; limiting, 133; numeral, 134; participial, 133; predicate, 25, 45; proper, 133; verbal, 151.
  Comparison, *er* and *est*, 135; with more and most, 137; adjectives, not compared, 137, irregular, 136; number, 137.
  Construction, 138; appositive, 138; attributive, 57, 138; complement, subjective, 138; objective, 138; independent, 220; as modifiers, 57; as pronouns, 112; modifiers of, 60; parsing, 138; position, 140; errors in form, 141; in use, 140; summary, 139.
Adjective clause, 61, 108, 225; construction, 225.
Adjective phrase, as modifier, 60.
Adjective pronouns, 112.
Adverbs, 27; kinds, 200; conjunctive, 201; interrogative, 203; modal, 203; responsive, 203; simple, 200.
  Comparison, 204.
  Construction, 205; modify what, 204; independent, 220; as conjunctions, 201; as modifiers, 59; modifiers of, 223; parsing, 204; position, 206; errors in use, 205; summary, 205.
Adverb-clause, 62; construction, 225.
Adverb-phrase, 61; as modifier, 60.
Adverbially, nouns used, 97.
Advertisements, 279.
Agreement, pronouns, 123; adjectives, 140; verbs, 182.
Ambiguous expressions, 264.
Analysis, 72; general directions, 72.
Analysis, marking, 58, 73, 225; models, 72; complex sentence, 119.
And for *to*, 195.
Antecedents, 20, 109; agreement, 123; collective, 126; joined, 195.
Anticipative subject, 119, 188.
Apostrophe, 91.
Appositive, 66; adjective, 138; case of, 128; clauses, 68; modifiers, 66; noun or pronoun, 66; participle, 197; phrases, 67.
Arrangement, see Order.
Articles, 133; form, 133; repeated, 140.
As, conjunction, 215; conjunctive adverb, 225; relative pronoun, 109.
Assertive sentence, 3.
Attributive adjective, 138.

Auxiliaries, 160; be, 168; do, 167; have, may, can, 162; must, 163; shall, will, 161; choice between, 179; should, 164; meaning of, 180.

Be, complete or copulative, 146; conjugation of, 166.
Biographical sketches, 297.
Business letters, 275.

Capitals, 244, 344.
Case, as a form, 90; as a relation, 235; nouns, 91, 235; possessive, 91; pronouns, 115; appositive pronoun, 128; independent or with participle, 128; used as subject and complement of indirect predicate, 128, wrong forms, 126.
Choice of words, 251–265; of pronouns, 129.
Chambered Nautilus, The, study of, 335.
Clause, def., 62; kinds, 62; adjective, 61, 225; appositive and restrictive, 130; adverb, 62, 215, 225; dependent or subordinate, 62; independent or principal, 62; noun, 225.
Construction, 225; as modifiers, 108; as an essential, 110–112.
Clause, connective, 296.
Collective nouns, 81; as antecedents, 123; as subjects, 183.
Comparison, 134; adjectives, 135.
Comparison, adverbs, 204; errors in, 141; irregular, 136.
Complement, 50; of infinitive and participle, 188; objective, 51; subjective, 46, 50; as objects, 50; case of, 127; inf. as, 188; of verbs, 43–52; of copulative verbs, 145; of transitive verbs, 145; with passive phrases, 170.
Complete verbs, 44, 52–54.
Complex sentence, 69; analysis, 73, 119.
Complex compound sentence, 119.
Compound element, 223.
Compound words, gender, 90; plural, 87; possessive, 91.
Compound sentence, 38; analysis, 119.
Concord Hymn, study of, 105, 343.
Conjugation, 154, 164–167; be, 166; give, 164; passive and progressive phrases, 172; s-forms, 182; solemn forms, 173.
Conjunctions, 36–39; auxiliary, 215; co-ordinating, 213; classes of co-ordinating, 213; correlative, 213; subordinating, 214.
Use, 217; compound elements, 224; parsing of, 216; phrase, 216; errors, 217; summary, 217.
Conjunctive adjective, 134; adverb, 201; pronouns, 108–111.
Connectives, 225.
Construction, absolute, 99, 197; adjectives, 138; adverbs, 204, clauses, 225; conjunctions, 216; independent, 99; infinitive, 188; interjection, 219; nouns, 92; participles, 196; phrases, 60; prepositions, 210; pronouns, 117; verbs, 17.
Copulative verbs, 44–47.
Copying, exercises, 249.
Correlatives, 213.

Dare, 150.
Declension, 116.
Demonstrative adjective, 134; pronoun, 113.

Derivation, 355–363.
Descriptive adjectives (or qualifying), 24–27.
Descriptive writing, 308–329; directions, 313; comparison and contrast, 315; geographical writing, 318; of processes of manufacture, 319; animals, 322; birds, 323; plants, 325; persons, 327; slang to be avoided, 314.
Dictation Exercises, 250.
Distributives, 113.

Elements, compound, 224; independent, 223; order, 12.
Elegy, Gray's, study of, 143, 233.
Elliptical construction, 224.
Emphatic use of compound personal pronoun, 107.
Emphatic verb-phrase, 167.
Envelopes, 282–284.
Errors, adjectives, 140; adverbs, 205; infinitives, 194; conjunctions, 217; possessives, 95; prepositions, 210; pronouns, 122; verbs, 176; in words, forms of, 256–261; unnecessary, 261; confounded, 261; in choice of, 260; in order of, 264; double meaning of, 264.
Essential subject and predicate, 9.
Essentials of a sentence, 54.
Exaggerations, 262.
Exclamation, nouns used independently in, 99.
Exclamatory words, 220, 223.
Expansion of words, 229; of phrases, 229.
Explanations, example of, 328; directions for, 330; of a look, 331; the point of a story, 331; of some passages, 332.
Expletive, 204.
Expressions to be avoided, 258.

False syntax, see Errors.
Feminine nouns, 89.
Forms of nouns, changes in, 82–92.
Future tense, 161.
Future perfect tense, 162.

Gender, 88; common, 89; nouns, 88; pronouns, 117.
Gerund, inf. in ing, 152.

Historical sketches, outlines, 303–305.
History of Language, 350.

Imperative sentences, 3, 13; mode, 157; subject omitted, 13.
Imperfect participle, 196.
Incomplete verbs, 43–56.
Independent construction, nouns, 98; other parts of speech, 220.
Independent expressions, 223.
Indicative, 157.
Indirect object, 96.
Infinitives, 152–187; kinds, 152; without *to*, 191.
Construction, 188–192; as abstract nouns, 192; as adjective, 190; as adverb, 190; as indirect predicate, 191; as object, 188; as object of a preposition, 189; as subject, 188; as subjective complement, 188; gerund sometimes used as noun, 192; with anticipative *it*, 188; with object, 151; modifiers of, 223; parsing, 192; errors, 194; summary, 192.
Inflection, 82; adjectives, 135; adverbs, 204; nouns, 82–88; pronouns, 114–117; verbs, 147–174.
Interjections, 39; kinds, 219; uses, 219.

Interrogative adjective, 134; adverb, 203; pronoun, 107; antecedent, 107; constructions, 117.
Interrogative sentences, 3; order, 13.
Intransitive verbs, 48, 53; as transitive, 147; made passive, 171.
Inverted order, 13.
Invitations, 280.
Irregular comparison, 136; plurals, 88.
Irregular verbs, 155; principal parts, 237.
It, anticipative subject, 119; used indefinitely, 119.
Italics, 345.

Letters, figures, etc., plural, 84.
Letters, 266–284; business, 275; invitations, 280; models, 268; envelopes, 281–284.
Letter-writing, 266; address, 269; body of letter, 271; complimentary ending, 272; folding, 282; formal invitations, 280; forms, 273–277; heading, 266; salutation, 270; signature, 272; superscription, 281–284.
Limiting adjectives, 25; as pronouns, 112.
Literature, study of, 308, 310, 316, 320, 333–335, 343.
Lives of noted men and women, 302.

Masculine nouns, 89; pronouns, 117.
Modifiers, 56–70, 222; of verbals, 223; primary, 64; secondary, 64; inverted order, 74; summary, 69.
Mode, 157.

Narrative-writing, 287–307; directions for, 295
Need, 150.
Negative sentence, 167.
Negatives, errors in use, 206.
Nominative case, 91, 235.
Nouns, 16–18, 78–105; kinds, 78; meaning, 79; concrete or abstract, 81; collective, 80; common, 80; gender, 88–90; feminine, 89; masculine, 89; neuter, 89; proper nouns, 80; meaning, 79; verbal, 82, 187.
Forms or inflection, 82; case, 90; possessive, 91; number, 83–88; proper nouns, 80; plural, 86; rules for, 86–88; of compounds, 87; of foreign words, 87.
Construction or uses, 92–100; adverbially, 97; as appositive, 66; as complement, 44; as objective complement, 50; as subjective complement, 46; independently, 99; as indirect object, 96; as possessive, 64, 167; as object of preposition, 63; of verb, 44; as subject, 16; with participle, 100; modifiers of, 222; parsing, 101; summary, 104.
Noun-clause, 69, 110, 111; connective, 225; construction, 225; equivalents, 190.
Noun-phrases, as adverbs, 97; possessive of, 94.
Notes of invitation, 280.
Number, nouns, 83–88; adjectives, 137; pronouns, 114; special rules, 84, 85; verbs, 149.
Numerals, 134.

Objective case, 236.
Objective complement, 50.
Objective pronouns, 127.

Object of verbs, 47–51, 145; definition, 50; object of infinitive, 151; of participle, 151; of preposition, 34; direct, indirect, 96; infinitive as object, 188; in passive, 171; wrong case-form, 127.
One another, misused, 130.
Other, misused, 141.
Order of words, inverted, 13; wrong, 264; adverbial expressions, 206; preposition and object, 208; questions, 13; of sentences, 342.

Paragraphs, 339.
Parsing, 101, 121, 138, 174; adjectives, 138; adverbs, 205; conjunctions, 216; infinitives, 192; nouns, 102; order, 102; participle, 197; prepositions, 210; pronouns, 121; verbs, 174.
Participial adjective, 133.
Participles, 196; imperfect, 196; past, 153, 196; perfect, 196; present, 153, 196.
Construction, 196; absolutely, 197; as adjectives, 133; as adverb, 196; as appositive, 197; equivalent to clause, 197; in perfect phrase, 162; as objective complement, 196; as subjective complement, 196; modifiers, 223; nouns used with, 100; parsing, 192; suffix, 153, 192; summary, 197; verbal adjectives, 153.
Participle-phrase, 196.
Parts of speech, 15–42, 78–221; decided by use, 24; summary, 40–42.
Passive participle, 196.
Passive phrase, 169; conjugation of, 172; exercises, 171; formation, 170; from intransitives, 147–171; with complement, 170; when used, 170.
Past perfect, 162.
Past tense, 149; formation, 149; misused, 178; past subjunctive, 181.
Perfect infinitive for present, 195.
Perfect participle, 196; misused, 178.
Perfect tense phrases, 162.
Person, of pronouns, 107; of verbs, 149.
Personification, 117.
Phrases, 23; emphatic, 167; infinitive, 187; participle, 196; passive, 168–171; perfect, 162; possessive, 93; prepositional, 63; progressive, 168; verb, 160–164.
As adjectives and adverbs, 31; as appositives, 67; equivalent to clause, 197; independent, 223; as an essential, 63; as subjective complement, 63.
Phrases, analysis, 63.
Phrase-adverbs, 204.
Phrase-conjunctions, 216.
Phrase-prepositions, 209.
Pictures to be studied, Boy and Toad, 256; Three Faces, 317; Donkey, 324; Dogs, 321; Dogs Listening, 326; Girl and Dog, 331; Weapons and Tools, 337; Old Mill, 338; The Hunters, 294; Divided Affection, 313.
Plural, 84; of name with title, 86.
Poems to be studied, Columbus, 299; Midsummer, 308; Midwinter, 310; Story of Dart, 320; The Water Fowl, 142, 343; The Prayer Perfect, 333; Chambered Nautilus, 335; Abou Ben Ad-

hem, 334; Concord Hymn, 105, 343.
Position of words, see Order.
Possessive, 91; avoid awkward use of, 95; —— case (as a relation), 235; —— case-form, 90; connected nouns, 94; formation of, 91; meaning, 92; nouns, 91; phrases, 67; phrase preferred, 95; pronouns, 116; double form, 118; rules for use of ——, 93; with modifiers, 64; without noun, 118.
Potential forms, 163.
Predicate, 6; essential, 10; indirect, 190; modified, 8; simple, 9.
Predicate-adjective, 25, 45; construction, 138; infinitive as, 188.
Predicate-noun, 45; construction, 45.
Prefixes, 356.
Preposition, 30–35; use, 208; after its object, 208; as adverb, 209; as conjunction, 209; combined with verb, 171; independent, 220; with infinitive, 189; —— parsing, 210; —— errors, 210.
Prepositional phrase, 34, 63, 66; use 31; as adjective, 31; as adverb, 31; for possessive, 95; with modifiers, 64.
Present participle, 153, 196.
Present perfect, 162.
Present tense, 148; potential, 163; subjunctive, 181.
Principal parts, 156; list, 237; of auxiliaries, 161; alike, 155; confused, 176.
Progressive verb-phrase, 168.
Pronouns, 106; kinds, 106; adjective, 112; conjunctive, 108; compound personal, 107; demonstrative, 113; distributive, 113; indefinite conjunctive, 111; interrogative, 107; personal, 107; possessive, 118; reciprocal adjective, 113; reflexive, 107; relative, 109; antecedent of, 20; as connective, 108; meaning, 106.
Forms or inflection, 114–117; agreement, 123; with collective antecedent, 126; with connected antecedents, 124; case, 126; of appositive, 128; independent or with participle, 128; nominative ——, 115; objective case, 115; possessive case, 115; declension, 116; gender, 117; number, 114.
Construction, 117; as adjectives, 118; with participle, 100; choice of, 129; —— meaning, 109; modifiers, 222; —— parsing, 121; —— errors in use of, 122; reflexive use of compound personal ——, 107; rule for —— as object, 127; wrong case forms, 126; as subject, 126; as object, 127; wrong number forms, 122–26; summary, 122; test questions, 131.
Proper adjective, 133; —— noun, 79.
Punctuation, 243, 345.

Quotation, 248, 349.

Regular verbs, 156.
Relative pronoun, 108; construction, 117.
Reproduction of stories, 291, 292, 300–302, 305–307, 320, 334.
Responsives, 203.

Sentences, 1–13; definition of ——, 2; kinds, 1–4, 221; essentials of, 54; assertive, 3; complex, 69; complex compound, 119; compound, 38; elliptical, 224; exclamations, 4; imperative, 3; interrogative, 3; simple, 38; structure, 1; subject, 5; complete subject, 6; simple, 9; predicate, 6; complete, 10; simple, 9; modifier, 11.
Sentence-analysis, 72–77.
Sentence-building, 43–71.
S-form of verbs, 150; directions for using, 182–185; exercises, 185; spelling of, 154.
Shall, will, 179; use of, 179–180.
Simple sentences, 38; analysis, 72.
Singular number (nouns), 84–88.
Slang, 314.
Special rules for number, 84.
Spelling, plurals, 84; verbs, 154.
Stems, 358.
Stories, how to tell ——, 287; —— to be studied, 288; —— to complete, 291; —— and letter, 292; —— from poem, 293; —— from picture, 294; —— suggested, 295; of Columbus, 299; of Washington, 300; Inchcape Rock, 304; African Chief, 305; Whitefooted Deer, 305; Revere's Ride, 305; Nauhaught, 306; of The Frost, 306; from various sources, 307.
Study of Literature, Abou Ben Adhem, 334; Chambered Nautilus, 335; Concord Hymn, 105, 343; Elegy, The, 143, 233; To a Water Fowl, 142, 343.
Subject, 5; affirmative and negative, 186; anticipative, 119; collective, 183; connected, 184; indefinite, 119; infinitive as, 188; inverted order, 13; modified, 10; nouns as, 221; pronouns as, 126; rules for pronouns as, 126; simple, 9; third, singular, 182; thou, 173; wrong case-form, 126.
Subjective, complement, 46, 50; infinitive as, 188; phrase, 222.
Subjunctive, 158; forms, 241; use, 181.
Substitute for comparison of adjectives, 136, 141.
Suffixes, 357.
Summary adjective, 139; adverb, 205; clauses, 225; conjunctions, 217; infinitives, 192; nouns, 104; participles, 197; pronouns, 122; sentences, 221; verbs, 175.
Synonyms, 251–54; exercises in, 251–54; —— discriminated, 253.
Syntax, see Construction.

Telegram, 285.
Tenses, 148; errors, 176; names, 162; special meaning, 149.
Tense-phrases, future, 161; perfect, 162.
Titles, plural of, 86.
Transitive verbs, 47–52; used intransitively, 147; with objective complement, 50; with two objects, 145.
Transposition, 74.

Use, see Construction.
Uses of nouns, 92–100.

Variety of expression, 228, 253.
Verbal adjectives, 151–154.
Verbal nouns, 151-154; infinitives, 187.

Verbs, 20–24, 144–186; kinds, 144; complete, 44, 52, 144; copulative, 44–47, 50, 144–146; factitive, 145; impersonal, 145; incomplete, 43–56, 144–146; intransitive, 145; as transitive, 146; transitive, 144–147; as intransitive, 145.

Inflection, 148–174; auxiliaries, 161–165; combined with prepositions, 171; conjugation, 154, 164–174; double forms, 156; emphatic phrase, 167; gerund, 192; imperative, 158; indicative, 157; infinitive, 187–194; mode, 157–159; number and person, 149; participles, 196; passive verb phrase, 168–171; perfect tenses, 162; perfect tense phrases, 160–164; potential forms, 163; principal parts, 156; principal parts confused, 176; progressive verb phrases, 168; regular and irregular, 155; irregular ——, list of, 237–240; s-forms, 182–186; solemn forms, 173; spelling, 154; subjunctive, 158; tense forms, 147–174; voice, 169; with different meanings confused, 177.

Construction, 174; agreement, 150; with collective subject, 183; with connected subjects, 184–86; with *it* for subject, 145; with relative as subject, 186; with complement, 43–52; gerund construction, 188–192; shall or will, 179; in subjunctive forms, 181; transitive — with indirect object, 145; transitive verbs (a few) with second objective complement, 145; errors in form, 175–186; forms, directions for, 176–186; forms, improper, 178; verb necessary to sentence, 144; verb, one of two, omitted, 186; parsing, 174; parsing exercises 175; summary 175.

Verb-phrase, 22–24, 160–64; formation, 160; emphatic, 167; future tense phrase, 161; passive phrase, 168–171; perfect tense phrases, 161; potential phrases, 163; progressive verb phrase, 168; exercises, 173.

Vocatives, 223.

Voice, 169.

Will for shall, 179.

Words, choice of, 251–265; common errors in choice of, 256–260; —— confounded, 260; double meaning of, 264; exaggerations, 262; incorrect forms, 256, 257; kinds and use of, 15–42; synonyms, 251–253; unnecessary words, 261; wrong order of, 264.

Words, related in meaning, 255; right and wrong, 259; that sound alike, 261; similar in form, 260; unnecessary, 261; inappropriate, 262; big and little, 263; some interesting ——, 338.

ā ē ī ō ū — = macron - sh
ă ĕ ĭ ŏ ŭ ∪ = breve - lon
term firm ~ = tilde
ä = ah
a.. = arok, daughter
water
ā - shortened macron.

Analyze a sentence

Subject _____
Predicate ═══
Adj Mod ~~~~
Adv Mod - - - - -
Copula. ⌒
Dir object ≈≈≈≈
Indirect :: ( )

Cases.

1. Nominative – subject
2. Objective – Predicate

Nom	Pro. Used as Sub. " " " Sub. Com. Independently.
Poss.	Pro. Used to show Poss.
Obj.	Pro. Used – Direct Obj of Indirect " " " Obj of Prep.

INDIANA CONTRACT PRICE
40 CENTS